

The Book of the Law of the Lord

Being a translation from the Egyptian of the Law
Given to Moses in Sinai



Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 International (CC BY-ND 4.0)

This is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license for The Book of the Law of the Lord

Disclaimer.

You are free to:

Share — copy and redistribute The Book of the Law of the Lord in any medium or format for any purpose, even commercially. The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

Under the following terms:

Attribution — You must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and indicate if changes were made. You may do so in any reasonable manner, but not in any way that suggests the licensor endorses you or your use.

No Derivatives — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you may not distribute the modified material.

No additional restrictions — You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

Notices:

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material. First Printing: 2025

ISBN: N/A

The Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship
Post Office Box 1503
Miamisburg, Ohio, 45342
www.CJCCF.org

Table of Contents

| | |
|---|----------|
| List of Abbreviations..... | ix |
| Introduction for Modern Readers..... | xiii |
| Introduction..... | xiii |
| Foraward..... | ? |
| Part One: Book of the Law of the Lord 1851 (A. R. I.)..... | 1 |
| Testimony | 3 |
| Preface..... | 5 |
| 1. I The Decalogue | 9 |
| 2. II The True God | 12 |
| 3. III Chapter 3 Blessing of Infants..... | 16 |
| 4. IV Baptism..... | 17 |
| 5. V Baptsim for the Dead | 18 |
| 6. VI Confirmation | 21 |
| 7. VII Chapter 7 Eucharist..... | 22 |
| 8. VIII Marriage | 22 |
| 9. IX Healing | 23 |
| 10. X Absolution..... | 23 |
| 11. XI Ordination..... | 24 |
| 12. XII Adoption | 25 |
| 13. XIII Calling of a King | 25 |
| 14. XIV Duty of the King | 27 |
| 15. XV Abstinence of the King | 28 |
| 16. XVI Viceroy's | 29 |
| 17. XVII King's Council | 29 |
| 18. XVIII King's Court | 30 |
| 19. XIX City Court | 31 |

| | |
|--|-----------|
| 20. XX Twelve Apostles | 32 |
| 21. XXI Seventies | 32 |
| 22. XXII Elders | 33 |
| 23. XXIII Priests | 34 |
| 24. XXIV Teachers | 35 |
| 25. XXV Deacons | 36 |
| 26. XXVI Law of Inheritances | 36 |
| 27. XXVII Descent of Inheritances | 37 |
| 28. XXVIII Place of Your Dwellings | 39 |
| 29. XXIX Tithing | 41 |
| 30. XXX Feasts | 42 |
| 31. XXXI Groves, Forests, and Waters | 44 |
| 32. XXXII Highways | 45 |
| 33. XXXIII Apparel and Ornaments..... | 46 |
| 34. XXIV Municipalities | 47 |
| 35. XXXV Social Order | 48 |
| 36. XXXVI Household Relations | 50 |
| 37. XXXVII Payment of Debts | 52 |
| 38. XXXVIII Establishment of the Law..... | 53 |
| | |
| Part Two: Book of the Law of the Lord 1856 (A. R. VI.)..... | 57 |
| 1. I The Decalogue | 59 |
| 2. II The True God | 62 |
| 3. III Oaths | 66 |
| 4. IV Benedictions | 68 |
| 5. V Maledictions | 68 |
| 6. VI Prayer | 69 |
| 7. VII Thanksgiving | 69 |
| 8. VIII Sacrifice | 70 |
| 9. IX Monuments | 71 |
| 10. X Blessing of Infants | 72 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| 11. XI Baptism | 72 |
| 12. XII Baptism for the Dead | 73 |
| 13. XIII Confirmation | 74 |
| 14. XIV Eucharist | 75 |
| 15. XV Marriage | 76 |
| 16. XVI Healing | 76 |
| 17. XVII Absolution | 77 |
| 18. XVIII Ordination | 78 |
| 19. XIX Adoption | 79 |
| 20. XX Calling of a King | 79 |
| 21. XXI Duty of the King | 81 |
| 22. XXII Abstinence of the King | 82 |
| 23. XXIII Viceroys | 83 |
| 24. XXIV King's Council | 83 |
| 25. XXV King's Court | 84 |
| 26. XXVI City Court | 85 |
| 27. XXVII Municipalities | 86 |
| 28. XXVIII Twelve Apostles | 87 |
| 29. XXIX High Priests | 88 |
| 30. XXX Seventies | 88 |
| 31. XXXI Elders | 89 |
| 32. XXXII Priests | 90 |
| 33. XXXIII Teachers | 91 |
| 34. XXXIV Deacons | 92 |
| 35. XXXV Establishment of the Law | 92 |
| 36. XXXVI Priesthood | 95 |
| 37. XXXVII Place of Your Dwellings | 97 |
| 38. XXXVIII Groves, Forests, and Waters | 97 |
| 39. XXXIX Apparel and Ornaments | 98 |
| 40. XL Feasts | 99 |
| 41. XLI Inheritances | 101 |

| | |
|---|------------|
| 42. XLII Descent of Inheritances | 102 |
| 43. XLIII Social Order | 104 |
| 44. XLIV Household Relations | 106 |
| 45. XLV Highways | 108 |
| 46. XLVI Tithing | 109 |
| 47. XLVII Payment of Debts | 111 |
| Part Three: Notes from the Book of the Law (A. R. VI.) | 113 |
| 1. I The Decalogue | 115 |
| 2. II The True God | 134 |
| 3. III Oaths | 158 |
| 4. IV Benedictions | 165 |
| 5. V Maledictions | 166 |
| 6. VI Prayer | 167 |
| 7. VII Thanksgiving | 168 |
| 8. VIII Sacrifice | 169 |
| 9. IX Monuments | 172 |
| 10. X Blessing of Infants | 174 |
| 11. XI Baptism | 175 |
| 12. XII Baptism for the Dead | 191 |
| 13. XIII Confirmation | 195 |
| 14. XIV Eucharist | 198 |
| 15. XV Marriage | 208 |
| 16. XVI Healing | 208 |
| 17. XVII Absolution | 209 |
| 18. XVIII Ordination | 209 |
| 19. XIX Adoption | 213 |
| 20. XX Calling of a King | 214 |
| 21. XXI Duty of the King | 219 |
| 22. XXII Abstinence of the King | 219 |
| 23. XXIII Viceroys | 220 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| 24. XXIV King's Council | 221 |
| 25. XXV King's Court | 221 |
| 26. XXVI City Court | 222 |
| 27. XXVII Municipalities | 222 |
| 28. XXVIII Twelve Apostles | 223 |
| 29. XXIX High Priests | 224 |
| 30. XXX Seventies | 224 |
| 31. XXXI Elders | 225 |
| 32. XXXII Priests | 226 |
| 33. XXXIII Teachers | 226 |
| 34. XXXIV Deacons | 227 |
| 35. XXXV Establishment of the Law | 227 |
| 36. XXXVI Priesthood | 231 |
| 37. XXXVII Place of Your Dwellings | 284 |
| 38. XXXVIII Groves, Forests, and Waters | 285 |
| 39. XXXIX Apparel and Ornaments | 286 |
| 40. XL Feasts | 288 |
| 41. XLI Inheritances | 290 |
| 42. XLII Descent of Inheritances | 291 |
| 43. XLIII Social Order | 294 |
| 44. XLIV Household Relations | 294 |
| 45. XLV Highways | 308 |
| 46. XLVI Tithing | 308 |
| 47. XLVII Payment of Debts | 309 |
| | |
| Part Four: The Voree Plates | 311 |
| 1. Testimony of the Four Witnesses | 313 |
| 2. The Record of Rajah Manchou of Vorito | 315 |
| | |
| Part Four: The Diamond | 317 |
| 1. First Presidency and the Law of Succession | 319 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| 2. The Appointment of a Successor | 322 |
| 3. The Ordination | 327 |
| 4. First Pastoral Letter of James the Prophet | 329 |
| 5. The True Shepherd to the Saints..... | 336 |
| 6. (Periodical Back) | 343 |
| | |
| Epilogue: On the Death of James J. Strang | 345 |

List of Abbreviations

Old Testament

Gen. - Genesis

Ex. - Exodus

Lev. - Leviticus

Num. - Numbers

Deut. - Deuteronomy

Josh. - Joshua

Judg. - Judges

Ruth - Ruth

1 Sam. - 1 Samuel

2 Sam. - 2 Samuel

1 Kings - 1 Kings

2 Kings - 2 Kings

1 Chr. - 1 Chronicles

2 Chr. - 2 Chronicles

Ezra - Ezra

Neh. - Nehemiah

Esth. - Esther

Job - Job

Ps. - Psalms

Prov. - Proverbs

Eccl. - Ecclesiastes

Song - Song of Songs/Solomon

Isa. - Isaiah

Jer. - Jeremiah

Lam. - Lamentations

Ezek. - Ezekiel

Dan. - Daniel

Hos. - Hosea

Joel - Joel

Amos - Amos

Obad - Obadiah

Jonah - Jonah

Mic. - Micah

Nah. - Nahum

Hab. - Habakkuk

Zeph. - Zephaniah

Hag. - Haggai

Zech. - Zechariah

Mal. - Malachi

Apocrypha

Jas. - Jasher

Tob. - Tobit

Jdt. - Judith

Add Esth. - Additions to Esther

Wis. - Wisdom of Solomon

Sir. - Sirach/Ecclesiasticus

Bar. - Baruch

Ep Jer - Epistle of Jeremiah

Add Dan. - Additions to Daniel

Pr Azar. - Prayer of Azariah

Bel. - Bel and the Dragon

Sg Three. - Song of the Three

Apocrypha (cont.)

Sus. - Susanna
Pr Azar. - Prayer of Azariah
1 Mac. - 1 Maccabees
2 Mac. - 2 Maccabees
3 Mac. - 3 Maccabees
4 Mac. - 4 Maccabees
1 Esd. - 1 Esdras
2 Esd. - 2 Esdras
Pr Man. - Prayer of Manasseh
Ps. 151 - Psalm 151

New Testament

Matt. - Matthew
Mark - Mark
Luke - Luke
John - John
Acts - Acts
Rom. - Romans
1 Cor. - 1 Corinthians
2 Cor. - 2 Corinthians
Gal. - Galatians
Eph. - Ephesians
Phil. - Philippians
Col. - Colossians
1 Thess. - 1 Thessalonians
2 Thess. - 2 Thessalonians
1 Tim. - 1 Timothy
2 Tim. - 2 Timothy
Titus - Titus
Phil. - Philemon
Heb. - Hebrews
James - James
1 Pet. - 1 Peter
2 Pet. - 2 Peter
Jude - Jude
1 Jn - 1 John
2 Jn - 2 John
3 Jn - 3 John
Rev. - Revelation

Book of Mormon

1 Nephi - First Book of Nephi
2 Nephi - Second Book of Nephi
Jacob - Book of Jacob
Enos - Book of Enos
Jarom - Book of Jarom
Omni - Book of Omni
W. Mormon - Words of Mormon
Mosiah - Book of Mosiah
Alma - Book of Alma
Helaman - Book of Helaman
3 Nephi - Third Nephi
4 Nephi - Fourth Nephi
Mormon - Book of Mormon
Ether - Book of Ether
Moroni - Book of Moroni

Book of Commandments and Revelations

HoS - History of the Saints

BoL - Book of the Law of the Lord

DoS - Doctrines of the Saints

BoR - Book of Remembrance

EoS - Epistles of the Saints

W - Moroni Writings of Moroni

Hymns - Hymns of the Saints

Other

CJCLdS - The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints and their various sects and branches

RLDS - The Reorganized Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, Community of Christ and their various sects and branches

DaC - Doctrine and Covenants

Introduction for Modern Readers

Brothers, sisters, and seekers of the ancient paths:

*We stand at a remarkable moment in the unfolding story of the Restoration. The witness that began in Voree and continued through the 1851 and 1856 editions of *The Book of the Law of the Lord* now meets the living stream of modern revelation found within the *Plates of Brass*. These are not competing movements or disconnected traditions. They are connected parts of a greater covenant story still unfolding in our day.*

*In late 2018, the Scripture Committee for the Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship offered the Council of Elders the *Book of the Law of the Lord* for consideration for canonization in the 2019 conference. They removed the notes as a whole to avoid any contentions before or after the vote regarding comments against other Christian traditions. David Ferriman had already seen the *Plates of Brass* in vision by this time and confirmed to the Council that the translations of the plates by the prophet James J. Strang were, in fact, on the plates. Based on the Committee recommendation and David Ferriman's testimony, the *Book of the Law of the Lord* was added to the vote. In that historical conference, held on April 6, 2019, Saints from four continents voted as one to canonize the *Book of the Law of the Lord* for the growing movement. As an organization with an open canon, we now offer the full *Book of the Law of the Lord* for the reader's consideration.*

Latter Day Saints understand that revelation has never been a single event frozen in history. It unfolds gradually, like a living tree whose roots remain ancient while its branches continue reaching toward heaven. The restoration of sacred scripture was never meant to end with one generation. It is an ongoing work, a steady unveiling of truths preserved for the seed of Joseph and for all who seek the covenant path.

*The *Book of Mormon* restored foundational light concerning Jesus Christ and the gathering of Israel. Later, the *Book of the Law of the Lord*, brought forth through James J. Strang, provided something equally important: a framework of divine instruction for building a holy and covenant-centered people. More than a century and a half later, the translation of the *Plates of Brass* emerges again through the work of David Ferriman, continuing the labor that Strang began and bringing*

forth additional portions of the ancient record.

For this reason, at the opening of every chapter, the corresponding translation of the Plates of Brass by David Ferriman can be found. Chapters not from the Plates of Brass are also properly noted, ensuring that every chapter given to us by the prophet James is accounted for.

Together, these works form two parts of the same sacred witness. If the revelations within the Plates of Brass awaken the vision of Zion, then the laws and ordinances preserved in The Book of the Law of the Lord provide the structure through which that vision may take shape in the world. Vision without order remains incomplete, revelation seeks embodiment. God gives both inspiration and instruction so His people may not only believe in Zion, but build it.

At the center of these records stands Jesus Christ Himself. The purpose of these writings is not merely to present hidden knowledge, ancient mysteries, or religious systems. Their purpose is to lead souls to the Redeemer and to transform the heart through Him.

The revelations and teachings given us by James J. Strang welcome additions to his translation, consistently portraying Christ as Creator, King, and Deliverer. Jesus is the One who descended below all things so that humanity might overcome death, separation, and spiritual exile. Within the Plates of Brass, the condition of fallen humanity is often symbolized as “Egypt:” a state of bondage, forgetfulness, fear, and distance from God. The journey back to Zion is therefore a journey of repentance, awakening, covenant renewal, and spiritual rebirth.

To assist with the reader's studies, this work has been placed into four parts:

Part 1: The 1851 edition of The Book of the Law of the Lord, notes.

Part 2: The 1856 edition of The Book of the Law of the Lord, with the footnotes

Part 3: The 1856 edition of The Book of the Law of the Lord notes

Part 4: The Translation of the Voree Plates

Part 5: The Daimond, a collection of writings from the Strangite tradition

It is our prayer that this book will help unite the Saints in Christ, as it is used to introduce readers and students in the School of the Prophets

to James J. Strang, the Lord's chosen successor to Joseph Smith Jr. Yet we know the question will be asked: Do we really need more?

Throughout Restoration scripture, there is a recurring testimony that more records, more revelations would yet come forth in the last days. Again and again, scattered Israel is called to leave behind the distractions of Babylon and return to the covenant. The mission described in the Plates of Brass is not limited to personal salvation alone. It is the gathering of a people into holiness, unity, and a covenant relationship with God.

In this light, *The Book of the Law of the Lord* serves as a guiding Torah for a gathered people, a divine pattern for establishing a society where the Presence of God, the Shekinah, may dwell among humanity once again.

We live in an age overwhelmed by noise, confusion, division, and spiritual hunger. The world suffers from a famine not of bread, but of truth, wisdom, and living communion with God. In such a time, *The Book of the Law of the Lord* becomes far more than a historical document. It becomes spiritual nourishment for seekers searching for clarity, purpose, and a path back to the Divine.

The ancient failure of Israel was not simply disobedience: it was fear. The people stood trembling before the mountain rather than entering into the Presence of God with faith. These teachings invite us to move beyond fear and into covenant relationship. The Law is not meant to imprison the soul, but to prepare it to receive greater light.

At its heart, this record calls believers to remember who they are meant to become: a holy people, a nation of kings and queens, priests and priestesses devoted to the work of God. It teaches the seeker to abandon the empty treasures of "Egypt:" worldliness, pride, materialism, and spiritual distraction. We are called instead to build a life rooted in covenant, wisdom, mercy, and holiness.

For those already familiar with the earlier Strangite tradition, one of the most compelling aspects of the Plates of Brass is the expanded spiritual vision they present. These differences are not merely textual; they deepen and broaden the reader's understanding of God, covenant, and humanity itself.

Where Torah may once have been viewed primarily as divine law or commandment, the newer translation presents it as a living stream of wisdom, something active and transformative, written not only upon stone tablets, but upon the heart itself.

Whether your journey began with the witness at Voree with the teachings of the prophet James, or with David Ferriman's translation of the Plates of Brass, or simply a longing for deeper truth, the invitation remains the same: leave behind the spirit of Egypt (fear, pride, division, and bondage) and return to the covenant path prepared by God.

These records do not ask to be admired from a distance. They ask to be studied, prayed over, wrestled with, and lived. They invite the seeker not merely to learn new ideas, but to be transformed through wisdom and the Presence of God.

The message is both ancient and immediate:

Read the records.

Seek understanding.

Return to the Presence of the ONE.

As you walk this path, remember that you are not condemned to remain trapped in the limitations of the past. The Tree of Life still stands open before you, and the invitation to partake remains. Taken together, the visionary revelations brought forth through David Ferriman and the legal and covenant teachings preserved through James J. Strang converge into one united message to scattered Israel: Leave behind the bondage of spiritual Egypt. Return to the covenant of God.

The call of the Lord etched into the plate still echoes today:

“Come home.”

The Book of the Law of the Lord

Consisting of an inspired translation of some of the most important parts of the Law given to Moses, and a very few additional commandments with brief notes and references

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints

1851 (A. R. I.)
(Public Domain)

Edited and Printed by
The Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship

2026

(CC BY-ND 4.0)

Testimony

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, to whom this Book of the Law of the Lord shall come, that James J. Strang has the plates of the ancient Book of the Law of the Lord given to Moses, from which he translated this law, and has shown them to us. We examined them with our eyes, and handled them with our hands. The engravings are beautiful antique workmanship, bearing a striking resemblance to the ancient oriental languages; and those from which the laws in this book were translated are eighteen in number, about seven inches and three-eighths wide, by nine inches long, occasionally embellished with beautiful pictures.

And we testify unto you all that the everlasting kingdom of God is established, in which this law shall be kept, till it brings in rest and everlasting righteousness to all the faithful.

Samuel Graham,
Samuel P. Bacon,
Warren Post,
Phineas Wright,
Albert N. Hosmer,
Ebenezer Page,
Jehiel Savage.

1851 (A. R. I.)

Preface

The necessity of a new translation of the Sacred Oracles into the English language has long been felt by all biblical students. The earliest translation of any part of the sacred writ into Anglo Saxon was the Psalter, by Aldhelm, the first Bishop of Sherborne, A. D. 706. Soon after, Eadfrid, Bishop of Holy Island, translated the four Gospels. This manuscript is in the British Museum. Bede, in the same century, translated the Bible into Anglo-Saxon. Alfred, king of England, a little later, translated the Psalter and part of the New Testament, an edition of which was published in London, A. D. 1640, edited by John Spelman, remains.

During the period in which the Anglo-Saxon was being changed into the present English language, a variety of translations and revisions were made of parts, and a few of the whole Bible. But in 1603, Dr. Reynalds induced King James of England to appoint fifty-four distinguished men to revise the entire Bible. Of this number, forty-seven assembled in six companies, and collated the various translations, both in English and other languages, with the copies in the original languages, and finally agreed upon what is commonly known as King James' Bible. It was first published in 1611. In 1683, it was corrected by Dr. Scattergood; in 1711 by Bishops Tension and Lloyd; afterwards by Dr. Paris; and last by Dr. Blaney in 1769, whose work is treated by nearly all Protestants as a standard edition, and all subsequent impressions profess to conform to it.

The Roman Catholics have a translation of the Old Testament made at the College at Doway, and of the New at Rheims, held in high repute by them, and doubtless quite as faithful as that of King James. There are also various other translations, little known and seldom referred to, yet approved by some of the minor sects. These are generally mere revisions, in which different editors and revisers have made changes to suit their peculiar views and interests, and still bearing upon their faces the unmistakable mark in almost every chapter of some translator previous to King James' famous revision. The peculiar merit of each is not in its general fidelity, but in its more accurate rendering of particular passages or words of scripture. Neither King James nor the Doway has attained its present eminence by its own merits, but each by the patronage with which it is sustained. In thousands of instances, the same word in the original is translated by a different word in English, when no reason

for the variance can be given, except its influence on some particular doctrine. The names of the same persons are in different places written in so different a manner as not to be recognized by the unlearned, as Elias and Elijah, Isaiah and Esais, Osea and Oshea, Joshua and Jesus, Jacob and James, Mary and Miriam.

In various places, the translators have been utterly unable to translate at all, the meaning of the original words being quite lost; as the word bdellium, Gen. 2:12; Ezekiel 9:4, was commanded to go through Jerusalem and make a particular mark upon the foreheads of the men that sigh and mourn for all the abominations committed there. But what that mark was, translators have been utterly unable to determine. In the Hebrew, it is the last letter of the alphabet, thau or tau (Tav), which in the genuine or ancient Hebrew character is identical with the sign of the cross. Roman Catholics, therefore, interpret it as the sign of the cross. If this plausible interpretation is the true one, it is yet unaccountable that the form of the sign was changed when the Hebrew came to be written in the Chaldee character. Protestants, to destroy the plausibility of this interpretation, render the passage "set a mark," leaving out the very mark itself, which the prophet mentioned with so much particularity. The Protestant leaves out a part of the scripture, which he cannot understand, and the Catholic puts it in, utterly ignorant of what it means. Human ingenuity can never surmount the difficulty. Only an inspired translation can tell us what mark the prophet was to put upon their foreheads.

Everything in written or spoken language is the subject of interpretation, and in many instances doubtless there is a real difference of opinion among the learned as to the true interpretation of the scriptures, in the original tongues; and, therefore, if divested of all sectarian feeling, they could not agree upon a new translation; nor if agreed, could they be assured that they were certainly correct.

But there is another objection to resting a religious faith on those works, of far greater consequence. The copies from which the translations are made are not authenticated as accurate copies. In the various ancient copies collated, not less than thirty thousand variations in the reading have been discovered and marked. And yet all the copies of the Old Testament collated are derived from that of AARON BEN ASHER, written about A. D. 1034, or 2525 years subsequent to the giving of the tables of the law. The Jews of Middle and Eastern Asia have their various copies, varying from one another, derived from that of JACOB BEN NAPHTALI, who was contemporary with AARON BEN ASHER,

and whose copy varied greatly from his. The black Jews of India have still another copy, for which they claim a high antiquity, also varying greatly from each of the others. The Samaritan Pentateuch presents the highest claim to antiquity of all these various works, and contains many words, sentences, and even whole chapters, not found in the common Bibles. Of the New Testament, the earliest copies are, first, the copy of Beza, now in the University of Cambridge, containing the four Gospels and the Acts of the Apostles, with the old Italian or Latin translation, written probably in the fifth century. Second, the Vatican copy, written at some period from the fourth to the sixth century. Third, the Alexandrian copy, claimed to have been written soon after the Nicene Council, but is not certainly entitled to a higher antiquity than the tenth century.

The most ancient of all manuscripts lack several important passages, now contained in all Testaments, and the controversialists of those days did not allude to them, though put to narrow straits for the testimony contained in them, by which we know that those passages are forgeries of a later date.

Several books are also mentioned in the scriptures, not now found in the Bible, but of equal authority with it, which have been lost; as for instance, another epistle of Paul to the Corinthian and the Ephesian churches, and the books of Iddo, Nathan, and others, prophets of high rank in Israel.

But of all the lost books, the most important was the Book of the Law of the Lord. This was kept in the ark of the covenant and was held too sacred to go into the hands of strangers. When the Septuagint translation was made, the Book of the Law was kept back, and the Book was lost to the Jewish nation during the time that they were subject to foreign powers. The various books in the Pentateuch, containing abstracts of some of the laws, have been read instead of it, until even the existence of the book has come to be a matter of doubt.

It is from an authorized copy of that book, written on metallic plates long previous to the Babylonian captivity, that this translation is made. And being made by the same spirit by which the words were originally dictated, it is beyond doubt as perfect as the language will admit of. The utmost pains have been taken to make the execution of it in all respects what it should be, and the editor flatters himself that no error has crept into the body of the work, and none of importance into the notes. That a little ambiguity may exist in some places, by means of the ambiguous or double import of words, is not doubted. Until a perfect language exists, it is not possible that it should be otherwise.

BOOK OF THE LAW

Chapter 1

The Decalogue

See 4 Moses 3; 5 Moses 1

1 Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy might, and with all thy strength: Thou shalt adore Him, and serve Him, and obey him: Thou shalt have no other gods before thee: Thou shalt not make unto thee any image or likeness of anything that is in the heaven above, or in the earth beneath, or in the waters of the earth, to bow thyself unto it, or to worship it: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto, nor adore anything that thine eye beholdeth, or thy imagination conceiveth of; but the Lord thy God only; for the Lord thy God is a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, from generation to generation, even upon all that hate Him, and showing a multitude of mercies unto them that keep His commandments.

2 Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain: Thou shalt not usurp dominion as a ruler; for the name of the Lord thy God is great and glorious above all other names: He is above all, and is the only true God; the only just and upright King over all: He alone hath the right to rule; and in His name, only he to whom He granteth it: Whosoever is not chosen of Him, the same is a usurper, and unholy: The Lord will not hold him guiltless, for he taketh His name in vain.

3 Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy. Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work, but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God: In it thou shalt not do any work; thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, nor thy manservant, nor thy woman servant, nor thy cattle, nor the stranger that is within thy gates: For in six ages the Lord thy God made the heavens and the earth, the sea and all that in them is, and rested the seventh age: Wherefore the Lord thy God blessed the seventh day and hallowed it: Thou shalt keep it holy unto Him, that thou forget not the Law, nor be found keeping the company of the vile, nor be despised by the righteous.

4 Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself: Thou shalt not revile him, nor speak evil of him, nor curse him: Thou shalt do no injustice unto him; and thou shalt maintain his right, against his enemy: Thou

shalt not exact rigorously of him, nor turn aside from relieving him: Thou shalt deliver him from the snare and the pit, and shalt return his ox when he strayeth: Thou shalt comfort him when he mourns, and nurture him when he sickens: Thou shalt not abate the price of what thou buyest of him, for his necessity; nor shalt thou exact of him, because he leaneth upon thee: For in so doing thousands shall rise up and call thee blessed, and the Lord thy God shall strengthen thee in all the work of thy hand.

5 Honour thy father and thy mother: Give heed to their commandments, obey their laws, and depart not from their precepts: Reverence their age, and seek unto their house all the days of thy life: Exalt not thyself against them, nor withhold to build up their house above thine own: Honour and obey the king and the judges, and the rulers, and all that are set in authority; for they are as fathers among the people: That they may be a fear unto evil doers; and the Priest also, who stands before the Lord, that he may instruct thee: And thy days shall be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

6 Thou shalt not kill: Thou shalt slay no man in malice; neither thy child, nor thy wife, nor thy bondman, nor thy bondwoman, nor thy servant, nor the child of thy servant: Neither shalt thou slay thine enemy, except thou admonish him, and entreat him, and he hear thee not, and God give him into thy hand: Thou shalt only slay him in lawful war: And if any man trespass against thee, and break through, and do violence, thou shalt not slay him in revenge. If thou overtake him in the trespass, thou mayest resist unto blood; but except thou slay him in the trespass, thou shalt deliver him to the Judge; he shall judge him, and the hand of the officer shall be on him.

7 Thou shalt not commit adultery: Thou shalt not in any wise lie with the wife of thy neighbor; and if she seduce thee, thou shalt resist her; that thou pollute not thyself, and make not the place of thy house unclean, and destroy not the house of thy neighbor, and that thou cause no violence in the land. Thou shalt not lie with the wife of the stranger; neither shalt thou lie with the wife of thine enemy; lest thy children be scattered abroad, and know not thee, nor the fear of thee be upon them, and they be strangers to the covenant of God, and the whole land be corrupt, and thine offspring be destroyed with the wicked.

8 Thou shalt not steal: Thou shalt not trespass upon anything that is thy neighbor's, to take it from him, nor to destroy it: Neither shalt thou trespass upon the stranger that dwelleth within thy gates, to destroy his substance, nor to take it from him; for to thee he looketh

for justice, and a shield round about all that he hath; and the fear of the Lord thy God is upon him also, and to his righteousness he also seeketh: Neither shalt thou overreach him by cunning, nor by stratagem, to take his substance from thy neighbor, nor the stranger within thy gates. Remember that ye were strangers, and were oppressed, and oppress not the stranger, lest his cry ascend to God against you.

9 Thou shalt not bear false witness: Thou shalt not speak falsely before the king, nor before the judge, nor in the assembly of the princes, nor in the presence of the ruler, nor unto the minister of the Law, nor among the multitude; nor in the ear of thy friend, nor to thy wife, nor thy child, nor thy servant: Neither shalt thou withhold the truth from the king, nor the judge, nor him that is set in authority: For thus shall righteousness be established in all thy borders.

10 Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's inheritance: Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, nor his bondman, nor his bondwoman, nor his manservant, nor his woman servant, nor his horse, nor his carriage, nor the instruments of his labor, nor the produce of his land, nor the things that he has made, nor the treasures that he has in store, nor anything that is thy neighbor's: Thy desire shall not be upon them, to take them by stealth, nor by fraud, nor by cunning, nor by violence: Neither shalt thou covet that which belongeth to the stranger that dwelleth within thy gates; but thou shalt improve thine own, and thy desire shall be unto it; lest thou be corrupt, and the hand of thy neighbors be against thee, and the cry of the poor ascend to God against thee.

NOTE – *These commandments were translated by the Prophet James from the plates which Laban had in Jerusalem in the time of Zedekiah, the king of Judah, and are the substance of the two tablets written by the finger of God, in the days of Moses. The exact words of the tablets were never written on any book, except that kept in the most holy place, the sanctuary of sanctuaries. But the substance was carefully written out by the inspired prophets, and the paraphrases so prepared, all transcribers of repute made their copies conform to. Subsequent to the Babylonian captivity, the Jews were destitute of the divine tablets and the true copy of the law which belonged to the sanctuary. In place of it, they had only the copies used by the prophets. These have been long since lost. All copies of the Hebrew scriptures formerly used among the Jews of Europe and*

western Asia were transcripts from a copy of Aaron Ben Asher, who flourished in the 11th century. Even this is gone, and now the best editions of the Hebrew Bible are made to conform to the earliest printed editions. Among those, that of Abraham Ben Chyam, printed at Soncino, a small town in Italy, in 1848, is preferred. It is the first edition of the entire Hebrew Bible ever printed, and but nine copies of it are known to exist on the earth.

It will not therefore be wondered at if these commandments have not come to us uncorrupted. Christ mentions as one of them and second in its value, "thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself" (Mark 12:31). Yet this is not contained within the rest in Exodus 20 and Deuteronomy 5. There are but nine commandments in the Mosaic code, as are common Bibles now read. How just in God, how necessary to us, the preservation of the plates of Laban, and their translation by an inspired prophet into our language.

Chapter 2

The True God

Written by the prophet James, by inspiration of God

1 The God^a of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob is our God; this is His name forever, and this is His memorial unto all generations. He created^b the heavens and the earth, and all things that are in them are the workmanship of His hands. He created^c man in his own image, that he might have dominion over the earth, and over the beasts of the field, and over the fowls of the air, and over the fishes of the sea.

2 Man, being in the likeness of God's person, they all recognize him as their Lord, and fear Him as a God. And notwithstanding his degeneracy, he has retained so much of the divine likeness; that beasts, birds, and fishes, fear him, and his power is over them as a mighty one. It is diminished as he has departed from the likeness and perfections of his Creator: And that spirit of rebellion, which man has received so redundantly, he has communicated to them also, that they rebel against him, as he rebels against God. Yet the fear^a of man is on them continually; and his dominion is over them throughout the earth.

^{1a} Ex. 3:15

^b Gen. 1; Ex. 20:11, 31:17;

Neh. 9:6; Psa. 8:3, 33:6-9,

89:11-12; Isa. 44:24, Jer. 10:12

^c Gen. 1:26-28, 5:1

^{2a} Gen. 9:2, Psa. 8:4-8, Jas. 3:7

3 God conversed^a with Adam as a familiar friend; and walked^b with Enoch, who was faithful unto him in the midst of a corrupt race: He communed^c with Noah, the father of a new world; and covenanted by His own oath, with Abraham the faithful.

4 He commanded^a a fiery law^b, with a voice of thunder, in Sinai: The earth quaked at the tread of his foot: The rustling of His garment was as low thunder; and His voice as a mighty thunderbolt: The beaming^c of His face was as the sun in the morning; and the flash of his eye as the fierce lightning. The nations^d trembled at his presence; and the tribes said: Not unto us; not unto us, O Lord God, but unto Moses, be thy voice known.

5 For they heard the voice of God, as the voice of a trumpet; and as loud thunder: And they saw the lightning; and the mountain smoking; and they felt the earth tremble; and they fled^a far away, crying, Not unto us; not unto us: But unto Moses, declare thy Law, O God, and we will obey his voice, and live, for, who shall abide in thy presence?

6 His Word was made known to the Prophets, and His sacraments were established in Israel. Kings ruled in His glorious name; and the nations who forgot Him were destroyed.

7 He hath appointed everlasting life in the Lord Jesus; and given the keys^a of death and of hell unto Him who alone among mortals, hath kept His glorious word in all things. He hath chosen Him the first^b born among many brethren; for He is the first^c begotten of the dead, and hath the keys^d of the resurrection, and of life forevermore.

8 He maketh His^a Apostles the witnesses of His Law, unto the nations; and of His Gospel unto every kindred, and tongue, and people. His Word is among men; and the revelation of His power, in the midst of the earth.

9 The Lord our God is glorious in His perfections; there is none like Him. The gods of the heathen have no voice; neither do they see, nor understand. The god of Babylon the Great, the Mother of Churches, before whom all her daughters bow down^a, is naught; He is as wind, and vanity; he can neither be seen nor heard, nor felt; He hath no dwelling place: where shall any abide with him? Passionless,

3a Gen. 2, 3
 b Gen. 5:24
 c Gen 6:14, 21; 7:1, 4; 8:15,
 22; 9:1, 17
 4a Ex. 29:16-20, Deut. 33:2
 b Job 37:2-5

c Hab. 3:4, 1 Tim. 6:16
 d Ps. 97:4
 5a Ex. 20:18-21, Heb. 12:19
 7a Rev. 1:18
 b Rom. 8:29, Col. 1:15-18
 c Rev. 1, 5

d John 11:25-26
 8a Matt. 28:19-20; Mark 16:16;
 Luke 24:48; Acts 1:8, 10:41-42
 9a Nicene creed, creed of St.
 Athanasius, Meth. art. of
 religion, section i

is he; and can neither love the good, nor hate the evil: who shall adore him, or fear him?

10 Without members and parts; he cannot hear, see, feel, smell, or taste. Neither can he speak, nor come unto those that worship him, nor smite the disobedient and rebellious. Handless, footless, mouthless, eyeless, and earless; a shapeless chaos, conceived in the imagination of the vain: Ye shall not fear him, nor bow down unto him, nor adore him.

11 The Lord our God hath an incommunicable name; never polluted by the breath of the ungodly, which none can know, but he who ministereth in His holy sanctuary^a; by which He revealed himself unto Moses; and in which He establisheth this Law, for an everlasting covenant.

12 God alone hath immortality. Adam, the first of men, the Ancient^a of Days, the great Prince; Abraham, to whom God gave^b an everlasting possession; David, whose throne^c was established as the days of heaven, forever; all died. Enoch, who walked^d with God, and was not found, because God took him; and Elijah^e, who ascended to the throne of God, in his own fiery chariot; shall return^f to the earth to sleep with their fathers. The change which is sealed^g upon all the sons of Adam, shall come upon the faithful, who stand on the earth, when the Lord^h Jesus shall be revealed from heaven, in flaming fire, taking vengeance on those who know not God, and obey not the Gospel. And He, the Princeⁱ of the Kings of the earth; who in the days to come, shall speak^j with the voice of a trumpet, and the dead shall hear His voice and live; died^k once, that He might live forevermore. He praised God, who alone hath immortality^l, that He would not leave him in the place of the dead: He preached the Gospel to the spirits in prison, and obtained^m the key of life everlasting. But God alone liveth forever: the eternalⁿ ages are unto Him as moments to us: infinities, as units to the mathematician. Our^o God alone hath immortality.

11a Dx. 6:3, and note: Jehovah is not this name, but is only written instead of it. For his secret name was only written in that copy of the law kept in the arch of the testimony. It was never spoken out of the sanctuary, nor above the brest, & only where there were three High Priestes after the order of Melchizedek

*12a 1835 DaC 3:28 (DoS Appendix 1 3:28, CJCLdS DaC 107:28, RLDS DaC 104:53-55); Dan. 7:9-22
b Gen. 27:8
c Ps. 89:29-36, 2 Sam. 7:16, Isa. 9:6-7, Jer. 33:20-26, Luke 1:32-33
d Gen. 5:24
e 2 Kings2:11
f Rev. 6:7-9*

*g 1 Cor. 15:22, 51-52
h 2 Thes. 1:7-8
i Rev. 1:5, 11:15, 17:14, 19:52; 1 Thes. 4:16
j John 5:25-28, 1 Cor. 15:52. 1 Thes. 4:16
k Rev. 1:18, Heb. 7:24
l Ps. 16:10, Ac. 2:27
m 1 Pet. 3:19, Luke 23:43
n John 27:2, 11:25-26
o 1 Tim 6:16, Isa. 57:15*

Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

13 God alone hath omniscience. He clotheth himself in light as a robe: His ministers, who at midday, are as a flaming fire in the dark night, are blind before him^a; He apprehendeth the motion of the atom which floateth in the invisible element, and discerneth the speck in the center of the star, which the light of the sun hath not reached since the day that the sons of God shouted for joy that the earth was created, as a mountain in the eye of mortals. He never sleepeth; His eye closeth not; and there is no darkness before Him. Our God alone hath omniscience. Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

14 God alone hath omnipotence. He looketh upon the nations, and they melt in the fury of his countenance: He frowneth, and the mountains dissolve to smoke; the valleys are consumed in the breath of His nostrils. He spoke, and worlds^b were created: He thought, and they were lost in space. Earthquakes are but the whisperings of His voice; the rustling of His attire causeth lightning, and thunder; and with the shadow of His garment, He blotteth out the sun. The Prince of the kings of the earth; by^c whom the world was created; and who liveth and reigneth forever, receiveth^d power from Him, and rendereth it unto Him. Who shall stand before Him? Our God^e alone hath omnipotence. Thou shalt love him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

15 God alone is omnipresent. His presence filleth the immensity of space as a point. In the midst of the bottomless pit, is He; the pavilion of His feet^a, is the face of the earth: The stars, are His home: His breath, is fragrant odour to the blessed, in the highest heaven; and it^b enliveneth the crumbling frame of the dead. The rays of the sun, have not found His bourn; nor the light of the stars, the place He inhabiteth not. His rest outspeedeth the lightning; it leaveth the morning ray behind it; and His speed is more rapid than the thought of angels. Our^c God alone is omnipresent. Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

16 God alone is one. There are choirs of angels; hosts of spirits; and multitudes of men: but God hath no fellow. A great king is to Him

13a Ps. 139:11-12, Dan.

2:22, Heb. 4:13

14a Jer. 10:10

b Ps. 33:6-9, Isa. 10:26-28, Jer. 51:15, 2 Peter 3:5

c Eph. 3:9, Col 1:16-17,

Heb. 1:2

d Eph. 1:19-22, 1 Cor

15:24, Acts 17:24-26

e Jer. 32:17, Rom 11:36

15a Acts 17:27-28

b Ezek. 37:5, 9-10, 14;

Ps. 104:29-30

c Ps. 1309:7-10

1851 (A. R. I.)

as the unseen spawn before the monsters of the deep; Methuselah, as the ephemera^a of a day: the most glorious spirit is bodiless, and a breath. And the Lord Jesus, who created the earth, and redeemed it; whose kingdom filleth the earth, and the heavens; possesseth but a speck, amid the stars he made. He alone^b is one. Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength. Thou shalt adore Him, and serve Him, and obey Him; and beside Him, thou shalt have no other God: For He alone hath immortality, and omniscience, and omnipotence, and omnipresence. He alone is one, and they who obey His Law^c shall be like Him.

Chapter 3

Blessing of Infants

Compare to 1 Moses 27:20-25, Adam and Eve 10:2-12

1 When the Lord thy God in multiplying blesseth thee, and giveth thee a child in thine own image; thou shalt bring him before the Lord thy God, in His house, or in the assembly of the Elders; and they shall lay their hands upon him, and bless him. Thou shalt not delay to do it; and though thou be far away, yet shalt thou bring him before he is eight years old: That the blessing of the Lord thy God may be put upon him; and his heart shall seek to the Kingdom of God, and its righteousness: for of such is the Kingdom. If he die, yet shall he live therein forever. He shall be thine.

2 And the child of thy servant also, and of thy bondman, shalt thou bring to receive this blessing: And the stranger that dwelleth with thee shall bring his child also, to receive his blessing: For thus shall the power of the Kingdom be a shield unto him, and his heart shall cleave unto its righteousness; that he may be established therein forever.

3 And whosoever shall bring a child to be blessed; whether it be father, or mother; or master, or mistress; the same shall teach the child this Law to keep it. Thus shall ye be honored as fathers and mothers in Israel: But, if ye do it not, and evil befall the child, his blood be upon you.

4 The Apostles, High Priests, and Elders, in their assemblies; and

16a 2 Pet. 3:8

b 1 Cor. 8:6; Deut. 4:35-39;

1 Kings 8:60; Isa. 14:5-6, 18-22, 46:9; Mark 7:32

c 1 John 3:2, Phil. 3:21

the Priest thereunto appointed in the Temples of God, shall bless with this blessing: for, behold, it is a great sacrament.

NOTE – *The blessing of infants is no new sacrament. It was practiced by Jesus Christ during his ministry. Mark 10:13-16, Luke 18:15-17. After the practice of baptizing infants was introduced, in the days of the apostasy of the church, it was confounded with confirmation. But there was a manifest impropriety in confirming unconscientious infants, that the sacrament was necessarily postponed to a later period of life. By this means, the blessing, a sacrament, was quite lost. Yet it is retained among Romanists, the eastern Christians of various sects, and some Protestants, not as a sacrament, but as a nonessential ceremony attending baptism, or sprinkling, which most of them have substituted for baptism.*

Chapter 4

Baptism

Compare to 4 Moses 31:1-4, Judgements of YHVH 12:5-9

1 Except a man be born of the water, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.

2 But no man may have baptism of water, except such as have faith toward God, and come unto him through the ministry he has sent; repenting of evil deeds, and seeking to learn righteousness by the living word: For this is the door of all into the kingdom; from eight years old and upwards; through which if ye enter not, ye shall not see God.

3 For the keys of the ministry of the remission of sins, in the sacrament of baptism, hath the Lord, your God, bestowed upon His Apostles; and through them, upon their fellow laborers, the High Priests, Elders, and Priests; commanding them to preach repentance and remission of sins to all nations throughout the earth.

NOTE – *So entirely essential is baptism to salvation that in all ages the servants of God have taught that without it there was no salvation in God's Kingdom. Christ told Nicodemus,*

“Except a man be born of water and the spirit, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God” (John 3:5). Peter preaching, said, “Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus, for the remissions of sins” (Acts 2:38). Ananias said to Paul, “arise and be baptized, every one of you, and wash away thy sins” (Acts 22:16). The essentiality of baptism continued a part of the faith of Christianity in nearly all the world, until very recently. It is now acknowledged by both Romanists and Greeks, and is contained in the liturgy of the Episcopal churches of England and Scotland. Indeed, those churches which deny it have generally lost all form of godliness, as well as the substance, and are certainly little more than voluntary societies of free enquirers, having at best but a floating faith in Christianity.

The baptism for the dead, which was practiced in the Apostolic Church (1 Corinthians 15:29), is quite lost among them. The necessity of additional revelation in this age is clearly proved in this very fact. Paul plainly declares the sacrament of baptism for the dead to have been administered in the Corinthian church. Yet nowhere in the Bible is it shown who are the subjects, or who the administrators of the sacrament. Protestants are generally quite ignorant, both as to this and all other sacraments. But the Romanists even acknowledge that the infallibility of their church does not reach to this matter (Millner’s End of Religious Controversy, Letter xii., page 91, Dunningan, 1846). Baptism for the dead has been practised among us for several years, by a gracious dispensation of God. It is now performed only at vori. The following chapter contains the dispensation and law by which alone we practice it, and was given by revelation, August 9th, 1849.

Chapter 5

Baptism for the Dead

A revelation from Jesus Christ, given to James J. Strang, Aug. 9, 1849

1 A revelation from Jesus Christ, according to the power which God appointed unto him; and he sent Elijah the prophet unto his servant James, to make it known unto him, and to command him to cause the living and the dead to hear the Word, and to give him power to

turn the hearts of the fathers to their children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers: Hearken unto me, all ye ends of the earth, saith the Lord God, and give ear and hear, ye depths of the pit, and ye shall live; for I have committed the Gospel of the resurrection and of everlasting life to my servants who hold the keys of the dispensation of the last times; therefore, hearken unto them and obey them, ye that live; that you may obtain honor, and glory, and power, and everlasting life.

2 Behold, I have tried my Saints with a great trial, and some have been found faithful; for they have not denied my name, but have remembered my word, and kept my commandments. And because my servants have put away contentions from among them, and have united with one heart and one mind to do the work which I have committed unto them, and with their whole hearts have drawn near unto me to serve me; therefore I appoint unto the Saints that there shall be baptisms for the dead at Voree, during their poverty, and until a sufficient time to build a temple unto my name, as I have commanded them.

3 And I sanctify White River unto them, and make it holy for this ordinance, even from the bathing pool unto the water wheel.

4 And I command you, ye Saints, saith the Lord, that a record shall be kept among you of all baptisms for the dead; and witnesses shall record their testimonies of all your administrations therein.

5 And the recorder shall be present, and shall be an eye witness of your baptisms; and shall hear with his ears, that he may testify of a truth; that in all your recordings, it may be recorded in heaven; that whatsoever you bind on earth, may be bound in heaven; and whatsoever you loose on earth, may be loosed in heaven. And if more than one recorder be necessary, yet there shall be but one record, to which all the recorders shall bring their testimonies to be recorded.

6 And whosoever acts as recorder, shall be called and ordained to that authority, that what he records may be valid, and may be recorded in the archives of heaven. And let all your records be had in order, that they may be put in the archives of my holy temple, saith the Lord, to be had in remembrance from generation to generation. And no one shall administer baptism for the dead, but he who is appointed thereunto; and all who are called, shall be anointed and ordained to this calling.

7 And these shall be baptized for the dead: all the faithful Saints who keep and abide in the Order of Enoch; all who have paid tithing according to my law, for the building of a house unto my name in

Voree, and for the upbuilding of my Church; all who from this time forward will and do come up and do these things, striving faithfully to redeem the time, that a house may be speedily built unto my name, wherein I may reveal mysteries, and institute among the Saints the ordinances for the endowment of Zion and all her municipals; and all who, standing in the Priesthood, have labored faithfully in their several ministries from the time the commandment went forth to build a house unto my name in Voree.

8 And for these shall ye be baptized: every Saint according to his right, and in his order, shall be baptized for any deceased husband, wife, posterity, or progenitor, to the third and fourth generation; any brother, or sister, whom he in faith believes has received the Gospel in the spirit. Every Saint shall be baptized for any relative unto the third and fourth generation: For any person betrothed to him in marriage; for any foster father, mother, brother, sister, or child, who shall be signified to him by tongue, or dream, or vision, or spirit ministering in fire, or angel, or voice from God. And if I will that any of my faithful servants of the Aaronic Priesthood be baptized for any other, I will send my angels to signify it unto them: But unto my servants of the Melchizedek Priesthood will I speak by mine own voice, or minister in fire.

9 And, behold, every Apostle shall be baptized for whosoever shall be committed to them for redemption from death, by my word, saith the Lord, as I reveal my will severally unto them, that they may be saviors of the dead, and may get honor, and glory, and majesty, and dominion unto themselves forevermore; and by their voices will I appoint redemption, and honor, and glory unto whomsoever I will.

10 Behold, my servants Joseph, and Hyrum, and David, and Moses, and many of their fellow laborers in this dispensation, who have gone with them to the pit to preach redemption to the prisoners have prevailed; and waiting hosts cry unto you that live, continually, saying: How long do ye forget our prison house of darkness, and regard not us who perish continually? Therefore, I have remembered the little flock who have not denied my name, to make them great in my everlasting kingdom, and to give dominion over the dead unto them, saith the Lord.

11 And now, let all who are scattered abroad, and all who have robbed me through covetousness, and in tithes and offerings, and all who have neglected to administer in the Gospel as I have called them: Come, and from this time forward, assist my servants who are

building a house unto my name, and who are proclaiming my word unto the nations, that they may enjoy this blessing with them; for only they who labor shall receive the reward, and those who labor to build my house, and to proclaim my Word, and to establish my kingdom, will I make saviors; and upon mount Zion shall they stand with crowns on their heads.

NOTE – Baptism for the dead, unlike the other sacraments, seems to have been unknown to the patriarchs. But they lived in faith of it (Isaiah 14:9, 15; Ezekiel 31:14-17, 32:18, 21-27, 29-32), knew what God had appointed to the wicked. Ezekiel testifies that after they are dead they shall be visited and comforted (Ezekiel 32:31). After Christ introduced a dispensation of the Gospel to them (1 Peter 3:18-20, 4:6), his church practiced baptism for the dead (1 Corinthians 15:29).

Chapter 6

Confirmation

See Wars of YHVH 22:17-22, Judgements of YHVH 12:29-35

1 Except a man be born of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God.

2 Whosoever shall be baptized for the remission of sins, upon him shall the Apostles, High Priests, or Elders, lay their hands, and confirm him in the Kingdom, and give unto him, by their hands, a gift of the Holy Spirit, according as the Spirit will.

3 And the Spirit thus given shall inspire him with faith, intelligence, and understanding; and if he cherish it, then shall it guide and establish him in all righteousness.

4 For when they lay their hands upon him, the Spirit, like an invigorating breeze, shall come upon him and cover him; and it shall inspire him with a new power, according to the gifts of the Spirit; and as it passeth off and leaveth him, his gift shall continue, and he shall walk in newness of life.

Chapter 7

Eucharist

Compare to The Life of Adam & Eve 12:8-22

1 In your feasts of love, in your solemn assemblies, in your humiliation, and in your sorrow, ye shall separate of the juice of fruit, and of the bread of grain, a portion to be consecrated unto God, that it be the body and blood of the one great sacrifice of propitiation for the sins of the world: And they who are washed of their sins, and have a pure conscience before God, shall eat and drink thereof at the hands of the Apostles and High Priests, who shall consecrate it, and the Priests and Elders, who shall minister it, that, partaking of the sacrifice, they may lay hold on eternal life.

2 For this is the one great sacrifice, which except ye eat of it, there is no life in you. And beware how ye eat of this sacrifice: for in the spirit in which ye eat and drink, shall ye be confirmed and strengthened. And if ye eat and drink in a pure conscience, not having offended against God nor man, and all your former sins blotted out of the Book of Remembrance; ye shall be established in righteousness, and grow up into everlasting life. But, if ye eat and drink in your sins, ye eat and drink condemnation, confirming yourselves in your iniquities.

3 Therefore, when ye come to the table of the Lord your God, to eat of this sacrifice, ye shall examine yourselves, whether you have done injustice to man, or iniquity against God, that ye may humble yourselves before God, and make restitution to man; and may come with clean hands, and a pure heart, to this most holy sacrament.

Chapter 8

Marriage

See 4 Moses 44:15-16; 5 Moses 25:1-3

1 When thou takest a wife, thou shalt take such a one as thou lovest, and who loveth thee, and whom thou mayest lawfully marry: and thou shalt go before an Apostle, a High Priest, or the Chief of the

Elders where thou dwellest, or the Priest who administereth in the Temple or the Synagogue; and by him shall ye be joined in marriage, that she may be thine in life, thine in the resurrection, and thine in life everlasting; and that the children which she beareth thee, may be with thee in the everlasting Kingdom.

2 And he who joineth you in marriage, shall unite her unto thee by an indissoluble bond; and shall give thee grace to love her, and cherish her, and protect her; and grace unto her to love thee, and nourish thee, and honor thee.

Chapter 9

Healing

Compare to 4 Moses 34:1-14

1 If Satan afflict thee that thou be sick, thou shalt send for the Elders, and they shall anoint thee with oil, and pray for thee, and rebuke the power of the adversary, and bless thee that thou recover of the disease.

2 But if thy sickness continue, and God deliver not thee therefrom, thou shalt confess thy sins to them, and they shall forgive thee; and thou shalt come to the assembly of those who have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb.

3 If an evil spirit enter into any of thine, and torment him, or lead him about, thou shalt send for the Elders or High Priests; and they shall put their hands upon him, and look upon him, and rebuke the evil spirit, and cast him out.

Chapter 10

Absolution

See 5 Moses 24:25-30

1 If thou sin a sin against God, or do an evil thing unto man, thou shalt go unto him who is God's Shepherd, wheresoever thou art, and between him and thee alone shalt confess unto him, and shalt keep

1851 (A. R. I.)

nothing back; and he shall lay upon thee restitution, and penance, and shall judge thee in righteousness; and what he judgeth, that shalt thou do, according to all the words of the Law of the Lord thy God, and he shall forgive thee thy sin, according as God hath spoken.

2 And thou shalt in all things make restitution, as he judgeth thee; and if he require thee to confess unto the judge who sitteth in judgment, or to any who is placed in authority, or to him thou hast injured, thou shalt do it; and otherwise thy sin remaineth upon thee.

Chapter 11

Ordination

See Wars of YHVH 21:11-19

1 Thou shalt not take upon thyself the honour of the Priesthood; neither shalt thou confer this honour on any but him whom the Lord thy God shall call. For no man shall administer in the name of God, but he that is called by the revelation of God's will, and set apart by the hands of those upon whom the authority of His name is sealed.

2 Whosoever is called by the voice of God to the royal authority, shall be anointed and ordained by the hands of those who stand in royal authority above him: But he that is first, by the angels of God; that he may have all the gifts; even wisdom, knowledge, faith, revelation, prophecy; and whatsoever gift is good for the Chief Shepherd of the flock of God: That he may be able to rule in righteousness: and they for their several callings, among God's flock.

3 And whosoever is called to administer at the altar, and in sacraments and ceremonies, shall be consecrated and set apart by the hands of those in like authority, according to the calling of God, for his ministry.

4 And whosoever consecrates another to the Priesthood of God, and the authority of His name, shall, with his hands upon his head, by his voice declare and seal upon him the name and authority of God; even that Priesthood unto which he consecrateth him.

Chapter 12

Adoption

See 5 Moses 25:13-16

1 If thou wilt in any wise adopt a child to be thine own, and to be heir to thee, thou shalt take him whom thou lovest, and whom thou mayest lawfully take; and thou shalt go before an Apostle, a High Priest, or the Chief of the Elders where thou dwellest, or the Priest who administers in the Temple or the Synagogue; and thou shalt take the child upon thy knee, and clasp him in thine arms, and shalt protest that thou lovest him as thine own flesh; and he shall seal him unto thee in the name of thy God: and shall sprinkle water upon him, and consecrate him thy flesh: and shall bless thee, and bless him in thy house; and he shall be thine forever. God shall give thee grace to be a father unto him, and grace unto him to honour thee.

2 And if thou hast a child who was not born in wedlock, and wilt assure him unto thee, thou shalt in like manner bring him, and protest he is thine, and he shall be sealed unto thee, that he be thine forever.

Chapter 13

Calling of a King

The first six sections were written by the prophet James, by inspiration of God, and the nine following sections are the words of the angel of God when he conferred upon James J. Strang the prophetic authority, and made him the shield shepherd of the flock of God on earth.

1 The Lord your God hath made the earth and established it, and unto Him the dominion thereof belongeth. He created man and gave him dominion over it. The nations are the workmanship of His hands; and He hath the right to rule.

2 He appointed kings, and rulers, and judges; but man rebelled against them. He made laws, but man broke them, and trampled on them, and forgot them.

3 Unto Noah gave He dominion over the earth: and to Shem after him; but the people rebelled against him and established their own

ways; and those that oppressed them were their kings and ruled over them in unrighteousness.

4 Moses was king in Israel; but the people kept not the Law of God; and, rebelling, set up a false god, and worshiped it. When God would make them kings to rule the earth, they despised His majesty, and went after other gods.

5 Men have everywhere rebelled against God: nevertheless, the earth is His, and the fulness thereof. the dominion of it belongeth to Him, and He conferreth it upon whomsoever He will.

6 He hath chosen His servant James to be king: He hath made him His Apostle to all nations: He hath established him a Prophet, above the kings of the earth; and appointed him king in Zion: by His own voice did He call him, and He sent His Angels unto him to ordain him.

7 And the Angel of the Lord stretched forth his hand unto him, and touched his head, and put oil upon him, and said: Grace is poured upon thy lips, and God blesseth thee with the greatness of the everlasting Priesthood. He putteth might, and glory, and majesty upon thee; and in meekness, and truth, and righteousness, will he prosper thee.

8 Thou shalt save His people from their enemies, when there is no arm to deliver; and shalt bring salvation, when destruction walketh in the house of thy God. Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity: therefore thy God hath anointed thee with oil, and set thee above all thy fellows.

9 Thy words shall be like sharp arrows in the heart of the wicked. Thou shalt rebuke those who pervert the word of thy God. Thou shalt preach righteousness and the sublime mysteries in the ears of many people; and shall bring the Gospel to many who have not known it, and to the nations afar off.

10 Thou shalt drive backward and put to shame those that do evil; and the workers of iniquity shall fall. They shall be cast down, and shall not be able to rise. With purity will the Lord thy God arm thee, and purity and truth shalt thou teach.

11 Keep the Law of the Lord thy God in thy heart; and none of thy steps shall slide. With thee is the fountain of truth: in thy light shall the people of thy God see; for thou shalt speak his words unto them, and from thy lips shall they receive it.

12 The blessing of their God shalt thou put upon them, and His curse upon evil doers, if, after being oft rebuked, they repent not: And

before my people shalt thou go, to lead them into my ways; for unto thee has the Lord thy God given salvation.

13 In righteousness shalt thou rule: thou shalt redeem the poor and the needy from suffering and violence; and to thee God giveth judgment for them. Thou shalt deliver the prey from the spoiler; for God, thy God, hath put them in thy hand.

14 And in weakness will He make thee strong; thou shalt rule among His people. Thou shalt break in pieces the rod of the oppressor, and the yoke of the unjust ruler; they shall flee away, but the way of peace shall they not find.

15 While the day of the wicked abideth, shalt thou prepare a refuge for the oppressed, and for the poor and needy. Unto thee shall they come, and their brethren who are scattered shall come with them; and the destruction of the ungodly shall quickly follow; for it already worketh; go thy way, and be strong.

Chapter 14

Duty of the King

See 5 Moses 16:5-18, Judgements of YHVH 2:17-24

1 The king, when he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom and ruleth, shall write for him a copy of the Book of the Law, according to that which is before the Lord continually; and it shall be with him, and he shall read therein all the days of his life; that the fear of the Lord his God be continually before him, and that he remember the Law, and forget not to administer justice and judgment throughout the earth; and that he turn not aside from the Commandment one way or the other; to the end that he prolong his days in the Kingdom, and of his children among the faithful.

2 He shall execute judgment among the people, and over the princes and rulers, and over all that sit in judgment: He shall deliver the poor, the needy, and the oppressed: And if their cry be faint, yet shall he hear; he shall be a father to the fatherless, and a husband to the widow, and a guardian to him who hath no protector.

3 He shall overthrow the rebellious, destroy traitors, and punish those that do wickedly. The haughty shall he make low, and the oppressor shall he tread down: those that exalt themselves, shall he

abase.

4 The power of the Lord God, He giveth to him, to rule the nations, and to execute judgments among the children of men: He shall declare the Laws and Commandments; exercise his dominion; and cast a shield round about the children of his people; that his dominion be not taken from him forever.

Chapter 15

Abstinence of the King

See 5 Moses 16:19-24

1 He shall not multiply to himself horses: he shall not multiply to himself carriages: He shall not multiply to himself ships: He shall not multiply to himself armor: He shall have all these to defend his people, and the children of his people, but not to oppress them.

2 He shall not multiply to himself wives; lest he forget the Law, and avenge not his people: and lest his heart turn from them to strange women.

3 He shall not multiply to himself servants of the children of his people; lest his yoke be oppressive.

4 He shall not multiply to himself silver and gold; lest he be proud, and turn away from this Law, and do it not.

5 Neither shall he lead his people to strange places to dwell therein, which the Lord thy God hath not appointed for their dwelling; lest they depart from the Law, and despise it.

6 He shall not make other Laws, despising this; but all his Laws and Commandments shall be according to the Law of the Lord thy God, to establish it. For the Lord thy God shall speak; he shall decree, and he shall alter it as seemeth good unto him, and none shall hinder.

Chapter 16

Viceroy

See Judgements of YHVH 2:25-32

1 The king, when he committeth the administration of his kingdom to another; or when he appointeth another to rule a portion in his name, may make him a viceroy, and confer upon him kingly dignity.

2 The viceroy shall keep the king's commandment, and shall not depart from it; he shall not exalt himself against the king: He shall keep none of his doings from the king; and he shall be faithful unto him, and to his house, in all things.

3 The viceroy shall make no laws: he shall govern according to the law of the king, and the Law of God: If he deviseth a new law, yet shall he not proclaim it, but by the king's commandment.

4 He shall not do that which is forbidden to the king; but he shall exercise prerogative by the king's commission, in whatsoever part of his dominion he shall appoint him: He shall not despise the king's commandment, nor do that which he disalloweth; lest he be a usurper, and be removed from his place.

Chapter 17

King's Council

See 5 Moses 16:25-33

1 The king shall be aided by a Council, to consist of wise men, chosen from among his people, learned in the Law of the Lord, and faithful unto the king; who shall assemble before him in council, as often as he shall require, to give him advice in whatsoever matter he shall ask them.

2 The king may apportion the administration of the laws, and of the affairs of his kingdom among them, giving to each his appropriate department, as the king shall command.

3 The members of the king's council shall dwell near the king;

1851 (A. R. I.)

they shall attend him on his journeyings, if he require it: They shall each give him information, reason, counsel and advice, of whatsoever matter he shall require, and shall keep nothing back.

4 Each member of the Council shall keep the charge of the king, which he committeth to him, in his several department; shall be a faithful steward of the king's substance, in his hands: and shall render the same, with a just account of his stewardship, as often as the king requires.

5 The counselors of the king shall be chosen by him as seemeth him good, being just men, learned in the Law, not proud, nor haughty; not given to much babbling; and they shall keep the king's secret all the days of their lives.

6 If they serve the king well, he shall reward them as just and faithful stewards; if they are unfaithful, he shall frown upon them: But he may choose new counselors, when it seemeth him good.

Chapter 18

King's Court

See 5 Moses 16:34-43, Judgements of YHVH 3:1-17

1 The king shall appoint wise men, learned in the Law of God, lovers of righteousness, not fearing the rich, nor despising the poor, to be judges; who shall sit before him continually, to judge all great causes. They shall sit upon the king's judgment seat, at his gate: The ear of the judges shall never be closed, that they cannot hear: This is the King's Court.

2 The king shall appoint twelve judges to this court, if so many are needed; all of them High Priests unto the Most High God; for the judging of all great matters; but all the smaller matters may be judged by other judges, as the king shall appoint, that these may judge the larger causes continually, and that they judge upon the judgment of other judges.

3 And the king shall order and determine what causes shall come before the King's Court, upon his judgment seat to be judged, and what causes shall be judged before the other judgment seats.

4 And the judges shall hear and judge, and determine speedily:

they shall not delay: And they shall judge righteous judgment, and shall not take reward, and do injustice.

5 And if they judge unrighteously, or refuse judgment to the just, or despise the Law, or take reward for judgment, the king shall remove them. When they have served faithfully, he shall relieve them in their age and infirmity.

6 The Deacons shall bring the disobedient, the stiffnecked, the peace breakers, and all who have done great wickedness, before the Judges, and shall execute their judgment on all who withstand it, and obey not.

7 The Deacons shall execute all the orders of the Court, and shall be a fear unto the disorderly, and all revilers. They shall do whatsoever the judges command.

8 The Chief Deacon shall be the steward of the king's substance, which he committeth to the judges, and shall render a just account of his stewardship to the king.

Chapter 19

City Court

See Judgements of YHVH 3:18-23

1 The king shall appoint judges in all the cities, three to a city, and more if the business of judgment require it: All of them Elders of the people; Priests of God; who shall sit upon the judgment seat of the city, and judge all the causes which shall come before them; even all such as the king shall appoint unto them to judge.

2 They shall sit in judgment, on the judgment seat in the Synagogue of their city, every Sabbath day, to do justice unto all men; and shall render speedy judgment upon all who have violated the laws.

3 The Deacons shall execute their judgment upon all who obey not, and shall bring before them the peace breakers, and all who do violence.

4 The Chief Deacon of the city shall be Steward of the king's substance, which he committeth to the judges, and shall render a just account. He shall also be the principal Minister of the Court.

Chapter 20

Twelve Apostles

See Wars of YHVH 19:17-27

1 When the Lord, your God, shall send the Gospel to the nations, He shall call and choose twelve Apostles, to be the witnesses of His name and Kingdom, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

2 He shall appoint them Shepherds of the flock; under the direction of the Chief Shepherd: He shall make them Princes in His Kingdom: He shall appoint them to declare his Law unto all nations; and to execute it among the Saints who are scattered abroad.

3 The Apostles, everyone, shall have jurisdiction of the Churches beyond the kingdom, by appointment of the Chief Shepherd: They shall exercise royal authority in the kingdom, by the king's commandment.

4 Let them bear a faithful testimony to the nations: let them not shun to declare the whole counsel of God; and He shall give them rest from their labors; they shall be princes forever.

5 One among them shall be Chief: to him shall they all give heed, as to a king among princes: Yet shall the Chief Shepherd be king over them all: They shall not rebel against his commandment; and they shall be princes in his kingdom forever.

Chapter 21

Seventies

See Wars of YHVH 19:28-34

1 The twelve Apostles shall select seventy Elders, chosen men, faithful in the ministry of the Word, to preach the Gospel, under their direction, unto all people.

2 One of the Seventy shall they appoint Chief: he shall be first in their assembly, and shall set them in order.

3 Other Seventies may the Apostles choose, until there shall be

seven Seventies; and one shall be appointed Chief of each Seventy, to set his fellows in order, and to be first in their assembly.

4 The Seventies shall labor in the ministry of the word, and of sacraments and ordinances, one-fourth of their time; and continually, if their households do not lack bread and raiment.

5 They shall have jurisdiction by appointment of the Apostles; and shall be Chief in the Churches they build up.

6 When they have labored faithfully, they shall have rest, and a goodly inheritance among the just; but if they come short in the ministry whereunto they are called, their power shall be taken from them.

7 The Chief of the Apostles shall be the prince and Grand Master of the Seventies: unto him shall they all give heed.

Chapter 22

Elders

See Wars of YHVH 21:4-10

1 The wise men in every city, who love righteousness, and hate iniquity; who seek unto the Law of God and its justice; who obey the king, and honor all who are placed in authority, shall be ordained Elders.

2 These shall be Judges and Rulers, and shall govern and instruct in their several callings, as they shall be appointed: they are the leaders of the people.

3 The Elders shall read this Law all the days of their lives, that they may instruct the people therein, to keep it; and that they may be able to serve the king as governors, and rulers, and judges, and commissioners, and masters of the king's business, in the several offices to which he shall appoint them.

4 When they go beyond the kingdom to minister in word, and sacraments, and ordinances, the Apostles shall rule over them.

5 But they shall give heed to the Chief among them in their several cities, and one of the king's counselors shall be the Grand Master of them all.

6 The Elders shall instruct the people in the Law and the Gospel on the Sabbath day, and in their assemblies: They shall visit the sick, the poor, and the needy: they shall comfort mourners, and all who are distressed, and counsel those who know not right.

Chapter 23

Priests

See Wars of YHVH 20:1-9

1 Faithful servants of God; godly in their walk and conversation; not given to strong drink, nor lust, nor lasciviousness; shall be ordained Priests, in all the cities, and in every town and village which hath a Synagogue.

2 They shall be Keepers and Ministers of the Temples and Synagogues, and shall be Ministers and Singers, and shall serve in all callings in the worship of God; and in all the ceremonies which shall be appointed for worship and adoration.

3 The Priests shall also assist the Elders in the work of preaching and shall visit from house to house to teach godliness among the people, and shall baptize for the remission of sins.

4 Whenever the Lord your God shall command you to build a Temple unto Him, that He may come and dwell in the midst of you, then will He establish a peculiar Priesthood, to administer the ordinances of that Temple.

5 One of the Priests in every Temple shall be Chief, and to him all shall give heed. But in every Synagogue the Priests shall give heed to the Chief of the Elders.

6 One of the king's counselors shall be Grand Master of all the Priests.

7 Godly women shall be Singers and Musicians, and assistants in the ceremonies, but they shall not kill sacrifices.

Chapter 24

Teachers

Compare to Wars of YHVH 20:10-13

1 In every city, town, and village, ye shall ordain Teachers, men and women who are apt to teach, learned in letters, and in every science, and every manner of wisdom and knowledge; that they may instruct you and your children, and that you may attain to all wisdom and all knowledge.

2 In every Synagogue shall Teachers be appointed to instruct the people on the Sabbath day in the ways of the Lord, and in the words of this Law. The children of the rich and the poor, shall come together to learn of them, without price. One of the king's counselors shall be the Grand Master of all the Teachers: He shall be Chief in their assemblies, and shall set them in order; to him shall they all give heed.

4 The Teachers of eminence shall be set apart as Doctors: But if any have attained to very great eminence, they shall be Rabbis, and the most eminent of all shall be Rabbonis.

5 Ye shall establish schools in all your cities, towns and villages; To every one shall a Teacher be appointed; but to the large schools many, that they may be able to faithfully instruct all who come unto them.

6 In every city shall ye establish an Academy: a learned Doctor shall be the Chief Teacher therein.

7 In every city shall a College be established: a learned Rabbi shall be Chief Teacher, and he shall have Doctors for his assistants.

8 If the city be very large, then may you establish other Colleges; and in all the cities, and large towns may you establish other Academies; and the Chief Teacher where there are several Academies, shall be a Rabbi; and where there are several Colleges, shall be a Rabboni.

Chapter 25

Deacons

Compare to Wars of YHVH 20:14-15, Judgements of YHVH 3:12-17, 24

1 In every city shall ye ordain Deacons; lovers of the Law; men of stout heart, strong arm, and swift foot: Men who neither despise the poor, nor fear the rich; kind, persevering, and just; seeking unto the Kingdom of God and its righteousness.

2 The Deacons shall be ministers unto the king, the judges, and the Elders, to execute their commandments, both in judgment and mercy: they shall be merciful and just.

3 The Deacons shall be Stewards and keepers of the king's prisons: and stewards of the king's courts.

4 In the cities, and towns, and prisons, shall Chiefs be appointed over them: but one of the king's counselors shall be their Grand Master.

NOTE – There is only a quorum of deacons to every city, including the towns and villages nearby. But wherever there is a prison, a court, or any institution requiring several deacons, one may be their chief, and other officers, as good order requires.

Chapter 26

Law of Inheritances

*A revelation from God, given to James J. Strang, July 8, 1850;
compare to Judgements of YHVH 1:4-7 & 8-18*

1 I have appointed the Islands of the Great Lakes for the gathering of the Saints, saith the Lord God. I have given the Islands to them for their inheritance; even all that man walketh not unto from the main.

2 And I have appointed my servant James the anointed Shepherd of my flock, to apportion unto every one his portion, for a perpetual inheritance.

3 Let him, therefore, appoint unto everyone his inheritance, sufficient for him, and for his children: And to the princes their portions, that they have an abundance for their servants, and their households; lest they be tempted to take reward for judgment, or feed not the poor for lack of bread, or deliver not the oppressed for the weakness of their arm.

The above three articles are a revelation given July 8th, 1850, during the sitting of the General Assembly. In the "Book of the Law," given to Israel in former days, was a similar revelation concerning the land of Canaan.

4 Ye shall not sell your inheritances: nor shall ye deliver them to the hands of strangers, to possess them. Ye shall in no wise grant them to others: for they are the dwelling of your wives, the food and raiment of your servants, and the home of your children.

5 If ye sell your inheritances, and take a price for them, yet shall not the purchaser possess them; they shall not be his forever. And though you thrust him not out, yet shall your wives, your servants, and your children return to them, and none shall hinder.

6 And a book of inheritances shall your king keep, and your rulers also shall keep them, that every man may read therein, and trespass not upon his neighbor.

7 Ye shall set up landmarks to your possessions, and no man shall move them. If ye set not up landmarks, or neglect to keep them up that they go to decay, and are lost, and one trespass unwittingly, ye shall not punish him. He shall pay for what he hath gotten, or he who hath suffered the trespass shall pay him for his labor, and take his own, if he will.

8 If strangers or enemies set up landmarks against you, ye shall destroy them: they shall not remain.

Chapter 27

Descent of Inheritances

See 5 Moses 26:9-28

1 If a man die leaving sons, his inheritance shall belong to them, and it may be parted among them. And to the firstborn, or he that

is worthy to be so reckoned, shall be given a double portion, that he may keep up the dignity of his father's house.

2 The sons which he hath adopted shall be reckoned with the sons he hath begotten: they are his. But if any of his sons have received an inheritance already, they shall not receive a portion with their father's children.

3 No man shall receive two inheritances, lest his neighbor have none. But if he receive another, or if he marry an heiress, he shall surely give up the former, that it may be given to him who hath none, or who lacketh a portion.

4 If a man die having no sons, but daughters, the inheritance shall belong to them: The men who shall take them to wife, shall be called after the name of their fathers, every man after the name of his wife's father: otherwise he shall not possess the inheritance. Thus shall the house and the name of him be kept up, who hath no son.

5 But if he have neither sons nor daughters, and he be found a righteous man, then may the king appoint his nearest kinsman who is found worthy, and is not the firstborn of his father, his heir; and he who is thus appointed shall be called after the name of him who had no child, thus shall his name and his house be kept up. Otherwise shall the king give his inheritance to him who is needy.

6 If a man desert his inheritance for a long time, that it be left to decay and waste, or become wild, that the portion of the house of the Lord, and the treasury of the king fail, then shall the king's servants possess it. And the king may take it to himself or grant it to another who needeth it.

7 If the sons of him who has left his inheritance return, the king's servants shall render it to them. But if the king has taken it to himself, or granted it to another, then shall the king give them another inheritance.

8 If any man will leave his inheritance to seek a place in another land which the Lord, your God, giveth you, then shall he render his inheritance to the king, who shall appoint him another, that his children may possess it instead of the former, and his house and his name be not lost among the Saints.

9 If the king seek men to go up to a new land to possess it by the Command of the Lord your God, then shall the sons among many brethren go up and establish their houses,

9 And their names shall be named upon their inheritances, that they may be kept up forever, and they shall not inherit with their brethren of the possessions of their father.

10 Thus shall every man have an inheritance, or a portion, and they shall not be divided till they are too small for you.

11 If an inheritance has been divided, and one who hath a portion die leaving no child, or render it up to receive another, it shall not be given to a stranger to his house. It shall return to the head of the family to whom the inheritance pertaineth.

12 And if he die leaving no sons, but a daughter, and any of her kinsman who has also a portion of that inheritance take her to wife, he shall have her portion with her.

Chapter 28

Place of Your Dwellings

See 5 Moses 17:4-9

1 Ye shall not scatter abroad, after the manner of other men, nor dwell alone in the fields; ye shall dwell together in cities, in towns, and in villages. Your inheritances shall be appointed to you, both in the places of your dwelling, and in the fields and forests round about.

2 In the fields and forests may you go and dwell, when you labor there, but ye shall return; and your treasures, your granaries, and your storehouses, shall be at the place of your dwellings.

3 And if ye would in any wise go and dwell among strangers to gain power over them, or to get riches, or for any other reason whatsoever, ye shall not go except by permission of your king and of the rulers whom he shall command, lest ye be led away of your own lusts, and be estranged from the Lord, your God, and be cast off forever. Moreover, if ye go without permission, ye shall be spoiled of your goods; and except ye repent and return, ye shall not have a place in the congregation before the Lord.

NOTE – Israel, in all ages, when they have been a people, have been gathered in large communities. While they wandered, they were in tribes and families, consisting of large bodies of

men.— Whenever they settled down, it was in cities, towns, and villages. This was their order from the time of Abraham till the taking of Jerusalem by the Romans.

The Hebrews of every lineage, wherever they have been a separate existence, follow this law. The Arabs, descendants of Abraham by Hagar, have never departed from it, and the Tartar tribes, his children from the line of Keturah, keep it till the present time. The American Indians, descended from the patriarch Joseph, keep up the custom in almost every place.

In Europe, the same custom prevails in many States and nations. With the German and Slavonian nations, this order is universal. Of the Russian provinces, less is known, but it is thought that the same custom is nearly universal there. It is also found to a great extent in Asia and Africa. It everywhere presents itself as a primal custom, particularly lost in the corruptions of the age.

Man was not designed for solitude and loneliness. Neither sound moral sentiment, the pure affections of the heart, or distinguished intelligence and usefulness are likely to grow up in solitude. Men, by living separate from each other, learn to hate.

Though there may be frequent disagreements among members of congregated communities, yet on the whole their attachments are necessarily exceedingly strong. Constant association develops the affections of the heart. Ideas are communicated from individual to individual, by which they are made partakers of each other's knowledge. Emulation produces superior excellence. Institutions for public instruction are easily kept up. Public instruction is easily brought within reach of all.

In a community thus constituted, no ordinary power can exercise tyranny and oppression. In a rural village, every man must know the rights and possessions of his neighbor. If either is invalidated, all will feel their insecurity, and a burst of indignation from the whole community would nip oppression in the bud.

The congregated numbers who cultivate the soil of a considerable district would be able to interpose a strong barrier to the progress of lawless banditti, such as have robbed the Saints, therefore, and to defend themselves against any violence short of open warfare.

For the purpose of adding as much as possible to their security, all their dwellings and buildings of every kind, should be erected with reference to joint defense. Every house should be a fortress, and part of a system of fortification.

Chapter 29

Tithing

Compare to 5 Moses 18:10-23

1 Of all the fruit of your fields, and the increase of your flocks, a tenth shall you render to the house of the Lord, your God, and the treasury of the king; that the Priest who administers in holy things, and the servants of the king, who rule in righteousness, may eat bread, and the land yield her increase.

2 If ye do not these things, the Priest shall fail to instruct you and your children: the order of God's house shall be forgotten; and the servants of the king shall forget the Law, and judge for hire, and righteousness shall cease. Then shall wickedness be in the midst of you, and oppression come upon you.

3 Moreover, the king shall send his servants to demand of you, and they shall exact that which ye have withheld, and shall wrest it from you with increase; and if ye resist them, ye shall be spoiled.

4 Of all the spoil which you take from your enemies, a tenth shall ye render to the house of the Lord, your God, and the treasury of the king: That he who administers in holy things may remember you before God, and the king's arm may deliver you.

5 If ye do not this, ye shall not go out with a blessing, and ye shall flee before your enemies, and none shall deliver you.

6 Moreover, the king shall lift his hand against you, and shall buffet you, and from you shall he take the spoil; and if ye remove it from him, he shall spoil you.

7 When you labor not in these things, yet one-tenth of your time shall you consecrate to the Lord, your God, and shall labor for the house of the Lord, your God, and for the treasury of the king, according to your skill, and your cunning, and your art, and you shall not withhold that a place for God to dwell among you may not be wanting, and the

1851 (A. R. I.)

work of the king may not fail, and that you may possess abundantly fields, flocks, and habitations.

8 If ye do not these things, ye shall not prosper in the work of your hands, and poverty shall be in your dwellings.

9 Moreover, the king shall take your goods and your substance from you, to recompense what you have defrauded the house of the Lord, and the treasury of the king, with increase. And if ye obstinately defraud in these things, ye shall be beaten with stripes.

10 And whosoever cometh into the kingdom, a tenth of all he possesses shall he give for the establishment of the kingdom, and for its increase, that he may have an everlasting inheritance therein.

11 And until he do this, no inheritance shall be given unto him, and he shall not wax rich in goods.

12 Moreover, the king shall send his servants to take a tenth from him, with increase; and then the king, remembering his children, shall grant an inheritance unto him: but his obstinacy shall surely be remembered.

It is the King's command that when increase is taken, it should be one-tenth the tithing, and the charges of the officer for collecting the same.

Chapter 30

Feasts

The following verses are a revelation given to James J. Strang in February, 1851.

Compare to 4 Moses 8, 5 Moses 29, & Judgements of YHVH 9:20-24

1 These are the feasts of the Lord; holy convocations, even convocations and feasts unto the Lord your God.

2 Six days shall work be done, but the seventh day is the Sabbath day: Ye shall do no work therein: it is the Sabbath of the Lord in all your dwellings: Ye shall take care that nothing perish, but ye shall not labor for hire nor increase; ye shall have a holy convocation in all your Temples and Synagogues.

3 The day that James, the Prophet of God, was established king, and sat upon his throne, is a notable day; it shall be kept in remembrance

forever.

4 As oft as this day returneth shall all the Saints assemble together; it shall be a holy convocation. They shall assemble in their Temples, and in their Synagogues, and in public places, to offer a thankoffering, an offering of praise unto God, because He has given the Kingdom to the Saints.

5 The king shall, therefore, offer a heifer, without blemish; in the presence of the congregation shall he offer it. In the morning shall he offer it, and the same day shall it be eaten: he and his household shall eat of it. Not a bone of it shall be broken: they shall eat it with bread, and seasoned with herbs.

6 After this manner shall all the children of the kingdom sacrifice: every man a heifer, or a lamb, or a dove. Every man a clean beast, or a clean fowl, according to his household.

7 Ye shall take the victim of the sacrifice which ye shall offer, and shall bring it before the Lord in the presence of the congregation, and shall bring it to the Priest, and shall say:

8 I profess this day unto the Lord God, that I am come into the Kingdom which He promised by the mouth of all the Prophets: praised be his name for his glorious goodness, and his great power.

9 And the Priest shall slay the victim, and thou shalt say: We were a people, few in number; scattered among our enemies: They killed our Prophets, murdered our brethren, robbed us of our possessions, and banished us from among them; but God has made us a Kingdom: and the fear of us is upon those who hate us.

10 When the Gentiles evilly entreated us, and afflicted us, and thrust us out, we cried unto the Lord, God of our fathers; the Lord heard our voice, and looked on our affliction, and sorrow, and homelessness; and he gave us this land for an everlasting possession; and hath made us a kingdom: And now have I brought unto Him this victim for a thankoffering, and a perpetual memorial.

11 And thou shalt eat of the sacrifice: thou and thy household, and thy neighbor; but the stranger, though he dwelleth in thy gates, and in thy house, shall not eat of it. Thou shalt eat it with herbs, and the Priest with thee, in the congregation of the Lord; it is a holy convocation, and a feast unto the Lord: ye shall do no servile labor that day.

12 And when thou hast eaten, thou shalt say unto the Lord, thy God: I have come into the land which thou gavest to thy Saints: I have

1851 (A. R. I.)

heard thy Law and have entered into covenant with thee to keep Thy Commandments; and I have eaten of the sacrifice before thee as a witness forever.

13 Look down from thy holy habitation, from heaven, and bless us this day, even all the children of thy Kingdom; and the land which thou hast given us, and establish us forever.

14 When ye are come into the land which the Lord your God giveth unto you, and have gathered the harvest of your inheritance, ye shall bring a portion of the first fruits of your fields before the Lord your God, for an offering of first fruits.

15 At every Temple where the name of the Lord your God is named, shall the Priest appoint the day of first fruits, according to the days of your principal harvests of food; and by that day shall ye all bring your offering of first fruits unto the Priest, in the Temples and the Synagogues, and ye shall have a holy convocation before the Lord in every place to which ye bring the first fruits.

16 Ye shall lift up unto the Priest who ministereth unto the Lord a portion of first fruits, by the day of the holy convocation of the harvest; in the selfsame day ye shall offer an offering of flesh also; a clean beast, or a clean fowl: it shall be a sacrifice and feast of thanksgiving unto the Lord, for the abundance of the harvest.

17 And ye shall not eat of your harvest, neither bread, nor grain, nor green ears, nor roots, nor germs, till ye have brought your offering of first fruits before the Lord, your God. He that eateth thereof, shall add a fifth to what he ate, and bring it and the increase, and the first fruits also: and the first fruits shall be an abundance for the feast, every one for his household: And the rich shall bring for the poor, out of his abundance, and for the Priests also that minister.

Chapter 31

Groves, Forests, and Waters

See 5 Moses 17:10-18

1 Ye shall not cut down the timber on the hills and mountains, lest your children suffer for want of wood and water. Ye shall not destroy the groves along the shores of the lakes and ponds, lest the winds and storms make your land desolate, and both heat and cold

destroy you. Therefore, shall ye cause them to grow continually, and they shall beautify your inheritance, and your children shall rise up and call you blessed.

2 Every man who receiveth an inheritance shall preserve a forest thereon, that his children may walk in the shade thereof, and may build houses and prepare food; and that his cattle faint not with heat or drought, nor perish in the blast; and the land yield her increase. If there be no forest, he shall plant one.

3 Ye shall preserve the trees by the wayside; and if there be none, ye shall plant them. Whether it be in the cities, towns, and villages, or the fields and forests, ye shall do it.

4 All these things shall ye do as your king shall appoint, and your rulers determine, that the land be pleasant to your children.

5 And in your cities, and towns, and villages, and by the side of great waters, and ponds, and running streams, and springs, shall groves be appointed to you, that the aged and the young may go there to rest and to play. There shall ye all make yourselves joyful.

Chapter 32

Highways

See 5 Moses 17:19-20

1 The Seas, and Lakes, and Rivers where men can pass in boats and vessels of any kind, are the highways of the nations: thou mayest travel them: no man shall hinder.

2 Deserts, and forests, and waste places are also highways for the people: thou mayest pass over them, and none shall prevent thee.

3 The king may make great roads from city to city, and wheresoever the good of his people requires them, either by land or by water.

4 The king shall appoint Elders, discreet men to keep his highways, and to receive tribute of those that use them, that there may be money to make and preserve them forever.

5 The king may also grant unto others to make highways, and to receive tribute for the use of them, that they may be recompensed for

1851 (A. R. I.)

the labor they have done: They shall not be oppressive in their charges: the king shall restrain them according to justice.

6 The king shall appoint Elders in all the cities, and towns, and villages, to establish, make and preserve roads in all the country round about, as his people have need.

7 The king shall grant unto them a portion of the tithing of his people for the making of roads for the common use of all, without cost, that nothing obstruct you in your travels.

8 The king's highway shall be made in the best place, and no man shall hinder; it is for all the people to pass over. But in making roads the Elders shall spare every man's inheritance, unless the necessity for crossing it be very great.

9 In the cities, and towns, and villages, ye shall make streets, and lanes, and alleys, with sidewalks, and crosswalks.

10 And in the highways, and roads, and streets, ye shall plant trees, and shrubs, and grass, and they shall be pleasant and beautiful.

Chapter 33

Apparel and Ornaments

See 5 Moses 17:21-26

1 Ye shall not clothe yourselves after the manner of the follies of other men; but after the manner that is seemly and convenient, shall ye clothe yourselves.

2 And your king, and your princes, and your judges and rulers shall clothe themselves according to their dignity: And the Priest who administers at the altar, and he who administers in the sacraments which I appoint unto you, shall clothe in the robes of his office.

3 And all the people in their solemn assemblies, and in their gatherings together, shall clothe themselves according to my Commandment.

4 And the ornaments of your persons, and of your apparel, shall every man wear, as I shall appoint; every man in his own order.

Chapter 34

Municipalities

Compare to 5 Moses 17:1-3

1 In every village an Elder shall be appointed to rule, to teach, and to instruct: he shall govern the village according to the Law, and the king's commandment: To him shall the Priests of the Synagogue give heed; and if there be other Elders, they also shall give heed to him.

2 In every town shall Elders be appointed to rule, and teach, and instruct: five to a town: But if there be more than five Synagogues in the town, yet shall there be an Elder to each Synagogue, of whom one shall be Chief.

3 They shall govern the town according to the Law, and the king's commandment: They shall instruct the people in the Synagogue, everyone in his order: Unto the Chief of them shall the Priests of that town give heed; and unto everyone, in the Synagogue where he administers.

4 In every city shall Elders be appointed to rule, to teach, and to instruct, in all the Synagogues: But to the Synagogue of the judgment seat of the city, shall three be appointed judges of the court of the city: Another shall be appointed who shall be Bishop of that city; he shall be Chief of the Elders, both in that city, and in the towns and villages in its vicinity: to him shall they all give heed.

5 If there be more than one city in the province, then shall that bishop who is appointed to rule the province, administer in the chief city: He shall be an Archbishop: to him shall the other Bishops give heed.

6 But if there be no city in a province, yet shall an Elder be appointed to rule in that province: He shall be Bishop: and a court shall be appointed also, and three Elders to be Judges: They shall be appointed at that place where the king will establish his government for that province.

7 By these shall the provinces, and cities, and towns, and villages of the kingdom be governed: And officers shall be appointed to assist them in governing, as shall be necessary. The king shall establish his dominion in this order forever.

Chapter 35

Social Order

Verses 1-14, see 5 Moses 27:1-27; verses 15-17 see 5 Moses 13:20-27

1 Thou shalt not abide in the conversations of the ungodly; the corrupt desires of deceitful lusts; as an old man unchanged; but shalt be renewed in the spirit of thy mind; that thou be a new man; growing into the likeness of God's perfections; born anew in righteousness and true holiness.

2 Put away lying: speak every man the truth to his neighbor; let no corrupt communication proceed out of thy mouth; but that which is good to edifying, and increasing faith; that it may minister grace to the hearers: Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, by which thou art sealed unto the day of redemption.

3 Put away anger, wrath, bitterness, and malice; and be ye kind one to another: tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God forgiveth you; followers of God as dear children, walking together in love.

4 The first power over every child is the mother: the highest power in any household is the father of the family, the head of the house: to him let all give heed; but the Law is over all.

5 If the father dies, his firstborn son is head in his stead: Nevertheless, in the dwelling, he shall not rule over his mother, nor the mother of his brother; he shall honor them all the days of his life.

6 Thou shalt honor thy father and thy mother all thy days: Thou shalt not depart from them, nor rebel against them; but shalt abide with them, except they send thee away with a blessing; that thou mayest build them up, or, be established by thine own name.

7 But thou shalt seek to establish thy sons: thou shalt build them up with thee, or part them a portion of thine inheritance, as shall be meet, that they may grow up, and in their honor bring honor to thee.

8 And if thou have widows, or children, or servants, or any members of thy household, thou shalt provide for them according to their station, and thy possessions. If thou do it not, the king shall appoint them their meat and their portion, as shall be just.

9 But the inheritance shall remain one; over it the firstborn shall have the highest dignity; and his portion shall be double: If any man having a portion, divideth it among his posterity, he need not to respect the firstborn: he shall do as seemeth him good.

10 If thy firstborn is not worthy to keep up the dignity of thy house, and thou wilt abase him, and exalt another in his stead, thou shalt bring him before the judges at the judgment seat of the city, and show what evil he hath done: And if thou clearly show that he is unworthy, and that the other is worthy, the judges shall declare it: thou shalt abase him, and adopt the other: But if thou hast neglected to instruct him, and to restrain him, the Judges shall declare it: thou shalt not abase him; the sin be upon thy head.

11 Thou shalt not sell thy daughter: thou shalt in no case take a price for her in marriage: But thou shalt endow her of raiment, and goods, and flocks, according to thine ability; and thou shalt give her in marriage only to whom she loveth, and who is worthy: Thou shalt not give her to a stranger, nor to a despiser of this Law, nor to a blasphemers.

12 Every man may give a portion to his children, a dowry to his wives, and a possession to his servants, while he liveth; and except it is manifestly unjust, the judge shall not change it after his death; as he determines it by his last blessing, so shall it be: if it be made sure before, it shall not be changed.

13 The princes, and the nobles who have a great possession for an inheritance, according to their dignity, shall reserve a portion according to his dignity to the firstborn: To their other sons shall they give portions as common men; but they shall seek rather to make Nobles of them all.

14 If a nobleman or a prince have servants, and they eat not their bread at his table, he shall appoint them their portions, in his inheritance, that they hunger not: Upon his inheritance he shall be as a king to them; but he shall not exact more than a tenth of them, besides the tithing of all.

15 This is the Law of the servant taken captive in war, and of the servant bought with money, and of the servant born in thy house, and of him who cleaveth unto thee that thou mayest be a Prince and a Savior unto him: He shall be unto thee next to thy child: and thou shalt seek to establish him; for his greatness is thy glory.

16 But if they be content to abide in his household, it is better: he shall appoint them their food, their raiment, and their habitation, in

due season; and they shall labor in his shop, and his field, and with his flock; they shall share in all his toils, and in all his possessions, and he shall be a ruler over them. If they serve him, he shall not cast them off forever; but if he oppress them, and they flee from him, ye shall not return them to him, lest his hand be hard upon them.

17 And if the brethren or the neighbors of a Prince or a Nobleman join themselves unto him, he shall appoint unto them duty and reward, according to their rank, and ability, and faithfulness: In his household they shall be as sons; and with him, and with his heir, shall possess his inheritance, that they together, being strong, may wax exceedingly great.

Chapter 36

Household Relations

Verses 1-10, see 5 Moses 25:23-44; verses 11-15 see 5 Moses 26:1-8

1 Thou shalt be fruitful and multiply and replenish the land which the Lord, thy God, giveth thee and subdue it: lest it be waste and desolate, and thy name be lost in the generations to come.

2 But all thy children shall be of thy wives: thou shalt not go after strange women, for so should the land be corrupt under thy feet; an abhorring to the righteous; and thy children scattered abroad; and in the mixing of thy seed, is barrenness and desolation; the corruption of the flesh, and disease and anguish.

3 Thou shalt not marry thy mother, or thy daughter, in any line, to all generations: Thou shalt not marry thy sister, or the daughter of thy sister or thy brother, or the sister of thy father or thy mother: thou shalt not marry a woman and her daughter to all generations.

4 Thou shalt not marry a virgin in infantile sexual impotence; nor a dwarf, nor one hereditarily deformed, nor possessed of evil spirits, nor any one not clothed in her right mind: nor any one thou lovest not, or who loveth not thee.

5 Thou shalt not take unto thee a multitude of wives disproportionate to thine inheritance, and thy substance: Nor shalt thou take wives to vex those thou hast; neither shalt thou put away one to take another.

6 Thou shalt not put away thy wife but for adultery: the adulteress

is abominable; she shall be given to the corruptions of the flesh, that her belly may swell and her thigh rot; and that she be a warning and a proverb: if she repent in dust and ashes for a long time, thou mayest forgive her; yet is she not thy wife: if thou wilt take her, thou shalt marry her again.

7 Thou shalt not lie with the wife of thy neighbor; for it is an abomination: Neither shalt thou take her to wife; she cannot be thine: If he stone thee to death, no man shall hinder: thou shalt not be avenged; what he doeth he shall do speedily.

8 Thou shalt give thy daughter in marriage while she is yet young: If thou give her not till she has been six years potent, she may give herself in marriage: thou shalt not prevent her.

9 Thou shalt take a wife to thy son, while he is yet young; yet not in his infantile impotence: Thou shalt take for him one that he loveth, and who loveth him; if thou doest it not, when he hath been seven years potent he may take one to himself: thou shalt not prevent him.

10 And if thou covenant or promise to marry a woman or a virgin, thou shalt not break thy covenant; thou shalt not draw back from thy promise: And if thou lie with one, and she conceive seed of thee, thou shalt take her to wife; thou shalt not bring her shame upon her: If thou dost her brethren shall stone thee, and none shall deliver thee; and yet thou shalt be judged for thy faithlessness: If she be not of thy rank, and her brethren fear thee, the hand of the Elders shall be against thee: thou shalt not corrupt the poor, nor bring shame upon them.

11 If thy brother have an inheritance, and die leaving a wife, but no seed, thou shalt take her to wife, and raise up seed to thy brother, that his name be not lost among the people: Thou shalt possess the inheritance with her, till the seed be grown up to possess it. If he had but a portion, it shall be thine, and the seed also. If she love thee not, or thou wilt not take her, this right goeth to the next kinsman; but no one shall take the inheritance or portion without her.

12 Moreover, if thou takest a widow in marriage, and she have been joined to another forever, thou shalt only take her for life; and it shall be expressly determined whose the seed is; whether thine, or his whose widow she is.

13 If thou marry a wife having children, and they have no father in the kingdom, and she bring them to thee, they are thine: thou shalt receive them, and establish them.

14 If thou marry a wife, and she is the first representative in the faith of her progenitors and near relatives, in the redemption of the dead they shall be hers; she shall bring them to thee: If thou obtain a royal Priesthood, they shall be thine in the dominion forever: thou shalt raise them up in the last day, to increase the glory of thy kingdom.

15 If a woman or a virgin obtain a good report through faith, and is chosen of God a Prince and a ruler, she shall have an inheritance appointed to her, with her husband or her brethren, that she may possess it, and her children with her, and that she may rule over all her house.

Chapter 37

Payment of Debts

Compare to 5 Moses 12:13-15, 131-27, & 28:3-6

1 Thou shalt pay what thou owest: thou shalt not refuse it: And if thou refuse, the judge or the Elder shall send a Deacon, and he shall take of thy substance, and pay him whom thou owest.

2 If thy neighbor oweth thee, and is poor, thou shalt have compassion on him, and shalt not oppress him; but if he will not pay thee, or if he trespass on thee, or do thee wrong, thou shalt admonish him; if he hear thee not, thou shalt take with thee one or two neighbors, and shalt labor faithfully with him to do thee justice. If he will not hear them, thou shalt lay thy testimonies at the judgment seat, and the Elder or judge who judgeth, shall hear thee and him also; and he shall judge between thee and thy neighbor: and whosoever will not hear him, he shall send the Deacon to execute his judgment.

3 But if thy neighbor seek to defraud thee, or to do thee violence, or if he have done thee violence, thou mayest bring the matter to the judgment seat before thou admonish him: The Elder or the judge shall judge between thee and him.

4 If thy neighbor hath not the very thing to pay thee that he promised, and be poor, thou shalt have compassion on him, and shalt take what he hath; but thou shalt not make him quite naked.

5 Thou shalt not lend to thy neighbor that is poor, on usury: thou shalt aid him, and strengthen him, and not oppress him: Neither shalt thou keep his garment in pledge till morning: thou shalt return

it to him.

6 Thou shalt not defraud the laborer of his hire. Thou shalt not keep his wages till the darkness, lest he return not to his home, and his children have no bread; and their cry ascend to God against thee. If he testify to thee that they lack nothing, then shall he wait on thee, as thou shalt agree.

Chapter 38

Establishment of the Law

A revelation given to James J. Strang in February 1851

1 Fear not, little flock, for your Father, in His good pleasure, hath given you the Kingdom; the dominion is yours forever; ye shall smite the nations with a continual stroke; for the Lord, your God, hath spoken it: Ye shall break them in pieces, and destroy them; for the day of His vengeance has come.

2 He hath judged the nations that are near, and decreed destruction upon them, and their day continueth not: The nations far away are covered with their abominations as with a garment: their iniquities are not hid: He will not spare them.

3 The Saints of the former days have sat in judgment upon them; they have judged the earth, and the nations thereof shall not be spared: Fire goeth before, famine followeth after; and the pestilence shall waste them.

4 Arise and smite them, O Daughter of Zion; and thou, O Tower of the Flock, whose power is above the clouds, possess thy dominion, and be thou a refuge: For Judah shall be bent, in his strength; as an arrow, Ephraim shall fill him: Manasseh shall be his barb; and Jacob shall be in the midst of the Gentiles, in the empire of nations, as a Lion among the beasts of the forest; as a young Lion in the flocks of sheep, who, when he goeth through, treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none shall deliver.

5 Let your fear be upon all men; and the terror of you upon your enemies; for this is the day of vengeance of the Lord, and of your recompense upon your enemies. Joseph shall possess his land again; for the throne of David is established as the days of the sun; His Kingdom is everlasting.

6 And now, O Daughter of Zion, the land of robbers, the empire of many nations, shall gather her troops against thee, to look upon thee, and to defile thy dominion: But they have not known the thought of the Lord; neither have they understood His counsel; for He shall gather them as sheaves of the floor.

7 Arise and thrash, for I will make thy power iron: the tread of thy foot shall crush: Thou shalt break in pieces many people, and shalt consecrate their spoil unto God, and their dominion to the Lord of the whole earth.

8 Babylon the Great shall perish before thee; for thou shalt do unto her as she hath done unto thee: Thou shalt render unto her as she hath rendered to thee, and reward her double for all her sins. Her cities shall be given to the flames, and the inhabitants to the sword: her government shall be broken in pieces, and her dominion taken away.

9 For in her is found the blood of Saints and Prophets; and the spoil of the children of God in the midst of her: And she hath drank of the cup of the indignation, and of the fury of God, with all the nations of the Gentiles.

10 Against her, Apostles have washed their feet on earth, and borne witness in heaven; and by the testimony and the blood of Prophets have her sins been made known in heaven: The great Prince, whose throne is as burning fire, hath judged her, saying: Let not her days be prolonged.

11 For by this Law shall men be judged in the portion of Joseph: God will give it to you, that you may possess it for an everlasting dominion. In the midst of the Gentiles shall ye establish your Synagogues, and gather out the just while ye wait for the judgments of God.

12 Ye shall, therefore, read in it all the days of your lives. Ye shall read it in your solemn assemblies, and in your joyous meetings; with the shout of triumph when your enemies flee before you; and in the voice of mourning when you have sinned against God, and have fled before them; ye shall read it in the gathering of your neighbors, and in the household with your children.

13 Ye shall talk of it in the house, and in the field, and by the wayside, and in the forest, and on the waters; in the camp, and on the march: When ye labor, and when ye rest shall ye speak of this Law to your neighbors, and to your wives, and to your children, and to your servants.

14 And ye shall think upon it in your joy, and in your sorrow; when upon the land which the Lord your God giveth you, and when far away; both in the midst of the multitude, and in your loneliness; all the days of your lives shall ye read it, and talk of it, and think upon it; and it shall be inscribed upon your hearts continually.

15 For by this Law hath the Lord, your God, sanctified you, and given you judgment, and justice, and dominion. Remember that ye stood before him; your king, and your princes, and your nobles, the men of you, with your wives and your children, and your little ones, and entered into covenant with the Lord, your God, to be a people unto Him, and to obey His Commandments, and to keep this Law; and that He covenanted with you to be your God, and to make you a nation of kings and Priests to the nations of the earth.

16 Keep, therefore, this Law, and obey these Commandments; for so doth God sanctify you, and so will He establish you, and prosper you, more abundantly than in former days. The land of Joseph shall ye possess forever, and Israel and Judah shall dwell again upon their own mountains.

17 Your vineyards, your gardens, and your orchards, ye shall plant again, and they shall flourish, and ye shall eat the fruit thereof: ye shall build houses, and shall inhabit them; and children's children shall be in them, for a crown of glory to you, if ye remember the Lord, your God, whose name is great and glorious, and keep His statutes.

18 And now if there be among you a man whose heart turneth away from the Lord your God, to serve the god of Babylon, and to honor the names of the nations; if there be a root that beareth gall and wormwood; and when he heareth the curse in this Law, he bless himself, saying: I shall have peace, though I walk in the imagination of my heart, the Lord will not spare him.

19 But the anger of the Lord, and His jealousy, and His fierce wrath, shall smoke against that man: And all the curses that are written in this book shall be upon him, and the Lord shall blot out his name from under heaven.

20 At the end of every seven years, in the solemnity of the year, when all the children of the kingdom are gathered together before the Lord in Temples, and in Tabernacles, and all the people are assembled; princes and nobles, men, and women, and children, and the stranger that dwelleth in your gates; ye shall read this Law before them all, in their hearing, and shall make it known in the midst of them.

1851 (A. R. I.)

21 And your children, and the strangers dwelling in your gates, that have not heard it, shall learn this Law, and shall all remember it again, and ye shall all lift up your hands, and shall enter into covenant with the Lord your God to keep this Law, and to obey His statutes, that He may prolong your days upon the land.

The Book of the Law of the Lord

*Being a translation from the Egyptian of the Law given to
Moses in Sinai, with numerous and valuable notes.*

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints

1856 (A. R. VI.)
(Public Domain)

Edited and Printed by
The Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship

2026

(CC BY-ND 4.0)

Chapter 1

The Decalogue^a

See 4 Moses 3; 5 Moses 1

1 These Commandments were given by the voice of God, in Mount Sinai, to Moses, and to all Israel^a; for though Moses and the Elders of Israel only went into the Mount^b, and Moses alone received the Tables of the Law; yet all Israel heard the voice of God, when he gave the Commandments^c.

2 The Commandments were written on two tablets of stone, by the finger of God^a. Moses broke these tables; after which he prepared two others, on which God wrote the same words^b, and the tables were placed in the Ark of the Covenant^c, and kept within the Tabernacle and the Temple until the Babylonian captivity^d.

3 They were not restored to the Esdras Temple^a, and the Jews have not possessed them since going into Babylon.

4. It was never allowable to write the exact words of the tablets^a, except in the Exemplar of the Law, kept in the Sanctuary. But the substance of them, as written out by the Prophets for public use, is now restored by divine authority.

1 Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy might, and with all thy strength^a: Thou shalt adore Him, and serve Him, and obey him: Thou shalt have no other gods before thee: Thou shalt not make unto thee any image or likeness of anything that is in the heaven above, or in the earth beneath, or in the waters of the earth, to bow thyself unto it, or to worship it: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto, nor adore anything that thine eye beholdeth, or thy imagination conceiveth of; but the Lord thy God only; for the Lord thy God is a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, from generation to generation, even upon all that

a Ten Commaudments, Ex. 20:3-17, Deut. 5:7-21, Matt. 22:37-40, Mark 12:30-31, Luke 10:27, Rom. 8:9.

H 1a Deut 9:10

b Ex. 24:1-2, 9-11

c Ex. 19:16-19, 22; Deut.

5:4-5, Josephus' Ant., B. III, ch. V, 4

2a Deut. 9:10-11

b Deut. 10:2, 4, 5

c Josephus' Ant., B. VIII,

ch. IV, 1; Heb. 9:4

d 2 Mac. 2:4-5

H3a Buck's Th. Dic. "Ark." But, Con. "Temple"

4a Josephus' Ant., B. III, ch. V, 4

I 1a See Ten

Commandments, p. 17; Deut. 6:5, 10:12.

hate Him, and showing a multitude of mercies unto them that keep His commandments^b.

2 Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain^a: Thou shalt not usurp dominion as a ruler; for the name of the Lord thy God is great and glorious above all other names^b: He is above all, and is the only true God; the only just and upright King over all: He alone hath the right to rule; and in His name, only he to whom He granteth it^c: Whosoever is not chosen of Him, the same is a usurper, and unholy: The Lord will not hold him guiltless, for he taketh His name in vain.

3 Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy. Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work, but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God: In it thou shalt not do any work; thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, nor thy manservant, nor thy woman servant, nor thy cattle, nor the stranger that is within thy gates: For in six ages the Lord thy God made the heavens and the earth, the sea and all that in them is, and rested the seventh age: Therefore the Lord thy God blessed the seventh day and hallowed it^a: Thou shalt keep it holy unto Him, that thou forget not the Law, nor be found keeping the company of the vile, nor be despised by the righteous.

4 Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself^a: Thou shalt not revile him, nor speak evil of him, nor curse him^b: Thou shalt do no injustice unto him; and thou shalt maintain his right, against his enemy: Thou shalt not exact rigorously of him, nor turn aside from relieving him: Thou shalt deliver him from the snare and the pit, and shalt return his ox when he strayeth: Thou shalt comfort him when he mourns, and nurture him when he sickens: Thou shalt not abate the price of what thou buyest of him, for his necessity; nor shalt thou exact of him, because he leaneth upon thee: For in so doing thousands shall rise up and call thee blessed, and the Lord thy God shall strengthen thee in all the work of thy hand.

5 Honour thy father and thy mother^a: Give heed to their commandments, obey their laws, and depart not from their precepts: Reverence their age, and seek unto their house all the days of thy life: Exalt not thyself against them, nor withhold to build up their house

b Deut. 7:9, 19, Matt. 22:37-40, Mark 12:30-31, Luke 10:27, Rom. 13:9

2a 1 See Ten Commandments, p. 71

b Deut. 28:58

c Dan. 7:13-14, 26-27; Matt. 28:18; Luke 1:33; Eph. 1:18-21; Phil. 2:9-11; Heb.

2:8; Rev. 1:3, 2:26-27
3a See Ten Commandments, p. 17; Gen. 2:2-3

4a See Ten Commandments, p. 17; Lev. 19:18, Matt.

19:19., Gal. 5:14. James 2:8,

b Matt 5:22 Rom. 12:14

5a See Ten Commandments, p. 17; Matt. 15:4-6, 19:19; Mark 7:10; Eph. 6:1-3

above thine own: Honour and obey the king and the judges, and the rulers, and all that are set in authority; for they are as fathers among the people: That they may be a fear unto evil doers; and the Priest also, who stands before the Lord, that he may instruct thee: And thy days shall be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

6 Thou shalt not kill^a: Thou shalt slay no man in malice; neither thy child, nor thy wife, nor thy bondman, nor thy bondwoman, nor thy servant, nor the child of thy servant: Neither shalt thou slay thine enemy, except thou admonish him, and entreat him, and he hear thee not, and God give him into thy hand: Thou shalt only slay him in lawful war: And if any man trespass against thee, and break through, and do violence, thou shalt not slay him in revenge. If thou overtake him in the trespass, thou mayest resist unto blood; but except thou slay him in the trespass, thou shalt deliver him to the Judge; he shall judge him, and the hand of the officer shall be on him.

7 Thou shalt not commit adultery^a: Thou shalt not in any wise lie with the wife of thy neighbor; and if she seduce thee, thou shalt resist her; that thou pollute not thyself, and make not the place of thy house unclean, and destroy not the house of thy neighbor, and that thou cause no violence in the land^b. Thou shalt not lie with the wife of the stranger; neither shalt thou lie with the wife of thine enemy; lest thy children be scattered abroad, and know not thee, nor the fear of thee be upon them, and they be strangers to the covenant of God, and the whole land be corrupt, and thine offspring be destroyed with the wicked.

8 Thou shalt not steal^a: Thou shalt not trespass upon anything that is thy neighbor's, to take it from him, nor to destroy it: Neither shalt thou trespass upon the stranger that dwelleth within thy gates, to destroy his substance, nor to take it from him^b; for to thee he looketh for justice, and a shield round about all that he hath; and the fear of the Lord thy God is upon him also, and to his righteousness he also seeketh: Neither shalt thou overreach him by cunning, nor by stratagem, to take his substance from thy neighbor, nor the stranger within thy gates. Remember that ye were strangers, and were oppressed, and oppress not the stranger, lest his cry ascend to God against you.

^a See Ten Commandments, p. 17; Gen. 9:5-6, Ex. 21:12-14

^{7a} See Ten Commandments, p. 17; Matt. 5:27-28.

^b Case of Sodom, Gen. 19; Case of the Benjaminites,

Judges 19 & 20; 2 Sam. 12:10
^{8a} See Ten Commandments,

p. 17; 1 Thess. 4:6, 1 Cor. 6:8-10

^b Ex. 22:21, Jer. 7:5-6, Zech. 7:10, Mal. 3:5

9 Thou shalt not bear false witness^a: Thou shalt not speak falsely before the king, nor before the judge, nor in the assembly of the princes, nor in the presence of the ruler, nor unto the minister of the Law, nor among the multitude^b; nor in the ear of thy friend, nor to thy wife, nor thy child, nor thy servant: Neither shalt thou withhold the truth from the king, nor the judge, nor him that is set in authority: For thus shall righteousness be established in all thy borders.

10 Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's inheritance: Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, nor his bondman, nor his bondwoman, nor his manservant, nor his woman servant, nor his horse, nor his carriage, nor the instruments of his labour, nor the produce of his land, nor the things that he has made, nor the treasures that he has in store, nor anything that is thy neighbor's: Thy desire shall not be upon them, to take them by stealth, nor by fraud, nor by cunning, nor by violence: Neither shalt thou covet that which belongeth to the stranger that dwelleth within thy gates; but thou shalt improve thine own, and thy desire shall be unto it; lest thou be corrupt, and the hand of thy neighbors be against thee, and the cry of the poor ascend to God against thee.

Chapter 2

The True God

Thou shalt have no other gods before thee.

Written by the prophet James, by inspiration of God

1 The God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob is our God; this is His name forever, and this is His memorial unto all generations^a. He created the heavens and the earth, and all things that are in them are the workmanship of His hands^b. He created man in his own image, that he might have dominion over the earth, and over the beasts of the field, and over the fowls of the air, and over the fishes of the sea^c.

2 Man, being in the likeness of God's person, they all recognize him as their Lord, and fear Him as a God. And notwithstanding his

^{9a} See Ten Commandments, p. 17; Deut. 19:18-21

^b Ex. 23:1-7; Ps. 15:3, 101:5

^{10a} See Ten Commandments, p. 17; Mic. 2:1-2, Hab. 2:9,

Eph. 5:3-5, Heb. 13:5

^b Ex. 22:21, 23:9; Jer. 7:6;

Zech. 7:10; Mal 3:5

^c Ex 12:27, Ps. 114:19

2 ^{1a} Ex. 3:15

^b Gen. 1; Ex. 20:11, 31:17;

Neh 9:6; Ps. 8:3, 33:6-9,

89:11-12; Isa. 44:24; Jer. 10:12

^c Gen. 1:26-28, 5:1

degeneracy, he has retained so much of the divine likeness; that beasts, birds, and fishes, fear him, and his power is over them as a mighty one. It is diminished as he has departed from the likeness and perfections of his Creator: And that spirit of rebellion, which man has received so redundantly, he has communicated to them also, that they rebel against him, as he rebels against God. Yet the fear of man is on them continually^a; and his dominion is over them throughout the earth.

3 God conversed with Adam as a familiar friend^a; and walked with Enoch^b, who was faithful unto him in the midst of a corrupt race: He communed with Noah^c, the father of a new world; and covenanted by His own oath, with Abraham the faithful^d.

4 He commanded a fiery law, with a voice of thunder, in Sinai^a: The earth quaked at the tread of his foot: The rustling of His garment was as low thunder; and His voice as a mighty thunderbolt: The beaming of His face was as the sun in the morning; and the flash of his eye as the fierce lightning^b. The nations trembled at his presence^c; and the tribes said: Not unto us; not unto us, O Lord God, but unto Moses, be thy voice known^d.

5 For they heard the voice of God, as the voice of a trumpet; and as loud thunder: And they saw the lightning; and the mountain smoking; and they felt the earth tremble; and they fled far away, crying, Not unto us; not unto us: But unto Moses, declare thy Law, O God, and we will obey his voice, and live^a, for, who shall abide in thy presence?

6 His Word was made known to the Prophets, and His sacraments were established in Israel. Kings ruled in His glorious name; and the nations who forgot Him were destroyed.

7 He hath appointed everlasting life in the Lord Jesus; and given the keys of death and of hell^a unto Him who alone among mortals, hath kept His glorious word in all things. He hath chosen Him the first born among many brethren^b; for He is the first begotten of the dead^c, and hath the keys of the resurrection, and of life forevermore^d.

8 He maketh His Apostles the witnesses of His Law, unto the nations^a; and of His Gospel unto every kindred, and tongue, and people. His Word is among men; and the revelation of His power, in the midst of the earth.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <p>2a Gen. 9:2, Ps. 8:4-8, Jas. 3:7 3a Gen. 2-3 b Gen. 5:24 c Gen. 4:14-21, 7:1-4, 8:15-22, 9:1-17 d Gen. 15:18, 24:7; Heb. 6:13</p> | <p>4a Ex. 19:16-18, Deut. 33:2, Job 37:2-5 b Hab. 3:4, 1 Tim. 4:16 c Ps. 97:4 d Ex. 20:19 5a Ex. 20:18-21, Heb. 12:19</p> | <p>7a Rev. 1:18 b Rom. 8:29, Col. 1:15-18 c Rev. 1:5 d John 11:25-26 8a Matt. 28:19-20; Mark 16:15; Luke 24:47-48; Acts 1:8, 10:41-42</p> |
|--|---|---|

9 The Lord our God is glorious in His perfections; there is none like Him. The gods of the heathen have no voice; neither do they see, nor understand. The god of Babylon the Great, the Mother of Churches, before whom all her daughters bow down, is naught; He is as wind, and vanity; he can neither be seen nor heard, nor felt; He hath no dwelling place: where shall any abide with him? Passionless, is he; and can neither love the good, nor hate the evil: who shall adore him, or fear him?

10 Without members and parts; he cannot hear, see, feel, smell, or taste. Neither can he speak, nor come unto those that worship him, nor smite the disobedient and rebellious. Handless, footless, mouthless, eyeless, and earless; a shapeless chaos, conceived in the imagination of the vain: Ye shall not fear him, nor bow down unto him, nor adore him.

11 The Lord our God hath an incommunicable name^a; never polluted by the breath of the ungodly, which none can know, but he who ministereth in His holy sanctuary; by which He revealed himself unto Moses; and in which He establisheth this Law, for an everlasting covenant.

12 God alone hath immortality. Adam, the first of men, the Ancient of Days, the great Prince^a; Abraham, to whom God gave an everlasting possession^b; David, whose throne was established as the days of heaven, forever^c; all died. Enoch, who walked with God, and was not found, because God took him^d; and Elijah, who ascended to the throne of God, in his own fiery chariot^e; shall return to the earth to sleep with their fathers^f. The change which is sealed upon all the sons of Adam^g, shall come upon the faithful, who stand on the earth, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven, in flaming fire, taking vengeance on those who know not God, and obey not the Gospel^h. And He, the Prince of the Kings of the earthⁱ; who in the days to come, shall speak with the voice of a trumpet, and the dead shall hear His voice and live^j; died once, that He might live forevermore^k. He praised God, who alone hath immortality, that He would not leave him in the place of the dead^l: He preached the Gospel to the spirits in prison^m, and obtained the key of life everlastingⁿ. But God alone liveth

12a Doctrines of the Saints
Appendix 1:28, Dan. 7:9-22
b Gen. 17:8
c Ps. 89:29-36, 2 Sam. 7:16,
Isa. 9:6-7, Jer. 33:20-26, Luke
1:32-33
d Gen. 5:24

e 2 Kings 2:11
f Rev. 11:7-9
g 1 Cor. 15:22
h 2 Thes. 1:7-8
i Rev. 1:5, 11:15, 17:14,
19:16; Dan 7:13-14; 1 Tim 1:15

j John 5:25-28, 1 Cor.
15:52, 1 Thes. 4:16
k Rev. 1:18, Heb. 7:25
l Ps. 16:10, Acts 2:27
m 1 Pet. 3:19, Luke 23:43
n John 11:25-26, 17:2

forever: the eternal ages are unto Him as moments to us^o: infinities, as units to the mathematician. Our God alone hath immortality^p. Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

13 God alone hath omniscience. He clotheth himself in light as a robe: His ministers, who at midday, are as a flaming fire in the dark night, are blind before him; He apprehendeth the motion of the atom which floateth in the invisible element^a, and discerneth the speck in the centre of the star, which the light of the sun hath not reached since the day that the sons of God shouted for joy that the earth was created, as a mountain in the eye of mortals. He never sleepeth; His eye closeth not; and there is no darkness before Him. Our God alone hath omniscience. Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

14 God alone hath omnipotence. He looketh upon the nations, and they melt in the fury of his countenance^a: He frowneth, and the mountains dissolve to smoke; the vallies are consumed in the breath of His nostrils. He spoke, and worlds were created^b: He thought, and they were lost in space. Earthquakes are but the whisperings of His voice; the rustling of His attire causeth lightning, and thunder; and with the shadow of His garment He blotteth out the sun. The Prince of the kings of the earth; by whom the world was create^c; and who liveth and reigneth forever; receiveth power from Him, and rendereth it unto Him^d. Who shall stand before Him? Our God alone hath omnipotence^e. Thou shalt love him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

15 God alone is omnipresent. His presence filleth the immensity of space as a point. In the midst of the bottomless pit, is He; the pavilion of His feet, is the face of the earth^a: The stars, are His home: His breath, is fragrant odour to the blessed, in the highest heaven; and it enliveneth the crumbling frame of the dead^b. The rays of the sun, have not found His bourn; nor the light of the stars, the place He inhabiteth not. His rest outspeedeth the lightning; it leaveth the morning ray behind it; and His speed is more rapid than the thought of angels. Our God alone is omnipresent^c. Thou shalt love Him with

o Ps. 90:4
p 1 Tim. 1:17, 6:16; 2 Pet. 3:8
13a Ps. 139:12, Dan. 2:22,
 Heb. 4:13
14a Jer. 10:10
b Ps. 33:6-9, Isa. 40:26-28,

Jer. 51:15, 2 Pet. 3:5
c Eph 3:9, Col. 1:16-17,
 Heb 1:2
d Eph. 1:19-22, 1 Cor.
 15:24, Matt. 28:18
e Acts 17:24-26, Jer. 32:17,

Rom. 9:36
15a Acts 17:27-28
b Ezek. 37:5, 9-10, 14; Ps.
 104:29-30
c Ps. 129: 7-10

all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.

16 God alone is one. There are choirs of angels; hosts of spirits; and multitudes of men: but God hath no fellow. A great king is to Him as the unseen spawn before the monsters of the deep; Methuselah, as the ephemera of a day^a: the most glorious spirit, is bodiless, and a breath. And the Lord Jesus, who created the earth, and redeemed it; whose kingdom filleth the earth, and the heavens; possesseth but a speck, amid the stars he made. He alone is one^b. Thou shalt love Him with all thy heart, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength. Thou shalt adore Him, and serve Him, and obey Him; and beside Him, thou shalt have no other God: For He alone hath immortality, and omniscience, and omnipotence, and omnipresence. He alone is one; and they who obey His Law, shall be like Him^b.

Chapter 3

Oaths

Thou shalt adore the Lord thy God.

See 4 Moses 17; 5 Moses 9

1 Thou shalt swear by the name of the Lord thy God^a, and of the Lord Jesus Christ, and of the Holy Spirit of God, and by nothing less: Neither by the heavens, for God's throne is there; nor by the hosts thereof, for they serve Him; nor by the earth, for it is the place of the sole of His foot; nor by the inhabitants thereof, for they are mortal, and vanity; nor by thyself, for thou art of a day, and shalt cease; nor by any work of man, for it perisheth^b.

2 Remember that the Lord thy God swore by Himself, because there was none greater^a: But by the greater shalt thou swear, even by God Almighty, and by Him whom He sitteth at His right hand forever; and whose is the Kingdom under the whole heaven. Thou shalt not swear by the name of any other God^b.

3 Thou shalt not profane the name of the Lord thy God, nor of the Lord Jesus Christ, nor of the Holy Spirit of God, by any oath^a: But

*16a 2 Pet. 3:8
b 1 Cor 8:6; Deut. 35-39; 1
Kings 8:60; Isa. 45:5-6, 18-22,
46:9; Mark 12:32*

*c 1 John 3:2, 2 Phil. 3:21
3 1a Isa. 65:16, Neh. 8:25,
Deut. 6:13, Ps. 63:11
b Jer. 5:7*

*2a Gen. 22:16-17; Isa. 45:23,
62:8; Heb. 6:13-16
b Josh. 23:7
3a Lev. 6:3, 19:12*

such oaths only as the Law of the Lord thy God, and the command of the king requireth of thee and alloweth, shalt thou take upon thee; for all else is profane. Thou shalt not profane the name of God by any oath or vow, of thine own.

4 An oath shall be before the king, and the judge, and the ruler, and the minister of the Law; and before such as are set in authority, whensoever they require it^a: And there may be an oath also between those who enter into covenant^b: and also between him that serveth, and him that ordereth^c.

5 Thou shalt perform all thine oaths; whether unto God or unto man, thou shalt perform them. Thou shalt do according to every word that proceedeth out of thy mouth^a. Thou shalt not speak with thy lips when thy heart giveth not assent, to do and to perform all the words of thy mouth^b.

6 If thou swear by an oath to do anything which is known to thee, and it be sin, it is not an oath of the Lord thy God. Thou canst not profane the name of the holy, to sanctify sin. God shall judge thee, and him that asketh it of thee. Ye shall bear your sins together.

7 But if thou swear by an oath to do a thing, and it be hid from thee, and thou know it not, and when it is known to thee it is sin; thou shalt submit thyself unto the judgment of God, and shalt do penance; and shalt make restitution, as shall be put upon thee; that all sin may be put away, and thy heart purified, and wickedness put out of the land^a.

8 If thy wife swear by an oath to perform anything which thou mayest disallow, and thou hold thy peace at her, the day that thou hearest it, her oath shall stand. If thou wilt not that she perform it, thou shalt disallow it presently; for if thou delay, and then disallow it, thou shalt answer for her oath, and shalt bear her iniquity^a.

9 If thy son, or thy daughter, swear by an oath to perform anything which thou mayest disallow, and thou hold thy peace to thy child the day that thou hearest it, the oath shall stand^a. If thou wilt not that the oath stand, thou shalt disallow it presently; for if thou delay, and then disallow it, thou shalt answer for the oath, and shalt bear the iniquity of thy child.

10 And if thy servant swear by an oath to do a thing which thou mayest disallow, and thou hold thy peace at him, the day that thou

4a Lev. 5:1, 1 Kings 8:31-32
b Gen. 21:31, 26:28-31;
Josh. 2:12-14; 1 Sam. 20:16-17
c Gen. 24:2-3; 1 Sam.
30:15; 2 Sam. 19:7; 1 Kings

1:17, 51
5a Lev. 19:12; Num. 30:2;
Deut. 23:21-23; Nah. 1:15;
Ps. 15:1-4, 14; Ecc. 5:4-5; Job
22:27

b Acts 5:1-4
7a Lev. 5:4-13
8a Num. 30:6-15
9a Num. 30:3-5

hearest it, his oath shall stand. If thou wilt not that his oath stand, thou shalt disallow it presently; for if thou delay, and then disallow it, thou shalt answer for the oath, and shalt bear the iniquity of thy servant.

Chapter 4

Benedictions

Thou shalt love the Lord thy God.

See 4 Moses 6:4-6; 5 Moses 10:22-25

1 Thou shalt delight in blessing, and not in cursing: And in the name of God, and of all the holy ones, even all that are above thee, shalt thou bless; and it shall be a blessing.

2 Thou shalt bless thy fellows, and thy children and servants, and theirs; and all who seek to learn the righteousness of God, and the peace of His Kingdom of thee, and all whom God has committed to thy care. And him who blesseth thee, shalt thou honor.

Chapter 5

Maledictions

Thou shalt obey the Lord thy God.

See 4 Moses 12:1-3; 5 Moses 10:26-31

1 Thou shalt not curse, out of the bitterness of thine own heart^a; nor shalt thou curse any but he that is under condemnation of God's Law, and, being oft rebuked, will not repent^b.

2 Thou shalt not curse thy neighbor, nor the stranger that dwelleth with thee; for the hand of the judge is over them: And, possibly, when he rebukes, they will repent, and turn to righteousness: but when he curses, then shalt thou.

3 But thou shalt not curse any who is placed in authority, or has jurisdiction over thee^a. If they oppress thee, or do thee unrighteousness, and thy cry ascend to God in heaven, in heaven will he hear thee. He

⁵ *1a Rom. 7:14; Lev. 24:11,
14-16*

b Jud. 5:23

^{3a} *Ex. 22:28, Lev. 20:9
b Num. 24:9*

will be the avenger. Curse not, lest thy curse return upon thee^b.

Chapter 6

Prayer

Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto anything that thine eye beholdeth,
or thy imagination conceiveth of; but the Lord thy God only.

See 4 Moses 7:1-5; 5 Moses 12:1-5

1 When thou prayest, thou shalt not use many words, or vain repetitions; for God hath understanding: Nor shalt thou cry aloud; for God heareth the whisper of the heart.

2 Nevertheless, in the assembly shalt thou speak with an audible voice, that he who prayeth with thee, may say: Amen.

3 Thy prayers shall be unto God, thy Father; for He is rich in mercy, and loving kindness: And in heaven shall He hear thee, in the fulness of His wisdom and goodness, if thou believe on His name. But unto His Ministers shalt thou petition for whatsoever He has dispensed unto them, for His mercy is over all his works.

Chapter 7

Thanksgiving

Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart.

See 5 Moses 12:6-7, 23:24-26

1 When, in blessing, the Lord thy God shall bestow upon thee any great and choice blessing; or, in His abundant charity, shall deliver thee from any great calamity, thou shalt assemble together thy wives, and thy children; thy friends, and thy neighbors; and shalt celebrate His glorious goodness with thank-offerings, and feasting, and music, and dancing.

2 And for the chief blessings of God to thee, shalt thou keep it in remembrance from year to year, and teach it to thy children, that they

6 1a Matt. 6:6-7, 2 Kings 4:33 | 3a Matt. 6:9

1856 (A. R. VI.)

who inherit the blessing may not forget gratitude to the giver, and the remembrance of the goodness of thy God be preserved throughout all generations.

Chapter 8

Sacrifice

Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart,
and with all thy might, and with all thy strength.

See 4 Moses 21:1-8; 5 Moses 12:8-15

1 Thou shalt offer upon the altar of the Lord thy God, and before His Priests, sacrifices for sinofferings, and for trespassofferings, and for memorials, and for peaceofferings, and for thankofferings.

2 Thy offerings shall be of the firstlings of thy flocks, and of the choice of thy fields, and of the chief of all holy things.

3 Of thy flock shalt thou offer the firstling of male or female, without deformity or blemish, of such as divide the hoof and chew the cud; and of fowls, shalt thou offer all singing birds; and of fishes, all that have scales and fins; and of shellfish, such as have two shells, and move about from place to place: These shall be holy unto the Lord thy God, and shall be offered upon the altar.

4 Of the choice of thy fields, that which is good for food without change or addition, and whatsoever is used for bread for man, that is holy unto the Lord thy God, and shall be offered unto Him as an offering, and lifted up to the Priest; but it shall not be offered on the altar.

5 And whatsoever other thing ye offer, it shall be accompanied with one of these, and thus thy gift shall be sanctified. But if it be not accompanied with one of these, thou shalt redeem it at the Priest's valuation, and it and the price thereof shall be the Lord's.

Chapter 9

Monuments

The Lord thy God is a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, from generation to generation, even upon all that hate him, and showing a multitude of mercies unto them that keep his Commandments.

See 4 Moses 13:24-27; 5 Moses 12:16-26

1 Whensoever the Lord thy God manifests Himself unto thee in majesty and might, or walketh with thee, and revealeth unto thee wisdom and knowledge, thou shalt erect unto Him pillars, tablets and enduring monuments, and make inscriptions upon them; and shalt write and inscribe thereon His dealings with thee, His blessings and mercies, and His great power and glory, which He hath revealed unto thee; that it may remain a witness to the generations to come; and that they may know that thy God is God, and there is none else^a.

2 Thou shalt preserve the memory of the chosen of God, who have been faithful in their ministry, and in the calling whereunto the Lord thy God hath called them, fresh with thy children, and thy children's children.

3 Thou shalt build monuments to their memory, and erect pillars and tablets, and inscribe their praises, their works, their faith and their sufferings thereon; and when thou beholdest their monuments, thou shalt remember them, and talk of their righteousness, and teach thy children to walk in their righteous ways.

4 When God giveth thee a victory over thy enemies, thou shalt commemorate it with monuments and inscriptions.

5 But over the graves of persecutors and blasphemers, and they who shed the blood of the innocent, and at the places of their abominations shalt thou pile rough stones, with muttered curses, against the day of the resurrection of damnation.

6 And thou shalt teach thy children to add a stone to the pile as they pass by, and to curse him that removes the stones, and cleaves unto their wickedness.

^a 1a Gen. 28:16-18; Josh. 4:3, 9, 20-21, 8:32; Jasher 2:13; Josephus Ant. B. 1. ch. ii, 3

Chapter 10

Blessing of Infants

Thou shalt serve the Lord thy God, and obey Him.

Compare to 1 Moses 27:20-25

1 When the Lord thy God in multiplying blesseth thee, and giveth thee a child in thine own image; thou shalt bring him before the Lord thy God, in His house, or in the assembly of the Elders; and they shall lay their hands upon him, and bless him. Thou shalt not delay to do it; and though thou be far away, yet shalt thou bring him before he is eight years old: That the blessing of the Lord thy God may be put upon him; and his heart shall seek to the Kingdom of God, and its righteousness: for of such is the Kingdom. If he die, yet shall he live therein forever. He shall be thine.

2 And the child of thy servant also, and of thy bondman, shalt thou bring to receive this blessing: And the stranger that dwelleth with thee shall bring his child also, to receive his blessing: For thus shall the power of the Kingdom be a shield unto him, and his heart shall cleave unto its righteousness; that he may be established therein forever.

3 And whosoever shall bring a child to be blessed; whether it be father, or mother; or master, or mistress; the same shall teach the child this Law to keep it. Thus shall ye be honored as fathers and mothers in Israel: But, if ye do it not, and evil befall the child, his blood be upon you.

4 The Apostles, High Priests, and Elders, in their assemblies; and the Priest thereunto appointed in the Temples of God, shall bless with this blessing: for, behold, it is a great sacrament.

Chapter 11

Baptism

The Lord thy God shows a multitude of mercies
unto them that keep His Commandments.

Compare to 4 Moses 31:1-4

1 Except a man be born of the water, he cannot enter into the

Kingdom^a of God.

2 But no man may have baptism of water, except such as have faith toward God^a, and come unto Him through the ministry He has sent; repenting of evil deeds^b, and seeking to learn righteousness by the living word^c: For this is the door of all into the kingdom^d; from eight years old and upwards; through which if ye enter not, ye shall not see God^e.

3 For the keys of the ministry of the remission of sins, in the sacrament of baptism, hath the Lord, your God, bestowed upon His Apostles^a; and through them, upon their fellow laborers, the High Priests, Elders, and Priests; commanding them to preach repentance and remission of sins to all nations throughout the earth^b.

Chapter 12

Baptism for the Dead

For the Lord thy God is a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, from generation to generation, even upon all that hate Him, and showing a multitude of mercies unto them that keep His Commandments.

See Judgements of YHVH

1 At every Temple, which thou shalt build unto the Lord thy God, by His Commandment, shalt thou make a fountain for the baptism of the living for the dead^a.

2 And for these shall you be baptized: Every one of you, according to your several rights, and in your several orders, according to consanguinity, sex, and primogeniture, shall be baptized for any deceased husband, wife, or posterity; or any progenitor, to the third and fourth generation; or any brother, or sister, whom he in faith believes has received the Gospel in the Spirit.

3 Thou shalt also be baptized for any relative, within the fourth degree of consanguinity; for any one betrothed to thee in marriage; for thy foster father, mother, brother, sister, or child, whom I shall give to thee by tongue, dream, vision, spirit ministering in fire, word of angel, or by my own voice.

4 And whensoever I will that any of my faithful servants of the

11 *1a* John 3:5
2a Mark 16:16; John 3:18, 36;
 Acts 8:37, 16:31-32; Rom. 10:9
b Matt. 3:1-2, 5-6; Luke
 24:47; Acts 2:33, 3:19

c John 17:3, Matt. 11:27,
 Luke 10:22, Eph. 1:17-18
d Matt. 3:13-16; Mark 1:9;
 John 3:5, 10:1
e Matt. 11:27, Mark 16:16,

Luke 10:22, John 3:
3a John 20:23
b Luke 24:47
12 *1a* 1 Cor. 15:29, 1 Pet.
 3:19-20, Ezek. 32:31

Aaronic Priesthood be baptized for any other, I will send my angels to signify it unto them. But unto my servants of the Melchizedek Priesthood, I will speak by my own voice, or minister in fire.

5 But no man or woman among you shall be baptized for the dead, who is not a member of some family, according to the order of the Church of the Firstborn of God; or who is under condemnation of any word of this Law; or who withholdeth anything whatsoever from the treasury of the House of the Lord your God.

6 At every Temple which ye shall build unto the Lord your God, shall High Priests be set apart, and sanctified by anointing with holy oil, and the hands of Apostles and Prophets, to baptize for the dead; for no other shall administer this sacrament.

7 Recorders, also, shall be set apart by the laying on of hands of High Priests, to record baptisms for the dead; who shall be eyewitnesses to the baptisms, and shall record according to the seeing^a of their eyes.

8 And other witnesses, who see with their eyes, shall sign the records of baptisms, that everyone may be proved by the testimony of two or three witnesses.

9 But there shall be one record before the king, unto which all records of baptisms for the dead shall be brought^a, and all written together in perpetual archives; that what you record on earth, may also be recorded in heaven. At every Temple also shall ye perpetuate the record of such as are there baptized.

Chapter 13

Confirmation

Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart,
and with all thy might, and with all thy strength.

Compare to Wars of YHVH 23:15-20

1 Except a man be born of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the Kingdom of God^a.

2 Whosoever shall be baptized for the remission of sins, upon him shall the Apostles, High Priests, or Elders, lay their hands, and

*7a Epistles of the Saints,
5 Joseph 1:6-9 (DaC 110:3
RLDS, 128:3 CJCLdS)*

*9a Epistles of the Saints, 5
Joseph 1:10-12 (DaC 110:4
RLDS, 128:4 CJCLdS)*

13 *1a John 3:5*

confirm him in the Kingdom, and give unto him, by their hands, a gift of the Holy Spirit, according as the Spirit^a will^b.

3 And the Spirit thus given shall inspire him with faith, intelligence, and understanding; and if he cherish it, then shall it guide and establish him in all righteousness^a.

4 For when they lay their hands upon him, the Spirit, like an invigorating breeze, shall come upon him and cover him; and it shall inspire him with a new power, according to the gifts of the Spirit; and as it passeth off and leaveth him, his gift shall continue, and he shall walk in newness of life^a.

Chapter 14

Eucharist

Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto, nor adore anything that thine eye beholdeth, or thy imagination conceiveth of; but the Lord thy God only.

Compare to An Account of the Life of Adam and Eve

1 In your feasts of love, in your solemn assemblies, in your humiliation, and in your sorrow, ye shall separate of the juice of fruit, and of the bread of grain, a portion to be consecrated unto God, that it be the body and blood of the one great sacrifice of propitiation for the sins of the world^a: And they who are washed of their sins, and have a pure conscience before God, shall eat and drink thereof at the hands of the Apostles and High Priests, who shall consecrate it, and the Priests and Elders, who shall minister it, that, partaking of the sacrifice, they may lay hold on eternal life.

2 For this is the one great sacrifice^a, which except ye eat of it, there is no life in you. And beware how ye eat of this sacrifice: for in the spirit in which ye eat and drink, shall ye be confirmed and strengthened. And if ye eat and drink in a pure conscience, not having offended against God nor man, and all your former sins blotted out of the Book of Remembrance; ye shall be established in righteousness, and grow up into everlasting life. But, if ye eat and drink in your sins, ye eat and drink condemnation^b, confirming yourselves in your iniquities.

2a Actes 8:17, 19:6; 1 Cor.
12:7:11
3a 2 John 16:13
4a John 3:8

14 1a Matt. 16:226-29,
Mark 14:22-25, Luke 22:19-
20, 1 Cor. 10:16, 6:23-26;
Moroni Chapters 4-5

2a John 6:53
b 1 Cor. 11:28

3 Therefore, when ye come to the table of the Lord your God, to eat of this sacrifice, ye shall examine yourselves, whether you have done injustice to man, or iniquity against God, that ye may humble yourselves before God, and make restitution to man^a; and may come with clean hands, and a pure heart, to this most holy sacrament.

Chapter 15

Marriage

Thou shalt not bow down unto anything, but the Lord thy God only.

See 4 Moses 44:15-16; 5 Moses 25:1-3

1 When thou takest a wife, thou shalt take such a one as thou lovest, and who loveth thee, and whom thou mayest lawfully marry: and thou shalt go before an Apostle, a High Priest, or the Chief of the Elders where thou dwellest, or the Priest who administereth in the Temple or the Synagogue; and by him shall ye be joined in marriage, that she may be thine in life, thine in the resurrection, and thine in life everlasting; and that the children which she beareth thee, may be with thee in the everlasting Kingdom.

2 And he who joineth you in marriage, shall unite her unto thee by an indissoluble bond; and shall give thee grace to love her, and cherish her, and protect her; and grace unto her to love thee, and nourish thee, and honor thee.

Chapter 16

Healing

Thou shalt adore God, and serve Him, and obey Him.

Compare to 4 Moses 34:1-14

1 If Satan afflict thee that thou be sick, thou shalt send for the Elders, and they shall anoint thee with oil, and pray for thee, and rebuke the power of the adversary, and bless thee that thou recover of the disease^a.

3a Matt. 5:23-24, 1 Cor. 11:29

16 *1a Jas. 5:14-15; Mark 6:13; Matt. 8:2-16, 12:10-11,*

15, 14:14; Luke 8:11-13; Acts 3:1-11, 14:8-11

2 But if thy sickness continue, and God deliver not thee therefrom, thou shalt confess thy sins to them, and they shall forgive thee; and thou shalt come to the assembly of those who have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb^b.

3 If an evil spirit enter into any of thine, and torment him, or lead him about, thou shalt send for the Elders or High Priests; and they shall put their hands upon him, and look upon him, and rebuke the evil spirit, and cast him out^c.

Chapter 17

Absolution

Thou shalt love and obey the Lord thy God.

See 5 Moses 224:25-30

1 If thou sin a sin against God, or do an evil thing unto man, thou shalt go unto him who is God's Shepherd, wheresoever thou art, and between him and thee alone shalt confess unto him, and shalt keep nothing back; and he shall lay upon thee restitution, and penance, and shall judge thee in righteousness; and what he judgeth, that shalt thou do, according to all the words of the Law of the Lord thy God, and he shall forgive thee thy sin, according as God hath spoken^a.

2 And thou shalt in all things make restitution, as he judgeth thee; and if he require thee to confess unto the judge who sitteth in judgment, or to any who is placed in authority^a, or to him thou hast injured, thou shalt do it; and otherwise thy sin remaineth upon thee.

2a Jas. 5:16, John 20:21-23,
Matt. 9:2
3a Matt. 4:24, 8:16, 28-32;
Mark 1:32-34, 16:17; Luke

7:21, 9:1, 10:9-17; Acts 19:12;
17 1a Lev. 5: 5-10, 15-16,
6:6-7; Num. 5:5-8; Josh. 8:19-
26; 2 Sam. 12:1-14; 1 Chron.

21:1-27; Matt. 16:19, 18:18;
John 20:23; 1 John 1:9

Chapter 18

Ordination

Thou shalt not make unto thee any image or likeness of anything that is in the heaven above, or in the earth beneath, or in the waters of the earth to bow thyself unto it, or to worship it.

See Wars of YHVH 21:11-19

1 Thou shalt not take upon thyself the honour of the Priesthood; neither shalt thou confer this honour on any but him whom the Lord thy God shall call. For no man shall administer in the name of God, but he that is called by the revelation of God's will, and set apart by the hands of those upon whom the authority of His name is sealed^a.

2 Whosoever is called by the voice of God to the royal authority, shall be anointed and ordained by the hands of those who stand in royal authority above him^a: But he that is first, by the angels of God^b; that he may have all the gifts; even wisdom, knowledge, faith, revelation, prophecy; and whatsoever gift is good for the Chief Shepherd of the flock of God: That he may be able to rule in righteousness: and they for their several callings, among God's flock.

3 And whosoever is called to administer at the altar, and in sacraments and ceremonies, shall be consecrated and set apart by the hands of those in like authority, according to the calling of God, for his ministry^a.

4 And whosoever consecrates another to the Priesthood of God, and the authority of His name, shall, with his hands upon his head, by his voice declare and seal upon him the name and authority of God; even that Priesthood unto which he consecrateth him.

18 1a *Ex. 28:1; Num. 16:10, 39-40; John 15:26 Acts 1:24-25, 8:2-3, 20:28; Heb 5:4-6; 1 Tim. 4:14; 2 Tim. 1:6; ; 2a Num. 27:18-23; 1 Sam.*

9:16-17, 10:1, 16:12-13 b Acts 7:35; Luke 9:30-31, 35; 2 Pet, 1:16-18; DoS 1:15-38 (DaC 3-5 RLDS, 11-33 CJCLdS); Voree Her. Vol. i,

No. 8, Post 20 3a Ex. 28:41, 29:7-9, 30:30, 40:13-15; Lev. 8:12, Num. 8:13-15

Chapter 19

Adoption

Thou shalt have no other gods, but the Lord thy God.

See 5 Moses 25:13-16

1 If thou wilt in any wise adopt a child to be thine own, and to be heir to thee, thou shalt take him whom thou lovest, and whom thou mayest lawfully take; and thou shalt go before an Apostle, a High Priest, or the Chief of the Elders where thou dwellest, or the Priest who administers in the Temple or the Synagogue; and thou shalt take the child upon thy knee, and clasp him in thine arms, and shalt protest that thou lovest him as thine own flesh; and he shall seal him unto thee in the name of thy God: and shall sprinkle water upon him, and consecrate him thy flesh: and shall bless thee, and bless him in thy house; and he shall be thine forever. God shall give thee grace to be a father unto him, and grace unto him to honour thee.

2 And if thou hast a child who was not born in wedlock, and wilt assure him unto thee, thou shalt in like manner bring him, and protest he is thine, and he shall be sealed unto thee, that he be thine forever.

Chapter 20

Calling of a King

God is the only just and upright King over all;
whosoever is not chosen of Him, is a usurper and unholy.

*The first six sections were written by the prophet James, by inspiration of God,
and the nine following sections are the words of the angel of God when
he conferred upon James J. Strang the prophetic authority, and
made him the shield shepherd of the flock of God on earth*

1 The Lord your God hath made the earth and established it, and unto Him the dominion thereof belongeth. He created man and gave him dominion^a over it. The nations are the workmanship of His hands; and He hath the right to rule^b.

2 He appointed kings, and rulers, and judges; but man rebelled

20 1a Gen. 1:28

| b Ex. 19:5, Deut. 10:14,

| Ps. 24:1, 1 Cor. 10:26-28

against them. He made laws, but man broke them, and trampled on them, and forgot them.

3 Unto Noah gave He dominion over the earth: and to Shem after him; but the people rebelled against him and established their own ways; and those that oppressed them were their kings and ruled over them in unrighteousness.

4 Moses was king^a in Israel; but the people kept not the Law of God; and, rebelling, set up a false god, and worshiped it. When God would make them kings to rule the earth, they despised His majesty, and went after other gods.

5 Men have everywhere rebelled against God: nevertheless, the earth is His, and the fulness thereof. the dominion of it belongeth to Him, and He conferreth it upon whomsoever He will.

6 He hath chosen His servant James to be king: He hath made him His Apostle to all nations: He hath established him a Prophet, above the kings of the earth; and appointed him king in Zion: by His own voice did He call him, and He sent His Angels unto him to ordain him.

7 And the Angel of the Lord stretched forth his hand unto him, and touched his head, and put oil upon him, and said: Grace is poured upon thy lips, and God blesseth thee with the greatness of the everlasting Priesthood. He putteth might, and glory, and majesty upon thee; and in meekness, and truth, and righteousness, will he prosper thee.

8 Thou shalt save His people from their enemies, when there is no arm to deliver; and shalt bring salvation, when destruction walketh in the house of thy God. Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity: therefore thy God hath anointed thee with oil, and set thee above all thy fellows.

9 Thy words shall be like sharp arrows in the heart of the wicked. Thou shalt rebuke those who pervert the word of thy God. Thou shalt preach righteousness and the sublime mysteries in the ears of many people; and shall bring the Gospel to many who have not known it, and to the nations afar off.

10 Thou shalt drive backward and put to shame those that do evil; and the workers of iniquity shall fall. They shall be cast down, and shall not be able to rise. With purity will the Lord thy God arm thee, and purity and truth shalt thou teach.

11 Keep the Law of the Lord thy God in thy heart; and none of thy steps shall slide. With thee is the fountain of truth: in thy light

4a Deut. 33:5

shall the people of thy God see; for thou shalt speak his words unto them, and from thy lips shall they receive it.

12 The blessing of their God shalt thou put upon them, and His curse upon evil doers, if, after being oft rebuked, they repent not: And before my people shalt thou go, to lead them into my ways; for unto thee has the Lord thy God given salvation.

13 In righteousness shalt thou rule: thou shalt redeem the poor and the needy from suffering and violence; and to thee God giveth judgment for them. Thou shalt deliver the prey from the spoiler; for God, thy God, hath put them in thy hand.

14 And in weakness will He make thee strong; thou shalt rule among His people. Thou shalt break in pieces the rod of the oppressor, and the yoke of the unjust ruler; they shall flee away, but the way of peace shall they not find.

15 While the day of the wicked abideth, shalt thou prepare a refuge for the oppressed, and for the poor and needy. Unto thee shall they come, and their brethren who are scattered shall come with them; and the destruction of the ungodly shall quickly follow; for it already worketh; go thy way, and be strong.

Chapter 21

Duty of the King

God is the only just and upright King over all;
whosoever is not chosen of Him, is a usurper and unholy.

See 5 Moses 16:5-18

1 The king, when he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom and ruleth, shall write for him a copy of the Book of the Law, according to that which is before the Lord continually; and it shall be with him, and he shall read therein all the days of his life; that the fear of the Lord his God be continually before him, and that he remember the Law, and forget not to administer justice and judgment throughout the earth; and that he turn not aside from the Commandment one way or the other^a; to the end that he prolong his days in the Kingdom, and of his children among the faithful.

^a21a Deut. 17:18-19

2 He shall execute judgment among the people, and over the princes and rulers, and over all that sit in judgment: He shall deliver the poor, the needy, and the oppressed: And if their cry be faint, yet shall he hear^a; he shall be a father to the fatherless, and a husband to the widow, and a guardian to him who hath no protector.

3 He shall overthrow the rebellious, destroy traitors, and punish those that do wickedly. The haughty shall he make low, and the oppressor shall he tread down: those that exalt themselves, shall he abase.

4 The power of the Lord God, He giveth to him, to rule the nations, and to execute judgments among the children of men: He shall declare the Laws and Commandments; exercise his dominion; and cast a shield round about the children of his people; that his dominion be not taken from him forever.

Chapter 22

Abstinence of the King

God alone hath the right to rule.

See 5 Moses 16:19-24

1 He shall not multiply to himself horses: he shall not multiply to himself carriages: He shall not multiply to himself ships: He shall not multiply to himself armor: He shall have all these to defend his people, and the children of his people, but not to oppress them^a.

2 He shall not multiply to himself wives; lest he forget the Law, and avenge not his people: and lest his heart turn from them to strange women^b.

3 He shall not multiply to himself servants of the children of his people; lest his yoke be oppressive.

4 He shall not multiply to himself silver and gold; lest he be proud, and turn away from this Law, and do it not^c.

5 Neither shall he lead his people to strange places to dwell therein, which the Lord thy God hath not appointed for their dwelling; lest they depart from the Law, and despise it.

6 He shall not make other Laws, despising this; but all his Laws and Commandments shall be according to the Law of the Lord thy

2a Ps. 77:2-4, 12-14; Isa. 11:4

*22 1a Deut. 17:16
2a Deut. 17:17*

4a Deut. 17:17

God, to establish it. For the Lord thy God shall speak; he shall decree, and he shall alter it as seemeth good unto him, and none shall hinder.

Chapter 23

*Viceroy*s

Thou shalt not usurp dominion as a Ruler.

See Judgements of YHVH 2:25-32

1 The king, when he committeth the administration of his kingdom to another; or when he appointeth another to rule a portion in his name, may make him a viceroy, and confer upon him kingly dignity.

2 The viceroy shall keep the king's commandment, and shall not depart from it; he shall not exalt himself against the king: He shall keep none of his doings from the king; and he shall be faithful unto him, and to his house, in all things.

3 The viceroy shall make no laws: he shall govern according to the law of the king, and the Law^a of God: If he deviseth a new law, yet shall he not proclaim it, but by the king's commandment.

4 He shall not do that which is forbidden to the king; but he shall exercise prerogative by the king's commission, in whatsoever part of his dominion he shall appoint him: He shall not despise the king's commandment, nor do that which he disalloweth; lest he be a usurper, and be removed from his place.

Chapter 24

King's Council

The name of God is great and glorious.

See 5 Moses 16:25-33

1 The king shall be aided by a Council^a, to consist of wise men, chosen from among his people, learned in the Law of the Lord, and faithful unto the king; who shall assemble before him in council, as

23 *3a DoS 22a:6-9, 62:7-11, 78g:1-8, 78f:1-14; DaC 27:2, 97:2, 107:2 RLDS, 28:2-6,*

100:9-12, 124:29-32 CJCLdS

24 *1a Ex. 24:13; 2 Sam. 2:13, 3:24-25, 19:5; 1 Kings 2:35, 7:6-8*

1851 (A. R. VI.)

often as he shall require, to give him advice in whatsoever matter he shall ask them.

2 The king may apportion the administration of the laws, and of the affairs of his kingdom among them, giving to each his appropriate department, as the king shall command.

3 The members of the king's council shall dwell near the king; they shall attend him on his journeyings, if he require it: They shall each give him information, reason, counsel and advice, of whatsoever matter he shall require, and shall keep nothing back.

4 Each member of the Council shall keep the charge of the king, which he committeth to him, in his several department; shall be a faithful steward of the king's substance, in his hands: and shall render the same, with a just account of his stewardship, as often as the king requires.

5 The counselors of the king shall be chosen by him as seemeth him good, being just men, learned in the Law, not proud, nor haughty; not given to much babbling; and they shall keep the king's secret all the days of their lives.

6 If they serve the king well, he shall reward them as just and faithful stewards; if they are unfaithful, he shall frown upon them: But he may choose new counselors, when it seemeth him good.

Chapter 25

King's Court

God alone hath the right to rule; and in his name, only he to whom He granteth it.

See 5 Moses 16:34-43

1 The king shall appoint wise men, learned in the Law of God, lovers of righteousness, not fearing the rich, nor despising the poor, to be judges; who shall sit before him continually, to judge all great causes^a. They shall sit upon the king's judgment seat, at his gate: The ear of the judges shall never be closed, that they cannot hear: This is the King's Court.

2 The king shall appoint twelve judges to this court, if so many are needed; all of them. High Priests unto the Most High God; for

^a 25 1a Ex. 18:21-22

the judging of all great matters^a; but all the smaller matters may be judged by other judges, as the king shall appoint, that these may judge the larger causes continually, and that they judge upon the judgment of other judges.

3 And the king shall order and determine what causes shall come before the King's Court, upon his judgment seat to be judged, and what causes shall be judged before the other judgment seats.

4 And the judges shall hear and judge, and determine speedily: they shall not delay: And they shall judge righteous judgment, and shall not take reward, and do injustice.

5 And if they judge unrighteously, or refuse judgment to the just, or despise the Law, or take reward for judgment, the king shall remove them. When they have served faithfully, he shall relieve them in their age and infirmity.

6 The Deacons shall bring the disobedient, the stiffnecked, the peace breakers, and all who have done great wickedness, before the Judges, and shall execute their judgment on all who withstand it, and obey not.

7 The Deacons shall execute all the orders of the Court, and shall be a fear unto the disorderly, and all revilers. They shall do whatsoever the judges command.

8 The Chief Deacon shall be the steward of the king's substance, which he committeth to the judges, and shall render a just account of his stewardship to the king.

Chapter 26

City Court

Whosoever is not chosen of God is a usurper.

See Judgements of YHVH 3:18-23

1 The king shall appoint judges in all the cities, three to a city, and more if the business of judgment require it: All of them Elders of the people; Priests of God; who shall sit upon the judgment seat of the city, and judge all the causes which shall come before them; even all such as the king shall appoint unto them to judge.

2a DoS 11a, 78j:8-10; DaC 99, 107:41 RLDS, 102, 124:131-132 CJCLdS

2 They shall sit in judgment, on the judgment seat in the Synagogue of their city, every Sabbath day, to do justice unto all men; and shall render speedy judgment upon all who have violated the laws.

3 The Deacons shall execute their judgment upon all who obey not, and shall bring before them the peace breakers, and all who do violence.

4 The Chief Deacon of the city shall be Steward of the king's substance, which he committeth to the judges, and shall render a just account. He shall also be the principal Minister of the Court.

Chapter 27

Municipalities

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain.

Compare to 5 Moses 17:1-3

1 In every village an Elder shall be appointed to rule, to teach, and to instruct: he shall govern the village according to the Law, and the king's commandment: To him shall the Priests of the Synagogue give heed; and if there be other Elders, they also shall give heed to him.

2 In every town shall Elders be appointed to rule, and teach, and instruct: five to a town: But if there be more than five Synagogues in the town, yet shall there be an Elder to each Synagogue, of whom one shall be Chief.

3 They shall govern the town according to the Law, and the king's commandment: They shall instruct the people in the Synagogue, everyone in his order: Unto the Chief of them shall the Priests of that town give heed; and unto everyone, in the Synagogue where he administers.

4 In every city shall Elders be appointed to rule, to teach, and to instruct, in all the Synagogues: But to the Synagogue of the judgment seat of the city, shall three be appointed judges of the court of the city: Another shall be appointed who shall be Bishop of that city; he shall be Chief of the Elders, both in that city, and in the towns and villages in its vicinity: to him shall they all give heed.

5 If there be more than one city in the province, then shall that bishop who is appointed to rule the province, administer in the chief

city: He shall be an Archbishop: to him shall the other Bishops give heed.

6 But if there be no city in a province, yet shall an Elder be appointed to rule in that province: He shall be Bishop: and a court shall be appointed also, and three Elders to be Judges: They shall be appointed at that place where the king will establish his government for that province.

7 By these shall the provinces, and cities, and towns, and villages of the kingdom be governed: And officers shall be appointed to assist them in governing, as shall be necessary. The king shall establish his dominion in this order forever.

Chapter 28

Twelve Apostles

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain;
for His name is great and glorious above all other names.

See Wars of YHVH 19:17-27

1 When the Lord, your God, shall send the Gospel to the nations, He shall call and choose twelve Apostles, to be the witnesses of His name and Kingdom, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

2 He shall appoint them Shepherds of the flock; under the direction of the Chief Shepherd^a: He shall make them Princes in His Kingdom^b: He shall appoint them to declare his Law unto all nations^c; and to execute it among the Saints who are scattered abroad.

3 The Apostles, everyone, shall have jurisdiction of the Churches beyond the kingdom, by appointment of the Chief Shepherd: They shall exercise royal authority in the kingdom, by the king's commandment.

4 Let them bear a faithful testimony to the nations: let them not shun to declare the whole counsel of God; and He shall give them rest from their labors; they shall be princes forever.

5 One among them shall be Chief: to him shall they all give heed, as to a king among princes: Yet shall the Chief Shepherd be king over them all: They shall not rebel against his commandment; and they shall be princes in his kingdom forever.

28 *1a* Matt. 10:1-8; Luke 24:47-48; Acts 1:8; HoS 25:44-57 - DaC 16:5 RLDS, 18:27-36

CJCLdS
2a John 21:16
b Matt. 19:28

c Matt. 28:16-20, Mark 16:15, Luke 24:47

Chapter 29

High Priests

The Lord will not hold him guiltless who taketh His name in vain.

See Wars of YHVH 18:19-28

1 The Lord, your God, will choose faithful men, keepers of His Law, examples in righteousness, to be Priests of the Order of an Endless Life^a. They shall be Princes and Nobles, and High Priests in the Kingdom of God. The presiding and ruling power is the prerogative of this Priesthood.

2 From the High Priests shall the king select counselors, and judges, and rulers. They shall sanctify things appointed of God to holy purposes, and shall minister in the salvation of the living and the dead. One hundred and forty-four High Priests form a quorum. From among themselves shall they choose one to preside in all their deliberations, and two to assist in presiding; but the king whom God shall set up shall preside over all the High Priests.

Chapter 30

Seventies

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord, thy God, in vain.

Compare to Wars of YHVH 19:28-34

1 The twelve Apostles shall select seventy Elders, chosen men, faithful in the ministry of the Word, to preach the Gospel, under their direction, unto all people.

2 One of the Seventy shall they appoint Chief: he shall be first in their assembly, and shall set them in order^a.

3 Other Seventies may the Apostles choose, until there shall be seven Seventies; and one shall be appointed Chief of each Seventy, to set his fellows in order, and to be first in their assembly.

4 The Seventies shall labor in the ministry of the word, and of

^a 30 2a DoS 5a-5b; DaC 104 RLDS, 107 CJCLdS; Luke 10:1; Ex. 14:1

sacraments and ordinances, one-fourth of their time; and continually, if their households do not lack bread and raiment.

5 They shall have jurisdiction by appointment of the Apostles; and shall be Chief in the Churches they build up.

6 When they have labored faithfully, they shall have rest, and a goodly inheritance among the just; but if they come short in the ministry whereunto they are called, their power shall be taken from them.

7 The Chief of the Apostles shall be the prince and Grand Master of the Seventies: unto him shall they all give heed.

Chapter 31

Elders

The name of God is great.

See Wars of YHVH 21:4-10

1 The wise men in every city, who love righteousness, and hate iniquity; who seek unto the Law of God and its justice; who obey the king, and honor all who are placed in authority, shall be ordained Elders^a.

2 These shall be Judges and Rulers, and shall govern and instruct in their several callings, as they shall be appointed^a: they are the leaders of the people.

3 The Elders shall read this Law all the days of their lives, that they may instruct the people therein, to keep it; and that they may be able to serve the king as governors, and rulers, and judges, and commissioners, and masters of the king's business, in the several offices to which he shall appoint them.

4 When they go beyond the kingdom to minister in word, and sacraments, and ordinances, the Apostles shall rule over them.

5 But they shall give heed to the Chief among them in their several cities, and one of the king's counselors shall be the Grand Master of them all.

31 1a *Num. 11:16, 24-25; 1 Sam. 16:4, 30:26; 2 Kings 19:2; Ezra 5:6, 6:14; Matt. 16:21, 21:23; Acts 11:30, 14:23*

2a *Ex. 19:7; Lev. 4:15; Deut. 25:8-9, 29:10; Ruth 4:4-9; 1 Sam. 30:26; 1 Kings 10:7; 2 Kings 6:32; Ps. 107:92; Pro. 31:23; Ezra 10:8 Matt. 27:20*

6a *Jas. 5:14; Matt. 10:1; Mark 3:13-14; Acts 5:16, 9:17, 27:8*

6 The Elders shall instruct the people in the Law and the Gospel on the Sabbath day, and in their assemblies: They shall visit the sick^a, the poor, and the needy: they shall comfort mourners, and all who are distressed, and counsel those who know not right.

Chapter 32

Priests

The name of God is glorious.

See Wars of YHVH 20:1-9

1 Faithful servants of God; godly in their walk and conversation; not given to strong drink, nor lust, nor lasciviousness; shall be ordained Priests, in all the cities, and in every town and village which hath a Synagogue.

2 They shall be Keepers and Ministers of the Temples and Synagogues, and shall be Ministers and Singers, and shall serve in all callings in the worship of God; and in all the ceremonies which shall be appointed for worship and adoration.

3 The Priests shall also assist the Elders in the work of preaching and shall visit from house to house to teach godliness among the people, and shall baptize for the remission of sins.

4 Whenever the Lord your God shall command you to build a Temple unto Him, that He may come and dwell in the midst of you, then will He establish a peculiar Priesthood, to administer the ordinances of that Temple.

5 One of the Priests in every Temple shall be Chief, and to him all shall give heed. But in every Synagogue the Priests shall give heed to the Chief of the Elders.

6 One of the king's counselors shall be Grand Master of all the Priests.

7 Godly women shall be Singers and Musicians, and assistants in the ceremonies, but they shall not kill sacrifices.

Chapter 33

Teachers

The name of God is above all others.

See Wars of YHVH 20:10-13

1 In every city, town, and village, ye shall ordain Teachers, men and women who are apt to teach, learned in letters, and in every science, and every manner of wisdom and knowledge; that they may instruct you and your children, and that you may attain to all wisdom and all knowledge^a.

2 In every Synagogue shall Teachers be appointed to instruct the people on the Sabbath day in the ways of the Lord, and in the words of this Law^a. The children of the rich and the poor, shall come together to learn of them, without price.

3 One of the king's counselors shall be the Grand Master of all the Teachers: He shall be Chief in their assemblies, and shall set them in order; to him shall they all give heed.

4 The Teachers of eminence shall be set apart as Doctors: But if any have attained to very great eminence, they shall be Rabbis, and the most eminent of all shall be Rabbonis.

5 Ye shall establish schools in all your cities, towns and villages; to every one shall a Teacher be appointed; but to the large schools many, that they may be able to faithfully instruct all who come unto them.

6 In every city shall ye establish an Academy: a learned Doctor shall be the Chief Teacher therein.

7 In every city shall a College be established: a learned Rabbi shall be Chief Teacher, and he shall have Doctors for his assistants.

8 If the city be very large, then may you establish other Colleges; and in all the cities, and large towns may you establish other Academies; and the Chief Teacher where there are several Academies, shall be a Rabbi; and where there are several Colleges, shall be a Rabboni.

33 *1a Eph. 4:11, Dan 7:3,
Joel 2:23, John 3:2, Acts 12:1,*

1 Cor. 12:28

2a Isa. 30:20

Chapter 34

Deacons

TThe Lord will not hold him guiltless who taketh His name in vain.

Compare to Wars of YHVH 20:14-15

1 In every city shall ye ordain Deacons; lovers of the Law; men of stout heart, strong arm, and swift foot: Men who neither despise the poor, nor fear the rich; kind, persevering, and just; seeking unto the Kingdom of God and its righteousness^a.

2 The Deacons shall be ministers unto the king, the judges, and the Elders, to execute their commandments, both in judgment and mercy: they shall be merciful and just.

3 The Deacons shall be Stewards and keepers of the king's prisons: and stewards of the king's courts.

4 In the cities, and towns, and prisons, shall Chiefs be appointed over them: but one of the king's counselors shall be their Grand Master.

Chapter 35

Establishment of the Law

Thou shalt not take the name of God in vain.

A revelation given to James J. Strang in February 1851

1 Fear not, little flock, for your Father, in His good pleasure, hath given you the Kingdom; the dominion is yours forever; ye shall smite the nations with a continual stroke; for the Lord, your God, hath spoken it: Ye shall break them in pieces, and destroy them; for the day of His vengeance has come.

2 He hath judged the nations that are near, and decreed destruction upon them, and their day continueth not: The nations far away are covered with their abominations as with a garment: their iniquities are not hid: He will not spare them.

^a 34 1a Acts 6:2-5, Phil. 1:1, 1 Tim. 3:8-13.

3 The Saints of the former days have sat in judgment upon them; they have judged the earth, and the nations thereof shall not be spared: Fire goeth before, famine followeth after; and the pestilence shall waste them.

4 Arise and smite them, O Daughter of Zion; and thou, O Tower of the Flock, whose power is above the clouds, possess thy dominion, and be thou a refuge: For Judah shall be bent, in his strength; as an arrow, Ephraim shall fill him: Manasseh shall be his barb; and Jacob shall be in the midst of the Gentiles, in the empire of nations, as a Lion among the beasts of the forest; as a young Lion in the flocks of sheep, who, when he goeth through, treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none shall deliver.

5 Let your fear be upon all men; and the terror of you upon your enemies; for this is the day of vengeance of the Lord, and of your recompense upon your enemies. Joseph shall possess his land again; for the throne of David is established as the days of the sun; His Kingdom is everlasting.

6 And now, O Daughter of Zion, the land of robbers, the empire of many nations, shall gather her troops against thee, to look upon thee, and to defile thy dominion: But they have not known the thought of the Lord; neither have they understood His counsel; for He shall gather them as sheaves of the floor.

7 Arise and thrash, for I will make thy power iron: the tread of thy foot shall crush: Thou shalt break in pieces many people, and shalt consecrate their spoil unto God, and their dominion to the Lord of the whole earth.

8 Babylon the Great shall perish before thee; for thou shalt do unto her as she hath done unto thee: Thou shalt render unto her as she hath rendered to thee, and reward her double for all her sins. Her cities shall be given to the flames, and the inhabitants to the sword: her government shall be broken in pieces, and her dominion taken away.

9 For in her is found the blood of Saints and Prophets; and the spoil of the children of God in the midst of her: And she hath drank of the cup of the indignation, and of the fury of God, with all the nations of the Gentiles.

10 Against her, Apostles have washed their feet on earth, and borne witness in heaven; and by the testimony and the blood of Prophets have her sins been made known in heaven: The great Prince, whose throne is as burning fire, hath judged her, saying: Let not her days be prolonged.

11 For by this Law shall men be judged in the portion of Joseph: God will give it to you, that you may possess it for an everlasting dominion. In the midst of the Gentiles shall ye establish your Synagogues, and gather out the just while ye wait for the judgments of God.

12 Ye shall, therefore, read in it all the days of your lives. Ye shall read it in your solemn assemblies, and in your joyous meetings; with the shout of triumph when your enemies flee before you; and in the voice of mourning when you have sinned against God, and have fled before them; ye shall read it in the gathering of your neighbors, and in the household with your children.

13 Ye shall talk of it in the house, and in the field, and by the wayside, and in the forest, and on the waters; in the camp, and on the march: When ye labor, and when ye rest shall ye speak of this Law to your neighbors, and to your wives, and to your children, and to your servants.

14 And ye shall think upon it in your joy, and in your sorrow; when upon the land which the Lord your God giveth you, and when far away; both in the midst of the multitude, and in your loneliness; all the days of your lives shall ye read it, and talk of it, and think upon it; and it shall be inscribed upon your hearts continually.

15 For by this Law hath the Lord, your God, sanctified you, and given you judgment, and justice, and dominion. Remember that ye stood before him; your king, and your princes, and your nobles, the men of you, with your wives and your children, and your little ones, and entered into covenant with the Lord, your God, to be a people unto Him, and to obey His Commandments, and to keep this Law; and that He covenanted with you to be your God, and to make you a nation of kings and Priests to the nations of the earth.

16 Keep, therefore, this Law, and obey these Commandments; for so doth God sanctify you, and so will He establish you, and prosper you, more abundantly than in former days. The land of Joseph shall ye possess forever, and Israel and Judah shall dwell again upon their own mountains.

17 Your vineyards, your gardens, and your orchards, ye shall plant again, and they shall flourish, and ye shall eat the fruit thereof: ye shall build houses, and shall inhabit them; and children's children shall be in them, for a crown of glory to you, if ye remember the Lord, your God, whose name is great and glorious, and keep His statutes.

18 And now if there be among you a man whose heart turneth

away from the Lord your God, to serve the god of Babylon, and to honor the names of the nations; if there be a root that beareth gall and wormwood; and when he heareth the curse in this Law, he bless himself, saying: I shall have peace, though I walk in the imagination of my heart, the Lord will not spare him.

19 But the anger of the Lord, and His jealousy, and His fierce wrath, shall smoke against that man: And all the curses that are written in this book shall be upon him, and the Lord shall blot out his name from under heaven.

20 At the end of every seven years, in the solemnity of the year, when all the children of the kingdom are gathered together before the Lord in Temples, and in Tabernacles, and all the people are assembled; princes and nobles, men, and women, and children, and the stranger that dwelleth in your gates; ye shall read this Law before them all, in their hearing, and shall make it known in the midst of them.

21 And your children, and the strangers dwelling in your gates, that have not heard it, shall learn this Law, and shall all remember it again, and ye shall all lift up your hands, and shall enter into covenant with the Lord your God to keep this Law, and to obey His statutes, that He may prolong your days upon the land.

Chapter 36

Priesthood

Thou shalt not usurp dominion.

Compare to Zenock 14:11-33

1 There are two Priesthoods: the Priesthood of an Endless Life; and the Priesthood of Life.

2 In the Priesthood of an endless life are two Orders; that of Apostles, and of Priests.

3 Of Apostles there are four Degrees.

4 The first Degree is that of Lawgiver: and is Apostle, Prophet, Seer, Revelator, and Translator. This Degree is sole, and gives the word of God as from His own mouth^a.

³⁶ *4a Ex. 3:2, 4-6, 10, 15-17, 6:2-6, 20:1-22; Deut. 5:5-21; DoS 1:21-26, 2a:1-2,*

5a:32-3, 7a:2-5, 2b:1-2, 22a:6-10; DaC 1:4, 17:1, 104:42, 19:1, 43:1-2, 27:2 RLDS, 1:17-

23, 20:1, 107:89b-91, 21:1-3, 43:1-2, 28:2-7 CJCLdS

5 The second Degree is that of Counsellor: and is Apostle, Prophet, Seer and king.

6 The third Degree is that of Ambassador. Of these there shall be twelve. They shall be Apostles and witnesses to the nations, and rulers in all places where the Lawgiver shall send them.

7 The fourth Degree is that of Evangelist^a. Evangelists are Apostles, and witnesses of the Kingdom, to whatever nation they are sent. Seven are a full Quorum; and there shall be but one Quorum to any nation, kindred, tongue or people.

8 Of Priests there are two Degrees.

9 The first Degree is that of High Priests^a.

10 The second Degree is that of Elders.

11 In the Priesthood of Life are three Orders; that of Priest, of Teacher, and of Deacon.

12 Of Priests, of the Priesthood of life, there shall be a Chief Priest, a first and second High Priest, and a Leader of each Course of Priests, to every Temple.

13 This Priesthood shall be divided into Courses, according to the nature of their duties; and officers appointed in the several Courses, to guide and direct in the duties of the Course. In organizing the Courses, those may be included who have been ordained to a higher Priesthood.

14 Of Teachers there are five Degrees; Rabboni, Rabbi, Doctor, Ruler, and Teacher.

15 Of Deacons there are three Degrees; Marshals, Stewards, and Ministers.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <i>7a Acts 21:8; Eph. 4:11; 2 Tim. 4:6; Doctrines of the Saints 5b:27 - DaC 104:17 RLDS, 107:39 CJCLdS; Doctrines of the Saints 12b:23 - DaC 105:8 RLDS, 112:21-22</i> | <i>CJCLdS 9a 1 Sam. 10:5-6, 9-10; 1 Kings 18:4; Neh. 6:7; Isa. 29:10, 30:10; Jer. 2:8, 26, 4:9, 5:13, 8:1, 13:13, 14:13, 23:14-15, 26:7-16, 27:15-16, 18;</i> | <i>Ezek. 13:3-4, 22:25-28; Amos 2:11-12; Mic. 3:6-11; Zeph. 3:4; Zech. 13:4; Acts 11:27-28, 13:1, 15:32; 1 Cor. 12:28-29, 14:29; Eph. 3:5, 4:11</i> |
|--|---|---|

Chapter 37

Place of Your Dwellings

Six days shalt thou labor.

See 5 Moses 17:4-9

1 Ye shall not scatter abroad, after the manner of other men, nor dwell alone in the fields; ye shall dwell together in cities, in towns, and in villages. Your inheritances shall be appointed to you, both in the places of your dwelling, and in the fields and forests round about.

2 In the fields and forests may you go and dwell, when you labor there, but ye shall return; and your treasures, your granaries, and your storehouses, shall be at the place of your dwellings.

3 And if ye would in any wise go and dwell among strangers to gain power over them, or to get riches, or for any other reason whatsoever, ye shall not go except by permission of your king and of the rulers whom he shall command, lest ye be led away of your own lusts, and be estranged from the Lord, your God, and be cast off forever. Moreover, if ye go without permission, ye shall be spoiled of your goods; and except ye repent and return, ye shall not have a place in the congregation before the Lord.

Chapter 38

Groves, Forests, and Waters

The seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord, thy God.

See 5 Moses 17:10-18

1 Ye shall not cut down the timber on the hills and mountains, lest your children suffer for want of wood and water. Ye shall not destroy the groves along the shores of the lakes and ponds, lest the winds and storms make your land desolate, and both heat and cold destroy you. Therefore, shall ye cause them to grow continually, and they shall beautify your inheritance, and your children shall rise up and call you blessed.

2 Every man who receiveth an inheritance shall preserve a forest thereon, that his children may walk in the shade thereof, and may build houses and prepare food; and that his cattle faint not with heat or drought, nor perish in the blast; and the land yield her increase. If there be no forest, he shall plant one.

3 Ye shall preserve the trees by the wayside; and if there be none, ye shall plant them. Whether it be in the cities, towns, and villages, or the fields and forests, ye shall do it.

4 All these things shall ye do as your king shall appoint, and your rulers determine, that the land be pleasant to your children.

5 And in your cities, and towns, and villages, and by the side of great waters, and ponds, and running streams, and springs, shall groves be appointed to you, that the aged and the young may go there to rest and to play. There shall ye all make yourselves joyful.

Chapter 39

Apparel and Ornaments

Thou shalt keep the Sabbath day holy unto the Lord, that thou forget not the Law, nor be found keeping the company of the vile, nor be despised by the righteous.

See 5 Moses 17:21-26

1 Ye shall not clothe yourselves after the manner of the follies of other men; but after the manner that is seemly and convenient, shall ye clothe yourselves.

2 And your king, and your princes, and your judges and rulers shall clothe themselves according to their dignity: And the Priest who administers at the altar, and he who administers in the sacraments which I appoint unto you, shall clothe in the robes of his office.

3 And all the people in their solemn assemblies, and in their gatherings together, shall clothe themselves according to my Commandment.

4 And the ornaments of your persons, and of your apparel, shall every man wear, as I shall appoint; every man in his own order.

Chapter 40

Feasts

Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy.
Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;
but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God.

*First 2 verses, see Judgements of YHVH 9:20-24;
the following verses are a revelation given to James J. Strang in February, 1851*

1 These are the feasts of the Lord; holy convocations, even convocations and feasts unto the Lord your God.

2 Six days shall work be done, but the seventh day is the Sabbath day: Ye shall do no work therein: it is the Sabbath of the Lord in all your dwellings: Ye shall take care that nothing perish, but ye shall not labor for hire nor increase; ye shall have a holy convocation in all your Temples and Synagogues.

3 The day that James, the Prophet of God, was established king, and sat upon his throne^a, is a notable day; it shall be kept in remembrance forever.

4 As oft as this day returneth shall all the Saints assemble together; it shall be a holy convocation. They shall assemble in their Temples, and in their Synagogues, and in public places, to offer a thank-offering, an offering of praise unto God, because He has given the Kingdom to the Saints.

5 The king shall, therefore, offer a heifer, without blemish; in the presence of the congregation shall he offer it. In the morning shall he offer it, and the same day shall it be eaten: he and his household shall eat of it. Not a bone of it shall be broken: they shall eat it with bread, and seasoned with herbs.

6 After this manner shall all the children of the kingdom sacrifice: every man a heifer, or a lamb, or a dove. Every man a clean beast, or a clean fowl, according to his household.

40 3a Ediotr's Note: On July 8, 1850 James Jesse Strang was crowned "King of Beaver Island" in a ceremony on Beaver Island in Lake Michigan. His crown was made of gold, but from tin, described as a shiny metal ring with glass stars in the front. James J. Strang never claimed to be the king of Beaver Island itself, nor did he claim to be the king of any other geographical entity. He claimed to be king Kingdom of God upon the earth.

7 Ye shall take the victim of the sacrifice which ye shall offer, and shall bring it before the Lord in the presence of the congregation, and shall bring it to the Priest, and shall say:

8 I profess this day unto the Lord God, that I am come into the Kingdom which He promised by the mouth of all the Prophets: praised be his name for his glorious goodness, and his great power.

9 And the Priest shall slay the victim, and thou shalt say: We were a people, few in number; scattered among our enemies: They killed our Prophets, murdered our brethren, robbed us of our possessions, and banished us from among them; but God has made us a Kingdom: and the fear of us is upon those who hate us.

10 When the Gentiles evilly entreated us, and afflicted us, and thrust us out, we cried unto the Lord, God of our fathers; the Lord heard our voice, and looked on our affliction, and sorrow, and homelessness; and he gave us this land for an everlasting possession; and hath made us a kingdom: And now have I brought unto Him this victim for a thank-offering, and a perpetual memorial.

11 And thou shalt eat of the sacrifice: thou and thy household, and thy neighbor; but the stranger, though he dwelleth in thy gates, and in thy house, shall not eat of it. Thou shalt eat it with herbs, and the Priest with thee, in the congregation of the Lord; it is a holy convocation, and a feast unto the Lord: ye shall do no servile labor that day.

12 And when thou hast eaten, thou shalt say unto the Lord, thy God: I have come into the land which thou gavest to thy Saints: I have heard thy Law and have entered into covenant with thee to keep Thy Commandments; and I have eaten of the sacrifice before thee as a witness forever.

13 Look down from thy holy habitation, from heaven, and bless us this day, even all the children of thy Kingdom; and the land which thou hast given us, and establish us forever.

14 When ye are come into the land which the Lord your God giveth unto you, and have gathered the harvest of your inheritance, ye shall bring a portion of the first fruits of your fields before the Lord your God, for an offering of first fruits.

15 At every Temple where the name of the Lord your God is named, shall the Priest appoint the day of first fruits, according to the days of your principal harvests of food; and by that day shall ye all bring your offering of first fruits unto the Priest, in the Temples and the

Synagogues, and ye shall have a holy convocation before the Lord in every place to which ye bring the first fruits.

16 Ye shall lift up unto the Priest who ministereth unto the Lord a portion of first fruits, by the day of the holy convocation of the harvest; in the selfsame day ye shall offer an offering of flesh also; a clean beast, or a clean fowl: it shall be a sacrifice and feast of thanksgiving unto the Lord, for the abundance of the harvest.

17 And ye shall not eat of your harvest, neither bread, nor grain, nor green ears, nor roots, nor germs, till ye have brought your offering of first fruits before the Lord, your God. He that eateth thereof, shall add a fifth to what he ate, and bring it and the increase, and the first fruits also: and the first fruits shall be an abundance for the feast, every one for his household: And the rich shall bring for the poor, out of his abundance, and for the Priests also that minister.

Chapter 41

Inheritances

Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself:
thou shalt maintain his right against his enemy.

A revelation from God, given to James J. Strang, July 8, 1850

1 I have appointed the Islands of the Great Lakes for the gathering of the Saints, saith the Lord God. I have given the Islands to them for their inheritance^a; even all that man walketh not unto from the main.

2 And I have appointed my servant James the anointed Shepherd of my flock, to apportion unto every one his portion, for a perpetual inheritance.

3 Let him, therefore, appoint unto everyone his inheritance, sufficient for him, and for his children: And to the princes their portions, that they have an abundance for their servants, and their households; lest they be tempted to take reward for judgment, or feed not the poor for lack of bread, or deliver not the oppressed for the weakness of their arm.

4 Ye shall not sell your inheritances: nor shall ye deliver them to the hands of strangers, to possess them. Ye shall in no wise grant them to others: for they are the dwelling of your wives, the food and raiment of your servants, and the home of your children.

5 If ye sell your inheritances, and take a price for them, yet shall not the purchaser possess them; they shall not be his forever. And though you thrust him not out, yet shall your wives, your servants, and your children return to them, and none shall hinder.

6 And a book of inheritances shall your king keep, and your rulers also shall keep them, that every man may read therein, and trespass not upon his neighbor.

7 Ye shall set up landmarks to your possessions, and no man shall move them. If ye set not up landmarks, or neglect to keep them up that they go to decay, and are lost, and one trespass unwittingly, ye shall not punish him. He shall pay for what he hath gotten, or he who hath suffered the trespass shall pay him for his labor, and take his own, if he will.

8 If strangers or enemies set up landmarks against you, ye shall destroy them: they shall not remain.

Chapter 42

Descent of Inheritances

Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself; thou shalt do no injustice unto him.

See 5 Moses 26:14-29

1 If a man die leaving sons, his inheritance shall belong to them, and it may be parted among them. And to the firstborn, or he that is worthy to be so reckoned, shall be given a double portion, that he may keep up the dignity of his father's house.

2 The sons which he hath adopted shall be reckoned with the sons he hath begotten: they are his. But if any of his sons have received an inheritance already, they shall not receive a portion with their father's children.

3 No man shall receive two inheritances, lest his neighbor have none. But if he receive another, or if he marry an heiress, he shall surely give up the former, that it may be given to him who hath none, or who lacketh a portion.

4 If a man die having no sons, but daughters, the inheritance shall belong to them: The men who shall take them to wife, shall be called after the name of their fathers, every man after the name of his wife's

father: otherwise he shall not possess the inheritance. Thus shall the house and the name of him be kept up, who hath no son.

5 But if he have neither sons nor daughters, and he be found a righteous man, then may the king appoint his nearest kinsman who is found worthy, and is not the firstborn of his father, his heir; and he who is thus appointed shall be called after the name of him who had no child, thus shall his name and his house be kept up. Otherwise shall the king give his inheritance to him who is needy.

6 If a man desert his inheritance for a long time, that it be left to decay and waste, or become wild, that the portion of the house of the Lord, and the treasury of the king fail, then shall the king's servants possess it. And the king may take it to himself or grant it to another who needeth it.

7 If the sons of him who has left his inheritance return, the king's servants shall render it to them. But if the king has taken it to himself, or granted it to another, then shall the king give them another inheritance.

8 If any man will leave his inheritance to seek a place in another land which the Lord, your God, giveth you, then shall he render his inheritance to the king, who shall appoint him another, that his children may possess it instead of the former, and his house and his name be not lost among the Saints.

9 If the king seek men to go up to a new land to possess it by the Command of the Lord your God, then shall the sons among many brethren go up and establish their houses, and their names shall be named upon their inheritances, that they may be kept up forever, and they shall not inherit with their brethren of the possessions of their father.

10 Thus shall every man have an inheritance, or a portion, and they shall not be divided till they are too small for you.

11 If an inheritance has been divided, and one who hath a portion die leaving no child, or render it up to receive another, it shall not be given to a stranger to his house. It shall return to the head of the family to whom the inheritance pertaineth.

12 And if he die leaving no sons, but a daughter, and any of her kinsman who has also a portion of that inheritance take her to wife, he shall have her portion with her.

Chapter 43

Social Order

Thou shalt comfort thy neighbor when he mourns, and nurture him when he sickens:
thou shalt not abate the price of what thou buyest of him, for his necessity;
nor shalt thou exact of him, because he leaneth upon thee.

Verses 1-14, see 5 Moses 27:1-27; verses 15-17 see 5 Moses 13:20-27

1 Thou shalt not abide in the conversations of the ungodly; the corrupt desires of deceitful lusts; as an old man unchanged; but shalt be renewed in the spirit of thy mind; that thou be a new man; growing into the likeness of God's perfections; born anew in righteousness and true holiness.

2 Put away lying; speak every man the truth to his neighbor; let no corrupt communication proceed out of thy mouth; but that which is good to edifying, and increasing faith; that it may minister grace to the hearers: Grieve not the Holy Spirit of God, by which thou art sealed unto the day of redemption.

3 Put away anger, wrath, bitterness, and malice; and be ye kind one to another: tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as God forgiveth you; followers of God as dear children, walking together in love.

4 The first power over every child is the mother: the highest power in any household is the father of the family, the head of the house: to him let all give heed; but the Law is over all.

5 If the father dies, his firstborn son is head in his stead: Nevertheless, in the dwelling, he shall not rule over his mother, nor the mother of his brother; he shall honor them all the days of his life.

6 Thou shalt honor thy father and thy mother all thy days: Thou shalt not depart from them, nor rebel against them; but shalt abide with them, except they send thee away with a blessing; that thou mayest build them up, or, be established by thine own name.

7 But thou shalt seek to establish thy sons: thou shalt build them up with thee, or part them a portion of thine inheritance, as shall be meet, that they may grow up, and in their honor bring honor to thee.

8 And if thou have widows, or children, or servants, or any

members of thy household, thou shalt provide for them according to their station, and thy possessions. If thou do it not, the king shall appoint them their meat and their portion, as shall be just.

9 But the inheritance shall remain one; over it the firstborn shall have the highest dignity; and his portion shall be double: If any man having a portion, divideth it among his posterity, he need not to respect the firstborn: he shall do as seemeth him good.

10 If thy firstborn is not worthy to keep up the dignity of thy house, and thou wilt abase him, and exalt another in his stead, thou shalt bring him before the judges at the judgment seat of the city, and show what evil he hath done: And if thou clearly show that he is unworthy, and that the other is worthy, the judges shall declare it: thou shalt abase him, and adopt the other: But if thou hast neglected to instruct him, and to restrain him, the Judges shall declare it: thou shalt not abase him; the sin be upon thy head.

11 Thou shalt not sell thy daughter: thou shalt in no case take a price for her in marriage: But thou shalt endow her of raiment, and goods, and flocks, according to thine ability; and thou shalt give her in marriage only to whom she loveth, and who is worthy: Thou shalt not give her to a stranger, nor to a despiser of this Law, nor to a blasphemer.

12 Every man may give a portion to his children, a dowry to his wives, and a possession to his servants, while he liveth; and except it is manifestly unjust, the judge shall not change it after his death; as he determines it by his last blessing, so shall it be: if it be made sure before, it shall not be changed.

13 The princes, and the nobles who have a great possession for an inheritance, according to their dignity, shall reserve a portion according to his dignity to the firstborn: To their other sons shall they give portions as common men; but they shall seek rather to make Nobles of them all.

14 If a nobleman or a prince have servants, and they eat not their bread at his table, he shall appoint them their portions, in his inheritance, that they hunger not: Upon his inheritance he shall be as a king to them; but he shall not exact more than a tenth of them, besides the tithing of all.

15 This is the Law of the servant taken captive in war, and of the servant bought with money, and of the servant born in thy house, and of him who cleaveth unto thee that thou mayest be a Prince and a Savior unto him: He shall be unto thee next to thy child: and thou

shalt seek to establish him; for his greatness is thy glory.

16 But if they be content to abide in his household, it is better: he shall appoint them their food, their raiment, and their habitation, in due season; and they shall labor in his shop, and his field, and with his flock; they shall share in all his toils, and in all his possessions, and he shall be a ruler over them. If they serve him, he shall not cast them off forever; but if he oppress them, and they flee from him, ye shall not return them to him, lest his hand be hard upon them.

17 And if the brethren or the neighbors of a Prince or a Nobleman join themselves unto him, he shall appoint unto them duty and reward, according to their rank, and ability, and faithfulness: In his household they shall be as sons; and with him, and with his heir, shall possess his inheritance, that they together, being strong, may wax exceedingly great.

Chapter 44

Household Relations

Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself:

for in so doing thousands shall rise up and call thee blessed,
and the Lord thy God shall strengthen thee in all the work of thy hand.

Verses 1-10, see 5 Moses 25:23-44; verses 11-15 see 5 Moses 26:1-8

1 Thou shalt be fruitful and multiply and replenish the land which the Lord, thy God, giveth thee and subdue^a it: lest it be waste and desolate, and thy name be lost in the generations to come.

2 But all thy children shall be of thy wives: thou shalt not go after strange women, for so should the land be corrupt under thy feet; an abhorring to the righteous; and thy children scattered abroad; and in the mixing of thy seed, is barrenness and desolation; the corruption of the flesh, and disease and anguish.

3 Thou shalt not marry thy mother^a, or thy daughter^b, in any line, to all generations: Thou shalt not marry thy sister^c, or the daughter of thy sister or thy brother, or the sister of thy father or thy mother^d: thou shalt not marry a woman and her daughter to all generations^e.

^a 44 *1a Gen. 1:28, 9:1-7; Lev. 26:9; Ps. 127:3, 128:3-6*
3a Gen. 49:4; Lev. 18:7,

20:11; Deut. 22:30, 27:20;
Ezek. 22:10; Amos 2:7; 1 Cor. 5:1
b Lev. 18:9, 20:17; Ezek 22:11

c Lev. 18:11
d Lev. 18:12-13, 20:19-20
e Lev. 18:17. 20:14

4 Thou shalt not marry a virgin in infantile sexual impotence; nor a dwarf, nor one hereditarily deformed, nor possessed of evil spirits, nor any one not clothed in her right mind: nor any one thou lovest not, or who loveth not thee.

5 Thou shalt not take unto thee a multitude of wives disproportionate to thine inheritance, and thy substance: Nor shalt thou take wives to vex those thou hast; neither shalt thou put away one to take another.

6 Thou shalt not put away thy wife but for adultery: the adulteress is abominable; she shall be given to the corruptions of the flesh, that her belly may swell and her thigh rot; and that she be a warning and a proverb: if she repent in dust and ashes for a long time, thou mayest forgive her; yet is she not thy wife: if thou wilt take her, thou shalt marry her again.

7 Thou shalt not lie with the wife of thy neighbor; for it is an abomination: Neither shalt thou take her to wife; she cannot be thine: If he stone thee to death, no man shall hinder: thou shalt not be avenged; what he doeth he shall do speedily.

8 Thou shalt give thy daughter in marriage while she is yet young: If thou give her not till she has been six years potent, she may give herself in marriage: thou shalt not prevent her.

9 Thou shalt take a wife to thy son, while he is yet young; yet not in his infantile impotence: Thou shalt take for him one that he loveth, and who loveth him; if thou doest it not, when he hath been seven years potent he may take one to himself: thou shalt not prevent him.

10 And if thou covenant or promise to marry a woman or a virgin, thou shalt not break thy covenant; thou shalt not draw back from thy promise: And if thou lie with one, and she conceive seed of thee, thou shalt take her to wife; thou shalt not bring her shame upon her: If thou dost her brethren shall stone thee, and none shall deliver thee; and yet thou shalt be judged for thy faithlessness: If she be not of thy rank, and her brethren fear thee, the hand of the Elders shall be against thee: thou shalt not corrupt the poor, nor bring shame upon them.

11 If thy brother have an inheritance, and die leaving a wife, but no seed, thou shalt take her to wife, and raise up seed to thy brother, that his name be not lost among the people: Thou shalt possess the inheritance with her, till the seed be grown up to possess it. If he had but a portion, it shall be thine, and the seed also. If she love thee not, or thou wilt not take her, this right goeth to the next kinsman; but no one shall take the inheritance or portion without her.

12 Moreover, if thou takest a widow in marriage, and she have been joined to another forever, thou shalt only take her for life; and it shall be expressly determined whose the seed is; whether thine, or his whose widow she is.

13 If thou marry a wife having children, and they have no father in the kingdom, and she bring them to thee, they are thine: thou shalt receive them, and establish them.

14 If thou marry a wife, and she is the first representative in the faith of her progenitors and near relatives, in the redemption of the dead they shall be hers; she shall bring them to thee: If thou obtain a royal Priesthood, they shall be thine in the dominion forever: thou shalt raise them up in the last day, to increase the glory of thy kingdom.

15 If a woman or a virgin obtain a good report through faith, and is chosen of God a Prince and a ruler, she shall have an inheritance appointed to her, with her husband or her brethren, that she may possess it, and her children with her, and that she may rule over all her house.

Chapter 45

Highways

TThou shalt not turn aside from relieving thy neighbor.

See 5 Moses 17:19-20

1 The Seas, and Lakes, and Rivers where men can pass in boats and vessels of any kind, are the highways of the nations: thou mayest travel them: no man shall hinder.

2 Deserts, and forests, and waste places are also highways for the people: thou mayest pass over them, and none shall prevent thee.

3 The king may make great roads from city to city, and wheresoever the good of his people requires them, either by land or by water.

4 The king shall appoint Elders, discreet men to keep his highways, and to receive tribute of those that use them, that there may be money to make and preserve them forever.

5 The king may also grant unto others to make highways, and to receive tribute for the use of them, that they may be recompensed for the labor they have done: They shall not be oppressive in their charges:

the king shall restrain them according to justice.

6 The king shall appoint Elders in all the cities, and towns, and villages, to establish, make and preserve roads in all the country round about, as his people have need.

7 The king shall grant unto them a portion of the tithing of his people for the making of roads for the common use of all, without cost, that nothing obstruct you in your travels.

8 The king's highway shall be made in the best place, and no man shall hinder; it is for all the people to pass over. But in making roads the Elders shall spare every man's inheritance, unless the necessity for crossing it be very great.

9 In the cities, and towns, and villages, ye shall make streets, and lanes, and alleys, with sidewalks, and crosswalks.

10 And in the highways, and roads, and streets, ye shall plant trees, and shrubs, and grass, and they shall be pleasant and beautiful.

Chapter 46

Tithing

Thou shalt maintain thy neighbor's right.

Compare to 5 Moses 18:10-23

1 Of all the fruit of your fields, and the increase of your flocks, a tenth shall you render to the house of the Lord, your God^a, and the treasury of the king; that the Priest who administers in holy things, and the servants of the king, who rule in righteousness, may eat bread, and the land yield her increase.

2 If ye do not these things, the Priest shall fail to instruct you and your children: the order of God's house shall be forgotten; and the servants of the king shall forget the Law, and judge for hire, and righteousness shall cease. Then shall wickedness be in the midst of you, and oppression come upon you.

3 Moreover, the king shall send his servants to demand of you, and they shall exact that which ye have withheld, and shall wrest it from you with increase; and if ye resist them, ye shall be spoiled.

46 1a Lev. 27:30-32; Deut. 12:6, 14:22, 26:12; 2 Chron. 31:5; | Neh. 10:37, 12:44; Mal. 3:8; Luke 11:42; Heb. 7:5-9

4 Of all the spoil which you take from your enemies, a tenth shall ye render to the house of the Lord, your God, and the treasury of the king^a: That he who administers in holy things may remember you before God, and the king's arm may deliver you.

5 If ye do not this, ye shall not go out with a blessing, and ye shall flee before your enemies, and none shall deliver you.

6 Moreover, the king shall lift his hand against you, and shall buffet you, and from you shall he take the spoil; and if ye remove it from him, he shall spoil you.

7 When you labor not in these things, yet one-tenth of your time shall you consecrate to the Lord, your God, and shall labor for the house of the Lord, your God, and for the treasury of the king, according to your skill, and your cunning, and your art, and you shall not withhold that a place for God to dwell among you may not be wanting, and the work of the king may not fail, and that you may possess abundantly fields, flocks, and habitations.

8 If ye do not these things, ye shall not prosper in the work of your hands, and poverty shall be in your dwellings.

9 Moreover, the king shall take^a your goods and your substance from you, to recompense what you have defrauded the house of the Lord, and the treasury of the king, with increase. And if ye obstinately defraud in these things, ye shall be beaten with stripes.

10 And whosoever cometh into the kingdom, a tenth of all he possesses shall he give for the establishment of the kingdom, and for its increase, that he may have an everlasting inheritance therein.

11 And until he do this, no inheritance shall be given unto him, and he shall not wax rich in goods.

12 Moreover, the king shall send his servants to take a tenth from him, with increase; and then the king, remembering his children, shall grant an inheritance unto him: but his obstinacy shall surely be remembered.

4a Gen. 14:16-20

9a When an increase is taken, it shall be one-fifth of the tithing (Lev. 27:31), and the charges of the officer for collecting the same.

Chapter 47

Payment of Debts

Thou shalt do no injustice to thy neighbor.

Compare to 5 Moses 13

1 Thou shalt pay what thou owest: thou shalt not refuse it: And if thou refuse, the judge or the Elder shall send a Deacon, and he shall take of thy substance, and pay him whom thou owest.

2 If thy neighbor oweth thee, and is poor, thou shalt have compassion on him, and shalt not oppress him; but if he will not pay thee, or if he trespass on thee, or do thee wrong, thou shalt admonish him. If he hear thee not, thou shalt take with thee one or two neighbors, and shalt labor faithfully with him to do thee justice. If he will not hear them, thou shalt lay thy testimonies at the judgment seat, and the Elder or judge who judgeth, shall hear thee and him also. And he shall judge between thee and thy neighbor: and whosoever will not hear him, he shall send the Deacon to execute his judgment.

3 But if thy neighbor seek to defraud thee, or to do thee violence, or if he have done thee violence, thou mayest bring the matter to the judgment seat before thou admonish him: The Elder or the judge shall judge between thee and him.

4 If thy neighbor hath not the very thing to pay thee that he promised, and be poor, thou shalt have compassion on him, and shalt take what he hath; but thou shalt not make him quite naked.

5 Thou shalt not lend to thy neighbor that is poor, on usury: thou shalt aid him, and strengthen him, and not oppress him: Neither shalt thou keep his garment in pledge till morning: thou shalt return it to him.

6 Thou shalt not defraud the laborer of his hire. Thou shalt not keep his wages till the darkness, lest he return not to his home, and his children have no bread; and their cry ascend to God against thee. If he testify to thee that they lack nothing, then shall he wait on thee, as thou shalt agree.

Notes on The Book of the Law of the Lord

*Being a translation from the Egyptian of the Law given to
Moses in Sinai, with numerous and valuable notes.*

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints

1856 (A. R. VI.)
(Public Domain)

Edited and Printed by
The Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship

2026

(CC BY-ND 4.0)

NOTES ON THE LAW

Chapter 1

The Decalogue

I

1. The design of the Almighty evidently is to found his government in love, and to make that the chief sanction of His Law. Love is the first thing required of all men; love unto God, who first loved us, and who bestows on us all the good which we possess.

2. The adoration service and obedience, which he demands of us, are but the natural sequence of that love; and the universal prohibition of false gods is a necessary means of keeping our hearts unto him, for if we were allowed to bestow divine adoration on fire, the sun, or any instrument of his munificence, or any statue, or symbol, or any man, or officer, or imaginary being, as his representative, man's shortsightedness would forget God, and soon worship only the creature.

3. Thus, the earth is filled with examples of nations relapsing into idolatry through such small beginnings, as setting up apt symbols of God's perfections, to be worshipped by the ignorant, instead of the God whose majesty they symbolized.

4. The priesthood and the generality of the learned in most Pagan nations, do not worship the idols which they set up for the ignorant to adore; but rather the majesty who is above them, or the power and beneficence which they represent.

5. And in Roman Catholic countries, it is to be feared that many of the ignorant, really terminate their adoration on the cross, the images and pictures, with which their churches are filled: though the mere presence of them in the church is not objectionable.

6. Though God has founded his government in love, and made that the chief sanction of His Law, we are not allowed for one moment to imagine that he will not punish sin, or that he will look upon it with any degree of allowance.

7. For in the same breath, he tells us that he is a jealous God, visiting iniquity on all that hate him; not as some have said, visiting

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

the iniquity of the fathers upon their innocent posterity; but upon their children who abide in their sins.

8. Often it happens that though the father alone may have committed the sin, the children are its beneficiaries. If the fathers have obtained property by fraud and violence, the children who inherit it receive it, subject to the curse; and unless they make reparation for the iniquity, must expect to be visited with the wrath of God, as for a sin done in their own persons.

II

1. By the first Commandment, God establishes a government among men, which he makes supreme in all things. But as every government, besides laws and the sovereign power whence they emanate, must also have officers by whom the laws shall be administered; so those officers must derive their authority from the sovereign, in legal form.

2. All officers act in the name of him from whom they derive their authority. In the several American states, the official acts of most State officers are done "in the name of the people of the State."

3 Officers of the Federal Government, act "in the name of the United States of America." In the monarchies of Europe, official acts are done "in the name" of the sovereign. And in voluntary societies and corporations, the officers act "in the name" of the society or corporation.

4. It therefore appears that to act in the name of anyone, is to act by his authority; and to act in the name of God is to act by his authority.

5. Hence, taking the name of God in vain is taking his authority without being authorized; it is attempting to govern, without being called to that office; in any matter wherein God has declared a Law, and appointed an administrator of the Law.

6. It follows, therefore, that every form of government among men, which was not instituted of God, is a usurpation (*Zech. 14:9, 17; Dan. 2:44, 7:14; Rev. 11:15*), and that every exercise of the proper functions of government under it, is a taking of the name of God in vain, as every exercise of functions not proper to government, is tyranny.

7. Priests made by the authority of man and not called of God; Priests who constantly profess to have received no dispensation from

God, and who deny that he has revealed himself to any for eighteen hundred years, do constantly administer in his name, as boldly as though they were sent by him.

8. They baptize in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit; they go about doing works in the assumed power and might of God's ministers, of whom Jesus Christ said, "I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity" (*Matt. 12:23*).

9. He did not deny that they had preached, prophesied, or worked miracles in his name. He denounced them as workers of iniquity, because they were unknown to him; that is, they were not his ministers. They took God's name in vain.

10. God has appointed a door to the priesthood; a call of God by revelation, and an ordaining by the hands of his ministers (*Heb. 5:4, Ex. 28:1, 1 Tim. 4:14, Acts 7:35*); and Christ declares that he that comes not in by the door, but climbs up some other way, is a thief and a robber (*John 10:1*).

III

1. The day of rest originated in the rest of God, when he ceased the work of creation, at the making of man, to have dominion over the earth.

2. It was had in remembrance as an institution of God, before promulgated by his voice in Sinai (*Gen. 2:2-3, Ex. 16:23*); and there is no ground for believing that the sanctifying of the Sabbath, was not a law among the Patriarchs and the Antediluvians, because it is not mentioned in the scriptures; for from the time of Moses until that of Solomon, when it was unquestionably in force, it is nowhere mentioned.

3. Throughout Christendom, with some slight exceptions, the first day, and not the seventh, is kept as a Sabbath. For this, they have no warrant in the scriptures, and pretend to none (*Buck's Th. Dic. "Sabbath"*). The reason given for the change is that Christ rose from the dead on the first day, and the attempt is to justify it by tradition and the practice of the Church.

4. But, evidently, the Church has no power to change or abrogate a commandment of God, who required us to keep the seventh day, not

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

any other day in the seven.

5. The early Christians did undoubtedly frequently meet on the first day for religious worship, precisely as the Saints do nowadays, in exclusively Christian communities; not because they regarded it as the Sabbath of God, but because on that day, being the regular day of heathen festivals, men would come together to hear them.

6. Keeping the first day as a Sabbath, instead of the seventh, is one of the innovations forced upon Christianity by the Emperor Constantine, to make the change of national religion less difficult.

7. The very language of this Commandment, seems to presage the propensity of man to change the Sabbath; remember the Sabbath day; and God, foreseeing what wicked men would do, has placed on his chosen a special injunction that they keep that day in all their generations for a perpetual covenant (*Ex. 31:13-17*); and awful penalties are denounced against those who abolish it.

8. The Sabbath is appointed for men in every station in life. The crime of exacting labor of children and servants on the Sabbath day is a great offence unto God. But it is the Sabbath of the beast as well as of men, and to work beasts for our pleasure or profit is an offence unto God.

IV

1. As God has founded his government on the dominion of love, and as our principal relations in life are to God as a superior, and to our neighbors as fellows, love to our neighbor is as necessary to a faithful observance of His Law as love to Him.

2. All the Commandments which follow after are but the elaboration of the Law, "Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself;" a Law very aptly expressed in that other form of words, "Whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them" (*Matt. 7:12. Luke 6:31*).

3. Many infidel writers of late years, have attempted to derive this precept, under the name of the golden rule, from heathen philosophers, and have claimed that Christ borrowed it from Zoroaster, or Confucius; whereas, they, as well as he, have only copied it, with a slight change of words, from the Commandment, "Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself."

4. The doctrine contained in it is original with God, and does not even date with Moses, but was known in the days of Adam; and it was in violation of this Law, as well as that which says, thou shalt not kill, that Cain lifted up his hand against Abel.

5. If all men were under the Law of God, this Law would introduce a universal brotherhood: a consummation most desirable. But so long as men are found in rebellion against the Law of God, it is most important that those who cleave unto it should remember this thing, that they love one another.

6. If anyone has really done us an injury, we ought, as far as possible, to believe that he was blinded to the right by the common infirmities of our corrupt nature, rather than that he has deliberately, and of malice aforethought, designed to do a wrong.

7. But if the utmost stretch of charity will not bring us to so favorable a conclusion, still we should remember that his corrupt conduct will injure him more than us, and so remembering, should look upon him as an object of compassion, whom we ought to reclaim, rather than an object of vengeance, to be destroyed.

8. Even when we are obliged to bring him to judgment, our prayer should be that he be not utterly condemned, but that when he is found in the wrong, there may be found room for repentance.

V

1. The Patriarchal ages were distinguished by veneration for parents, and deference to age, as well as by a proper regard for those who, by their priesthood, or office, stood as fathers of the people.

2. Even at this day, in some Oriental and Levantine countries, children so honor their fathers and mothers.

3. But in no country on earth have men so far departed from this rule as in the United States.

4. It is the continual scandal of the time and country that children constantly speak of their parents as the "old man and woman," and as age grows upon them, rather look upon them as encumbrances upon the estate than as heads of the house.

5. This evil is increasing with time. A single generation back,

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

children were instructed at home and at school to make obeisance to parents, teachers, and to men and women generally, at entering and leaving a house, at meeting them on all occasions, and especially on receiving favors from them.

6. All this is changed now. Very small children pride themselves on wanting respect to age, station, and parentage. This is all wrong.

7. The general lawlessness which pervades the continent, the boldness with which laws and the ministers of justice are defied by small bodies of men, grow naturally out of the education of boys, in the customary manner.

8. But due honor to parents does not consist solely in mere forms. The whole idea that at a certain age a son becomes independent of his father is vicious.

9. A son should be subject to his father all his days. He should ever look up to him as the head of the house, and though separately established on his own inheritance, should pay such deference to him as he in turn, would desire from his own sons.

10. If parents attempt to use their authority over their sons for selfish and private ends, endeavoring to make mere servants of them, instead of building them up, they greatly abuse their authority (*Col 3:20-21*).

11. But for that or greater causes, children cannot justify dishonoring their parents, though they may refuse submission to mere usurpation.

12. It is every man's duty, as far as in his power, and at as early a period as possible, to establish his sons in such a position as to make them useful members of society, remembering that when so established, they are yet his sons, and their honor is his honor.

VI

1. In very few Christian countries, have public men had the moral courage to refuse dueling, which once became so thoroughly established as an honorable arbitrament of controversies, as to have a force little less than that of law.

2. Dueling is now, to some extent, discarded. But in place of it has risen the more barbarous Lynch law, in pursuance of which mobs get

up mock courts, to judge those they have already doomed to exile or death.

3. To execute the judgments of such courts is as much murder as any killing under any circumstances can be. No amount of evidence of the real guilt of the condemned can give the slightest color of justification to such a deed.

4. All killing by mobs, or bodies of unauthorized men, acting upon no matter what provocation, and not in open and legal war, belongs to the category of mere murder.

5. Nor should that be regarded as legal war, which men by their law have authorized, but only that which the Law of God authorizes.

6. Consequently, he who voluntarily enters upon an unjust war is guilty of murder. As part of the force, he is guilty when death is inflicted by others.

7. Nor will he be justified, though required by the law of his country; for that which the Law of God declares to be sin, man cannot make lawful.

8. It is, therefore, the duty of the Saints to abstain from all wars which are not authorized by the express word of God, or the plain principles of His Law, as from murder.

9. Many laws have been made among men, especially among barbarous nations, which are themselves opposed to the divine Law, and enforced with the punishment of death.

10. To have any share, however indirectly, in enforcing such laws, or inflicting the penalties for their violation, is in the last degree culpable.

11. It does not follow, however, that one should rebel against such governments. In most cases it is better to remove beyond their dominion.

12. To those who remain, remonstrance is better than resistance. If one is thus involved in punishment, patient, unresisting submission is a faithful testimony against sin.

13. Even those trades and employments not necessary for the happiness of mankind, and which minister principally to vices destructive of life, are in their nature murderous, and should be avoided as deadly sins, which God will judge.

VII

1. Few crimes have worked so terrible destruction among men as adultery, that popular vice, which, in these degenerate days, is rather boasted of than concealed by the guilty.

2. The most wicked delusion of the times is that which places the obligation of chastity on woman alone, visiting the penalty of crime on the victim, rather than on the criminal.

3. Every man of the world understands very well that within certain trifling limitations, he can indulge in unrestrained licentiousness, without suffering reproach in fashionable society.

4. Worse than this, those who are reputed successful in this crime are most popular among women and envied by men. Thus, society offers bounties for the crime which, of all others, most desolates the household and the social circle.

5. There can be no remedy for these evils until chastity becomes the duty of men, as well as women. Such is the rule of God's Law. The interdict of adultery is addressed principally to men, as the persons chiefly bound to preserve the sanctity of this Commandment.

6. This rule was well understood in the days of the Patriarchs, as well as in later times. Joseph resisted the seductions of his master's wife, and numerous instances are recorded where crimes against chastity were visited on the guilty men, rather than on their victims (*2 Sam. 7:9-10; Gen. 34:1-2, 25-29*).

7. Happily for the people of God, this rule, despite the corrupt education, which, as Gentiles, they received, has become a sentiment among the Saints, so strong that treating it lightly produces universal indignation.

8. Among Gentiles, a man would be laughed at and lose caste, who professed to practice chastity in the face of strong temptation. But a woman once overtaken in sin is irrecoverably disgraced, no matter by what false practices overcome.

9. But among the Saints, a man guilty of adultery would be avoided as though infected with a plague-spot, and his victim, though deeply disgraced, might hope, by a long course of humility and penitence,

for some of that forgiving charity, which, from the infirmities of human nature, all so much need.

10. The crime of fornication is only an inferior kind of adultery. For, as adultery is a pollution of the marriage bed, so fornication is the pollution of the bed of celibacy.

11. Nor should anyone imagine for a moment that any subsequent reparation can justify fornication. For though the law compels the guilty seducer to marry the victim on whom he has begotten seed, he is yet guilty.

VIII

1. The general interdict, "Thou shalt not steal," does not prohibit larceny alone, but all those modes and contrivances, by which one person appropriates the labor or property of another, unjustly.

2. Even if the unjust appropriation be consummated through legal forms, or the consent of the victim be obtained through deception or fraud, or by taking advantage of mental imbecility, it is stealing as much as where the taking is done secretly, without the consent of the owner.

3. Obtaining property by gambling is stealing; for the owner receives nothing for that with which he parts, and the inducement of each to the undertaking is the hope of obtaining from the other something for nothing.

4. Taking property in pledge for debts or advances disproportionate to the amount pledged, and retaining it forfeited for nonpayment, is another mode of stealing.

5. Letting money on a mortgage, and buying the mortgaged property at the mortgage sale for less than its value, is stealing; and if two combine, one to take the mortgage, and the other to buy the property, both are alike guilty.

6. Buying or selling property to be delivered on time, at a fixed price, and operating on the markets to produce an artificial scarcity or abundance, so as to obtain money for releasing the contract, or damages for the nonperformance of it, or any similar transaction, equivalent to that, is only a civil mode of stealing.

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

7. In fine, all those speculative transactions, by which one man obtains from another anything valuable, without making what is esteemed by both parties a just and full equivalent. partakes of the nature and guilt of theft.

8. But these definitions do not include letting money at reasonable interest. For the use of money is of substantial worth, and it is just that one who borrows money to make money by the investment of it, should pay for the use of it.

9. Nor do they extend to buying property in quantity, to be retailed at a higher price; for the subdivision and keeping open market is a just consideration for a higher price. And so of all legitimate commercial transactions, where a real difference in the value of property is produced by transportation, transmutation, or timely retention.

10. Neither do they extend to cases where bounties are offered to the successful competitors in any laudable undertaking, and truly awarded, and so received.

IX

1. At Common Law a man is liable to be punished for bearing false witness, only when under oath; and then only in cases where the proceeding is judicial, the oath false, the intention willful, the assertion absolute, the falsehood material to the matter in question, and the person legally sworn (*Chitty's Crim. Law, Vol. ii, p. 302, 303*).

2. So narrow is this rule that any person may swear in the most solemn manner to anything whatever, no matter how false, in any case not in the course of proceedings at law, and he is subject to no punishment.

3. And on a trial for perjury, if it should turn out that the Magistrate before whom the perjury was committed was not duly qualified, or that in some manner he had failed to get jurisdiction of the cause, or that the particular part of the testimony wherein the perjury was committed was not material to the issue, no matter how corrupt the intention, or how false the testimony of the accused, he would go clear, legally.

4. Indeed, so loose is the rule of law among Gentiles on this subject that for all practical purposes, nearly all perjury and every form of false witness not under oath is lawful.

5. If it should be alleged that the laws against libel and slander are a restraint upon false witness in cases less than perjury, it should be remembered that the action for a libel is not founded on its falsehood, but on its tendency to cause a breach of the peace; and an indictment for a libel lays for printing the truth, as well as a falsehood, though lately this rule has been slightly modified.

6. And the action for slander cannot be maintained, simply for bearing false witness against another; but for falsely accusing him of some indictable offence, involving moral turpitude, or subjecting him to infamous punishment (*5 Johns. R., 188*); some act injurious to him in his profession or business (*8 Johns. R., 64. 1 Johns. C., 330. 5 Johns. R., 476. 17 Johns. R., 217*); or anything by which he suffers a pecuniary injury (*10 Johns. R., 281. 5 Cow., 351. 1 Wend., 506*).

7. Under these rules, perjury and slander, false witness in nearly every form, are actually legal. One may, by his falsehoods, keep the neighborhood in a perpetual broil; speak evil of dignities, and almost all manner of falsehood of the purest of God's creatures, and the law has no bridle for his tongue.

8. The Law of God changes all this. It exacts truth of all men, in all places, when it allows anything to be put in issue; and takes no denial, when it makes inquisition.

9. Its searching supervision goes into the family circle and forbids that a man speak falsely to his wife, his child, or his servant; and among the multitude, it rebukes the talebearer and forbids all men to raise a false report.

X

1. Other systems of Law are satisfied with external actions. God's Law demands the allegiance of the heart. It will not be satisfied because our actions appear to be righteous, only when we are moved to them by just motives.

2. Thus, we are not merely forbidden to steal, but we are forbidden to desire our neighbor's property. We are not merely forbidden to usurp dominion which God has bestowed on another, but we are forbidden to desire the possession of it.

3. Covetousness does not consist in the desire to increase our

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

substance and multiply riches; for that desire is laudable. Covetousness is the desire to obtain that which is another's, rather than to increase our own by production.

4. Many men, possessed of industry and talent, spend their lives in a series of efforts to make themselves rich on the possessions, or out of the earnings of others; when, with equal efforts, they could produce wealth.

5. So great is this propensity, that there are numerous occupations and professions, the chief business of which is, not to make anything valuable, or add value to anything in being, but to get away something from the owner; and either leave him destitute, or to new toils to supply himself.

6. Such business is unlawful. If our neighbor has a good farm, we have a right to desire as good; but we have no right to desire his, even for a price. Our desires ought to be our own, and we should seek to improve that, and make it desirable, rather than get away with that of another.

7. God created all the land for man. Man made none of it. Why should he sell it? There is enough for all if they will but go and possess it. Why take that of any man, when there are countless millions as good, unoccupied?

8. It is the duty of every man to obtain an inheritance, if he has none, and labor faithfully to improve it, and make it a good inheritance for his posterity; and that his desire be unto it, and to the substance which he shall accumulate, and not to that of his neighbor.

9. And it is not right to seek to purchase, or to tempt anyone to sell that which he needs for himself, or his household. We should rather produce for ourselves or buy that which was produced for the market.

Note on the Decalogue

1. From time immemorial, the Constitution of God's Kingdom has been entitled, "The Decalogue," or the "Ten Commandments." There can be no greater evidence of how poorly the oracles of God have been kept than the fact that among Christian sects, none know what these Commandments are.

2. Protestants read and divide them as follows:

I. Thou shalt have none other gods but me.

II. Thou shalt not make to thyself any graven image, nor the likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or in the earth beneath, or in the waters under the earth. Thou shalt not bow down to them, nor worship them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, and visit the sins of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me; and show mercy unto thousands in them that love me, and keep my commandments.

III. Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain. For the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

IV. Remember that thou keep holy the Sabbath day. Six days shalt thou labor, and do all that thou hast to do; but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God: in it thou shalt do no manner of work, thou, and thy son, and thy daughter, thy manservant, and thy maidservant, thy cattle, and the stranger that is within thy gates. For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the seventh day and hallowed it.

V. Honour thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

VI. Thou shalt do no murder.

VII. Thou shalt not commit adultery.

VIII. Thou shalt not steal.

IX. Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

X Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house; thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his servant, nor his maid, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is his.

–Common Prayer, Catechism

3. The objection to this reading and division is, that the first and second are one and the same Commandment; for the language, "Thou shalt not make unto thyself any graven image, nor the likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or in the earth beneath, or in the waters under the earth; thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor worship them," are but an elaborating of the previous language, "Thou shalt have no other gods before me." The Commandment contained in them is one.

4. As these are one Commandment, and only eight follow after, Protestants have but nine. To conceal this error some theologians have asserted that the first Commandment was contained in the words, "I am the Lord thy God" (*Ex. 20:2. Deut. 5:6*); which are no Commandment, for they are in the affirmative, not the imperative; and are not the substance of what Jesus asserts to be the first Commandment, "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind" (*Matt. 22:37*).

5. These words of Jesus, though not found in the Old Testament, are sometimes used by Protestants as the first Commandment. But the intent of the Commandment evidently is, that we shall bestow divine adoration on God alone; and it therefore as truly includes the interdiction, "Him only shalt thou serve," as the mandate, "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God:" so, if these words are taken for a portion of the first Commandment, the number ten is not supplied. As well might the Sabbath day Commandment be divided so as to make that one Commandment which requires us to work ix days, and another which requires us to sanctify the seventh, day, and still another which interdicts all work on the seventh day (*Ex. 20:8-11, 31:13-17, Deut. 5:12-15*).

6. Roman Catholics divide and read the Commandments as follows:

I. I am the Lord thy God, who brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage. Thou shalt not have strange

gods before me. Thou shalt not make to thyself a graven thing, nor the likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or in the earth beneath, nor of those things that are in the waters under the earth. Thou shalt not adore them, nor serve them.

II. Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain.

III. Remember that thou keep holy the Sabbath day.

IV. Honour thy father and thy mother.

V. Thou shalt not kill.

VI. Thou shalt not commit adultery.

VII. Thou shalt not steal.

VIII. Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour.

IX. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife.

X. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's goods.

—Metropolitan Catholic Directory, 1843, p. 7

7. By this reading, it is evident they have but nine Commandments; for it is certain that the interdict, "Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife," and, "Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's goods," are but an elaboration of the general interdict, "Thou shalt not covet anything that is thy neighbor's."

8. To this, it is sometimes objected that coveting, or desiring, a neighbor's wife, is a different crime from coveting a neighbor's ox, because the ox is property, but the wife is not. It is equally true that by the Law of God, manservants and maidservants are not property. They are all persons, over whom man exercises some sort of dominion, and in whom, by virtue of that dominion, he has some kind of interest, though that interest is not a property.

9. Therefore, if the interdict, "Thou shalt not covet or desire thy neighbor's wife," is a different command from that, "Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's ox," so also is that, "Thou shalt not covet his manservant." But neither is a different Commandment, for this only is contained in all, "Thou shalt not covet anything that is thy neighbor's," whether it is his property, or his dominion.

10. Josephus has also preserved a version of the Commandments, much abbreviated, as follows:

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

I. The first Commandment teaches us that there is but one God, and that we ought to worship him only.

II. The second, commands us not to make the image of any living creature, to worship it.

III. The third, that we must not swear by God in a false manner.

IV. The fourth, that we must keep the seventh day, by resting from all sorts of work.

V. The fifth, that we must honour our parents.

VI. The sixth, that we must abstain from murder.

VII. The seventh, that we must not commit adultery.

VIII. The eighth, that we must not be guilty of theft.

IX. The ninth, that we must not bear false witness.

X. The tenth, that we must not admit of the desire of anything that is another's (Josephus' Ant., B. iii, ch. v, 5).

11. The works of Josephus have been preserved and brought down to us by Christians, who have been so anxious to avail themselves of the testimony of so distinguished a writer that they have made several alterations in his writings, which have materially diminished the value of his testimony on any question depending on verbal accuracy.

12. Among other things, these Commandments must have been tampered with; for, by the first, we are commanded to worship the true God, and "him only." Yet, by the second, we are forbidden to worship "the image of any living creature," which is a tautology; for that would be worshipping another God.

13. And the third Commandment forbids swearing falsely by God; whereas the ninth forbids bearing false witness, which is nearly the same thing; the chief difference being that under the third, any oath except that by God might be broken with impunity.

14. It is possible that the Commandments were in a much mutilated form as early as Josephus' time, though not equal to this. Be that as it may, it is certain that this is not the form in which they were given.

15. For as in this reading, the first and second are one Commandment, and the third and ninth one, there are but eight in all: both that which forbids assuming the name of God in vain, and that requiring us to love our neighbor as ourselves, being wanting.

16. The erasure of the second Commandment must be a post-Christian work, for no Jew could be suspected of attempting to blot out the fact that God was King in Israel; that he had established his own Law there, and called men to govern in his name, and that he will not hold guiltless those who take his name in vain.

17. This lack in the number of the Commandments, and the consequent disingenuousness in dividing them, is the more singular, and evinces so much more the theological blindness of mankind (*Matt. 25:14, Luke 6:39*), from the fact that the lost Commandment is, nevertheless, contained in the Scriptures, both of the Old and New Testament.

18. In the same discourse in which Jesus Christ says, "Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind; this is the first and great Commandment," he also says, "And the second is like unto it; Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself" (*Matt 22: 37-39*). The same language had been used before by Moses (*Lev. 19:18*), though in the present state of the Scriptures, it is not in its proper place among the Commandments (*Ex. 22, Deut. 5*).

19. Thus, though the Bible does not contain above nine Commandments, in a body, in any one place, nor the New Testament above six (*Rom. 13:9*), the ten are substantially contained in them.

20. Had the divine spirit guided and inspired the theologians of Christendom; in the impossibility of making more than nine Commandments, in the reading which they adopted, they would have looked to the words of Christ, "Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself" (*Matt. 22:39, Mark 7:31, Luke 10:27, Rom. 8:9, Gal 5:14, James 2:8*), to supply the lack, as he declared this to be one of the Commandments.

21. The wisdom of men never made the discovery. It was left till the translation of the plates of Laban, by the gift and power of God. But the discovery once made, the Bible of all the sects is our witness.

22. The Commandments, as here given, were translated by the Prophet James, from the plates which were taken by Nephi from Laban, in Jerusalem (*1 Nephi 1*), and brought to America, in the time of Zedekiah, King of Judah; and are the substance of the two tables, written by the finger of God in the days of Moses.

23 Though the exact words of the two tables were never written in any book (*Josephus' Ant. B. iii, ch. v, 4*), except that kept in the most

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

holy place, the substance was carefully written out by the inspired Prophets, and to the paraphrases so prepared, all transcribers of repute made their copies conform.

24. Subsequent to the Babylonian captivity, the Jews were without the Divine Tables and the literal copy of the Law which belonged to the Sanctuary. They had only the copies used by the Prophets. These have long since been lost.

25. The Jews were not fond of allowing their sacred books to pass into the hands of the Gentiles. Jews had become very numerous in Alexandria, and the use of the Greek language among them was so general that vast numbers were unable to read Hebrew before the translation of the Old Testament into that language.

26. Even then, the translation into the Greek language was made at the instance of a powerful and liberal King, Ptolemy Philadelphus, who obtained this favor of the Jews by liberating many of them from captivity, rather than of their own disposition. From the account of Josephus (*Ant. B. xii, ch. ii*), it is doubtful how much of the Sacred Oracles were then translated. But the reasonable inference is that it was so much of the Old Testament as in the tripartite division of Law, Prophets, and Psalms, was called the Law, to wit, the books of Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy, Joshua, Judges, the two books of Samuel, and the two books of Kings.

27. But these are not the "Book of the Law of the Lord," for that was written by Moses, and placed in the Ark of the Testimony in his day (*Deut. 31:24-26*); whereas, many of these books were written subsequently.

28. This tripartite division of the Old Testament was subsequent to the Babylonian captivity, and the name "Law" appears to have been adopted because those books contained numerous recitals and illustrations of the Law, and were a convenient substitute for the book itself, which had become very rare.

29. It is reputed, however, that the genuine "Book of the Law," that is, an authorized paraphrase of it, was actually translated into Greek in the time of Ptolemy Philadelphus; and numerous incredible tales are found on the subject in old Jewish legends, nearly all of which, in a still less credible form, have been preserved by the Christians of the third and fourth centuries, as applicable to the Septuagint Bible.

30. The most credible history of this translation is that contained in the Hebrew preface to the Book of Jasher (*Jasher, p. xvii*), where,

after giving an account of the translation of the other sacred books for Ptolemy Philadelphus, the writer says: "After some time the persecutors of Israel became aware of this, that the Israelites had not sent the Book of the Law to the King, and they came and said unto him, 'O King, the Israelites have treated thee with contempt; for they did not send to thee the Book of the Law, which we had mentioned to thee, but they sent to thee another book, which they had in their hands; therefore send to them that they may forward unto thee the Book of their Law; for from that book thou wilt obtain thy desire, much more than from the book which they have sent to thee.' So when the King heard their words, he became exceedingly wroth against the Israelites, and his anger burned within him until he sent again to them for them to forward to him the Book of the Law. Fearing that they might still continue to scorn him, he acted prudently with them, and sent to seventy of their Elders, and placed them in seventy houses, that each should write the Book of the Law, so that no alteration might be found in it; and the divine spirit rested upon them, and they wrote for him seventy books, and they were all of one version, without addition or diminution. At this the King rejoiced greatly, and he honored the Elders, together with all the Jews; and he sent offerings and gifts to Jerusalem, as it is written there. At his death the Israelites acted cunningly with his son, and took from his treasures the Book of the Law, but left the Book of Jasher there, and took it not away, in order that every future King might know the wonders of the Lord, blessed be his name, and that he had chosen Israel from all nations, and that there is no God beside him."

31. All this carries with it the air of probability, except the assertion that seventy separate translations were made of the entire book, which is doubtless a mere mistake in the relation, by some person over fond of the marvelous. Each translator was assigned his portion or seventieth part of the Law to translate, without communicating with the others; and as the parts, when put together, formed a continuous series or code of laws, the King was satisfied that they had furnished him the genuine Book of the Law; though the translation was not quite as perfect as it might have been, had the seventy been allowed to help each other.

32. But this book, so placed in the Alexandrian Library, it is expressly asserted, was withdrawn from the Library at the end of that reign, and no trace of it is found in the history of the Eastern Continent, at any subsequent period. The anxiety of the Jews to prevent its

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

falling into the hands of the Gentiles was so great as to preclude the multiplication of copies, and in their various persecutions, the few copies in existence were lost. of

33. The tables of stone had never been restored since the Babylonian captivity. Consequently, before the Christian era, the sole evidence of the importance of the Ten Commandments was oral tradition, and such books as incidentally related the substance, without attempting to give the words of them. Had not God preserved them, we should now be without them, as our fathers were, and Christians are.

Chapter 2

The True God

I

On Verses 1-10

1. It is apparent that the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, is not the God of the Christian Churches; either of the Mother Church, or of the generality of the Daughters.

2. The Creed of Saint Athanasius, composed during the reign of the Emperor Constantine, is the most perfect and elaborate statement of the Christian doctrine on that subject in existence, and is adopted by nine-tenths of all Christendom

3. It is as follows:

Whosoever will be saved, before all things it is necessary that he hold the Catholic faith. Which faith, except everyone do keep whole and undefiled, without doubt he shall perish everlastingly.

And the Catholic faith is this: That we worship one God in Trinity, and Trinity in Unity. Neither confounding the Persons, nor dividing the Substance. For there is one Person of the Father, another of the Son, and another of the Holy Ghost. But the Godhead of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, is all one: the Glory equal, the Majesty coeternal.

Such as the Father is, such is the Son; and such is the Holy

Ghost. The Father uncreate, the Son uncreate, and the Holy Ghost uncreate.

The Father incomprehensible, the Son incomprehensible, and the Holy Ghost incomprehensible. The Father eternal, the Son eternal, and the Holy Ghost eternal. And yet they are not three eternal, but one eternal.

As also there are not three incomprehensibles, nor three uncreated; but one uncreated, and one incomprehensible. So likewise the Father is Almighty, the Son Almighty, and the Holy Ghost Almighty. And yet they are not three Almighties, but one Almighty.

So the Father is God, the Son is God, and the Holy Ghost is God. And yet they are not three Gods, but one God. So likewise, the Father is Lord, the Son Lord, and the Holy Ghost Lord. And yet they are not three Lords, but one Lord. For like as we are compelled by the Christian verity, to acknowledge every Person by himself to be God and Lord; so are we forbidden by the Catholic Religion to say, there be three Gods, or three Lords.

The Father is made of none; neither created, nor begotten. The Son is of the Father alone; not made, nor created, but begotten. The Holy Ghost is of the Father and of the Son; neither made, nor created, nor begotten, but proceeding. So there is one Father, not three Fathers; one Son, not three Sons; one Holy Ghost, not three Holy Ghosts.

And in this Trinity none is afore, or after other; none is greater, or less than another; but the whole three Persons are coeternal together, and coequal. So that in all things, as is aforesaid, the Unity in Trinity, and the Trinity in Unity, is to be worshipped.

He therefore that will be saved, must thus think of the Trinity. Furthermore, it is necessary to everlasting salvation, that he also believe rightly the Incarnation of our Lord Jesus Christ. For the right Faith is, that we believe and confess, that our Lord Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is God and Man: God, of the Substance of the Father, begotten before the worlds; and Man, of the Substance of his Mother, born in the world; perfect God, and perfect Man: of a reasonable soul and human flesh subsisting:

Equal to the Father, as touching his Godhead; and inferiour

to the Father, as touching his Manhood. Who, although he be God and Man, yet he is not two, but one Christ; one, not by conversion of the Godhead into flesh, but by taking of the Manhood into God; one altogether, not by confusion of Substance, but by unity of Person. For as the reasonable soul and flesh is one Man, so God and Man is one Christ; who suffered for our salvation; descended into hell, rose again the third day from the dead.

He ascended into heaven; he sitteth on the right hand of the Father. God Almighty; from whence he shall come to judge the quick and the dead. At whose coming all men shall rise again with their bodies, and shall give account for their own works. And they that have done good shall go into life everlasting; and they that have done evil into everlasting fire.

This is the Catholic Faith, which except a man believe faithfully, he cannot be saved. Glory be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost. As it was in the beginning, is now, and ever shall be; world without end. Amen.

4. Among all Christian denominations, except the few small sects known as Unitarians, this creed is substantially, if not literally, subscribed to; the principal departure from it being that the Greek, and a few small Eastern Churches, hold that the Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father only; not the Father and Son.

5. In the Catholic and most of the Protestant Churches, this is the declared Creed; but in those where it is not read, and its existence probably unknown, the same doctrine is set down in some different form of words: thus they all bow down before the same God: but not the God of Patriarchs, Prophets, and Apostles.

6. Among the Articles of Religion, of the Episcopal Churches, are the following:

I. There is but one living and true God, everlasting, without body, parts, or passions; of infinite power, wisdom and goodness; the Maker and Preserver of all things, both visible and invisible. And in unity of this Godhead there be three Persons, of one substance, power, and eternity; the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost.

II. The Son, which is the Word of the Father, begotten from everlasting of the Father, the very and eternal God, and of one substance with the Father, took Man's nature in the womb of

the blessed Virgin, of her substance: so that two whole and perfect Natures, that is to say, the Godhead and Manhood, were joined together in one Person, never to be divided, whereof is one Christ, very God, and very Man; who truly suffered, was crucified, dead, and buried, to reconcile his Father to us, and to be a sacrifice, not only for original guilt, but also for actual sins of men.

V. The Holy Ghost, proceeding from the Father and the Son, is of one substance, majesty, and glory, with the Father and the Son, very and eternal God.

7. The Methodist Articles of Religion are a transcript, with slight variations, from the Episcopal; the chief variation being that in the later editions of the Discipline of the Methodists of America, it is not alleged that God is passionless.

8. Abraham, Isaac and Jacob worshipped no such God. None of the Patriarchs knew him. None of the Prophets gave us his word. None of the Apostles were his witnesses.

9. The God who created Adam had a body, with all its parts; for as truly as Adam, when he begat a son, begat him in his own likeness, after his image (*Gen. 5:3*), so truly God, when he created Adam, made him in the likeness and after the image of God (*Gen. 1:26-27, 5:1, 9:6; 1 Cor. 9:7. Jas. 3:9*).

10. Abraham worshipped the same God; for when God visited him, Abraham at first mistook him for a man; and with genuine Patriarchal hospitality, invited him into the tent to eat, and offered to wash his feet (*Gen. 8*).

11. Jacob also, worshipped the same God; for after wrestling with him, he tells us he saw him face to face (*Gen. 32:24, 28, 30*). Surely the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has a body and parts, face and feet.

12. The God who spoke to Moses from the fire in the bush, and in a voice of thunder in Sinai, gave the Commandments; wrote the Commandments on tables of stone, with his finger (*Deut. 9:10*); conversed with Moses face to face, as a man converses with his friend; (*Ex. 33:11*); passed by, covering Moses with his hand, and allowed him to behold his back parts (*Ex. 32:22-23*). Truly this is not the God without body or parts, which Episcopalians, Methodists, and all other Christians worship.

13. The God of the Prophets and Apostles was in bodily form, with

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

all the appropriate parts, as imaged in his creature for he had man:

Arms (*Jer. 21:5, Job 40:9, Ps. 89:13' Isa. 52:10, Luke 1:51*),

Hands (*Jer. 21:5; Hab. 2:4; Ex. 33:22-23; Acts 6:55-56. 5:31; Rom. 8:34*),

Loins (*Ezek. 1:27, 8:2*),

Feet (*Ezek. 43:7, Hab. 3:5, Gen. 18:4*),

Face (*Gen. 32:30; Ex. 33:11, 23; Num. 14:14; Luke 1:76*),

Eyes (*2 Kings 19:16, Deut. 32:10, Hab. 1:13, Heb 4:13*),

Ears (*2 Kings 19:16. Num. 14:28, 2 Sam. 22:7, Ps. 34:15*),

Nostrils (*Ex. 15:8, 2 Sam. 22:16*),

Mouth (*Isa. 30:2, Lam. 3:38*),

Lips (*Isa. 30:27. Ps. 17:4*),

And tongue (*Isa.30:27*).

14. The appearance of God was the likeness of man, when he appeared to Ezekiel, and called him to the Prophetic office; though he was surrounded with fire and a glorious radiance, from his loins upwards and downwards (*Ezek. 1:26-27*).

15. Their God was stirred up with the passions of

Love (*Deut. 7:8; Jer. 31:3; John 3:16, 27:23; 1 John 4:16; Mal. 1:2; Rom 9:13*),

Jealousy (*Ex. 20:5, 34:14; Deut. 4:24, 5:9, 6:15; Josh. 24:19; Ezek. 32:25; Nah. 1:2; Zech 8:2; 1 Cor. 10:22; 2 Cor. 11:2*),

Anger (*Ps. vi, 1. vii, 11. Isa. xxx, 27. Jer. xxi, 5. Nah. i, 3, 6. Hab. iii, 8, 12*),

Indignation (*Isa. 30:27, Nah. 50:6, Hab. 3:12, Zech. 50:12*),

Wrath (*Jer. 21:5, Nah. 1:2-6, Hab. 3:2-8*),

Hatred (*Jer. 7:8; Hosea 9:15; Mal. 1:3, 2:16; Rom. 9:13, Prov. 6:16; Isa. 61:8*),

Fury (*Jer. 21:5. Nah. 1:2-6*),

And revenge (*Nah. 1:2*).

16. It is sometimes objected, that "God is a spirit" (*John 4:24*). So are Angels "spirits sent forth to minister to them who shall be heirs of salvation" (*Heb. 1:14*): yet when Abraham and Lot saw them they mistook them for men (*Gen. 18:2-5, 16-20, 19:1, 15*), and John the Revelator mistook one for God, and was about to worship him, but

he said, "See thou do it not: for I am thy fellow servant, and of thy brethren the Prophets" (*Rev. 22:8-9*).

17. Those who worship a God without body, parts, or passions do not worship the God of Abraham, of whom Prophets spoke and Apostles bore witness; but an idol—a false god, which their imagination conceives of; and as by their Creed, he is a nonentity, their faith is Atheism.

18. Close upon the tail of this Atheism, follows Polytheism. For as the Creed declares that the Father is Lord God Almighty, uncreate, eternal, and incomprehensible; the Son, Lord God Almighty, uncreate, eternal, and incomprehensible; and the Holy Ghost, Lord God Almighty, uncreate, eternal, and incomprehensible; it is most indisputably the Creed of three gods, notwithstanding the disclaimer, which says they are one God.

19. Thus they worship God the Father, "without body, parts, or passions," and God the Son, begotten by the Father, with "body, flesh, and bones, and all things pertaining to the perfection of man's nature," sitting at the right hand of God, the Father, who has no hand; and God the Holy Ghost, who proceeded from the Father and the Son, who is, nevertheless, eternal, though he could not have proceeded from the Son, until he was begotten; three gods, all unlike; and require men to believe these three, but one, on pain of being damned everlastingly.

20. It is no wonder that those who preach this doctrine declare it a mystery. It is a greater mystery that men have been found to believe it. Well did John the Revelator name the Church in which it originated, "Mystery, Babylon the Great, the Mother of Harlots and abominations of the earth" (*Rev. 17:5*).

21. She was once the Apostolic Church; the Lamb's wife, but when she lost the Apostolic Priesthood, and went off in an unholy union with the Kingdoms of this world as her Lord, she became what the Angel declared her to be, a whore; as all her daughters, prostituting themselves to the various national governments, without ever being lawfully joined to Christ, are only harlots.

22. To make their Creeds as ridiculous as they are infidel; false as they are heathenish; Catholics teach that Christ's mother is the "Mother of God," as though God was begotten by himself, on a creature of his hands, that he might be eternally begotten.

23. And Protestants, not willing that Catholics should monopolize all the folly and all the falsehood, have invented, or borrowed from

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

their mother, the doctrine of an infinite atonement, by means of infinite sufferings in the crucifixion of one of these three gods.

24. And, as by their faith, these three gods are one and the same god, it follows that the Lord God Almighty, uncreate, incomprehensible, and eternal, became a Priest unto himself, and offered himself a sacrifice unto himself, to make propitiation unto himself for sins against himself, and became a mediator between himself and his rebellious creatures; and has risen from the dead, though he alone hath immortality, and ascended on high, where he has received all power from himself, and sat down at his own right hand; where, with his human body, flesh and bones, and all that pertains to the perfection of man's nature, raised to immortality and everlasting life, He "is the express image of the invisible God" (*Col. 1:15, 2 Cor. 4:4*), and the express image of his Father's person" (*Heb. 1:3*). who has not any such body or any part of it, and is nevertheless the same identical person with himself.

25. This is not the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Ye shall not bow down to the God of Babylon, for the God who spoke in Sinai, said, "Thou shalt not bow down unto, nor adore anything that thy imagination conceiveth of; but the Lord thy God only."

26. The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, was not the offspring of adultery; nor was he born of woman; he was not carried about in a nurse's arms, nor dependent on his mother's milk for sustenance; he never died, nor did he cry to himself and find no helper (*Matt. 27:46, Mark 15:34*). Eternal ages are but pulsations in his lifetime, and his might is omnipotence.

II

On Verse 11

1. This incommunicable name is not Jehovah. That is written instead of it. For his secret name was only written in that copy of the Law kept in the Ark of the Testimony. How ridiculous to believe with Christians, that the name of God which Abraham was not permitted to know (*Ex. 6:3*), was written in a published book, for all the Heathen to read. It was never spoken out of the Sanctuary, nor above the breath, and then only between three High Priests, after the order of Melchisedek (*See Josephus' Ant., B. ii, ch. xii, 4*).

Note on the True God

1. During the ages immediately following the apostasy of the Christian Church, when nearly all the world had fallen into a state of barbarism, ignorance and superstition, the knowledge which mankind had formerly possessed was so far lost that the wisest and most learned nations had little left of the natural or moral sciences, or the industrial arts.

2. The civilization of modern times is the emergence of the human race from the barbarism of the Dark Ages. But in this emergence, little new has been developed. The chapter of lost arts is nearly a duplicate of that of modern discoveries and inventions.

3. The few streams of learning which flowed on through that period of barbarism were deep and narrow. A few houses, closed to the gaze of all but their inmates, brought down to modern times much of the old learning.

4. But during the same period, the nations of Europe, and around the Mediterranean, engrafted on their religion all manner of superstition, partaking of the popular ignorance and prejudice.

5. Not only was the keeping of the Oracles of God in the hands of the ignorant and superstitious, who by that means not unfrequently corrupted them, but most of the translations into modern languages were made before the light of the newly developed sciences dispelled those superstitions.

6. As a consequence, nearly all religious knowledge among Christian nations was more or less mixed with the falsehoods which the ignorance and superstition of the preceding ages inculcated.

7. And as the different systems of religion were fixed and unchangeable, bound up by creeds which it was heresy to question, almost every advance in knowledge was opposed by every influence and injury which ignorance and superstition could inflict.

8. The Clergy having the control of Courts and Legislatures, opposed the progress of knowledge by pains and penalties, until religion, designed by the Almighty to be the school of mankind, in which all knowledge should be gained, became the prison house of the lover

of knowledge.

9. Since in a few places of earth, laws have ceased to oppose knowledge, and here and there a benefactor of mankind lives, without the fear of prisons and clanking chains, the superstitious prejudice pursues the friend of man as a shadow, and not unfrequently wreaks on the fame of the dead, the punishment which a virtuous life has scarcely escaped.

10. These are not the worst ills which false religion has inflicted on mankind. The doctrine has been everywhere inculcated that religion is a mere myth; a thing to be believed, to be sure, in some way, but not to be demonstrated as other sciences, and to stand upon its intrinsic merits; that though true in some mysterious sense, its truth is opposed to what is also true in other sciences, and that what is true in religion, may be impossible in natural philosophy.

11. A sound mind revolts against this. If the religious sentiments predominate, it believes on, and shuts its eyes to the voice of nature, wandering in the mazes of metaphysics, and wasting in logomachy the talent, which should have developed valuable ideas.

12. Otherwise, it passes by religion as a thing not to be studied, if believed; rejects the revelations of God's word, as a means of obtaining knowledge; and, perhaps, without denying that God did in some remote time, in some mysterious way, reveal a religion to man; laughs to scorn the fact that he is known to man in modern times, especially in this enlightened age.

13. Among such men, the dogma is universal that the primitive ages of man were ages of barbarism; that civilization originated with man, and was developed in the slow progress of long ages; and that man is the author of the sciences, and the discoverer of the knowledge he possesses.

14. Nothing could be farther from the truth. The history of all the old nations, brings a shadowy knowledge of a civilization earlier than that of the Greeks, the wisdom of which was lost before the days of the earliest author whose works have reached us, though its monuments remain.

15. The golden age was the theme of all the early poets, as its return was the hope of the sages. Without additional confirmation, it was hardly probable that a faith so universal was not founded on true history; notwithstanding, most of its witnesses had disappeared.

16. But recent developments in Archaeology have proved it true. Of the Egyptian Empire, the earliest whose history has been rescued from oblivion, it is now beyond question that at the beginning of its history, its civilization was of the highest order.

17. The classic historians, Herodōtus, Manētho, Eratosthenes, and Diodorus, agree with the monuments and papyri, that Menes was the first sovereign of the Egyptian Empire.

18. His reign is placed by Lepsius at 3,893 years before Christ, or 5,749 years ago; being 1,544 years earlier than the date which Archbishop Usher's Chronology^a erroneously gives to the flood.

19. Yet at that early period, Egypt was a powerful and highly civilized Empire, eminent in the sciences and the industrial arts. The name of Menes is gloriously associated with the building of Memphis, the oldest metropolis, of the origin of which we have any knowledge, with foreign conquests, a high state of the arts, a numerous and wealthy population, and a successful system of internal improvements, such as Holland alone affords a parallel, if indeed she does at the present day.

20. The Nile, an immense river, overflows all the arable land of Egypt, and had to be controlled by dykes and canals, more extensive than those found in America, before the country could sustain any other population than a few wandering herdsmen. For this purpose, hydraulic engineering must have existed in the highest perfection; an immense population must have pressed down the valley of the river for room, and industry, such as is never found among barbarians, must have been the national characteristic of teeming millions.

21. Little of the coetaneous records of that age remains; most of its monuments are deep buried in the sands from the Libyan desert, or removed to construct more modern cities.

22. But, two or three centuries later, when we reach the period of abundant and undoubted contemporaneous monuments, walking no longer in a land of shadows; we read Egyptian history upon monuments of granite and paper of papyrus, in the same language which was written during the reign of all the Pharaohs.

23. Fifty-three centuries ago, sepulchers and pyramids; palaces and temples; highways and canals, such as in this age would cost millions;

18a Archbishop Usher's Chronology is that generally used and found in the margins of most family and pulpit Bibles, though different editors make slight variations from it.

dykes and bridges of immense extent; statuary sixty feet high, and delicate tissue paper; reed pens, and red and black ink, which have not yet faded; chemically prepared paints and varnish, the colors of which are as fresh now as those from the best workshops, laid yesterday; and the preservation of the dead uncorrupted, were among the achievements of Egypt.

24. The present times have no parallel to that. The result of all inquiry is, that the earliest civilization was of the highest order. The theory that it was developed by man, and grew up from the necessities of dense populations through long ages, is giving way. It originated with God, who is the author of all the arts and sciences, and taught them to his creatures.

25. That which lies at the foundation of all civilization, all wisdom, all knowledge, man did not possess by nature; could not invent, and until possessed, could have no desire for; articulate language.

26. Man by nature has no articulate language. Certainly, no fact is clearer than this. The child never speaks words till he hears them. He uses no words but such as are taught to him. He speaks no language, but what he learns from others. If he has no opportunity of learning of others, he never speaks. If he is devoid of the faculty of hearing, he never learns to speak.

27. All the animals, or, at least, all the domestic animals, and many not domesticated, all the superior kinds of animals, and many of the inferior, have a natural language; a language of the passions. This language is uniform with each species. They learn it from none, but possess it by nature. No one of the species is ever without it.

28. The dog barks, howls, growls and whines. Every dog has these powers by nature. The same species of dog has them substantially alike. And he has the whole of these modes of expression, and all the varieties of them, without learning or hearing them from others. There is a peculiarity in the voice of the dog, when he starts the chase, when he snuff's the track, when he spies the game, when he drives him to tree or burrow, and when he triumphs over him or tastes his blood.

29. He has a growl of pleasure, a growl of fondness, a growl of anger, and a growl of defiance. And no dog in the species is destitute of it. None learn it; all possess it. Not only do all possess it, but all possess it just in the characteristic of his race and of his particular family or

breed. Every hunter distinguishes the voice of each different kind of dog, and the particular passion or fact expressed by the voice and intonation of the dog.

30. The dissimilarity and unlikeness between the voice of the hound and the terrier, both used much in hunting, and constantly kenneling together, are very great. Their continual association does not produce any approximation of language or the slightest change in the tone of the voice. It neither adds to nor diminishes from the language of either one intonation.

31. Take the spaniel that has never seen the light, and place him with a hound possessed only of his natural habits, and the spaniel never learns one sound that belonged not to his nature. Place him where he never sees or hears another dog, and he is deficient in none. If you cross the breed, the new race will have a language between the two; approximating to both, like to neither.

32. You can change the language indefinitely by changing the nature, the blood, or race, but none at all by changing the habits or instruction. These remarks are equally true of all the other animals possessed of a voice. Cows all low and bellow, without being taught. Horses all neigh, though they have never heard it. And to their natural knowledge of this language, instruction can add nothing.

33. Man has a natural language of the same kind, rich and prolific in the expression of the passions, but barren in abstractions; partially inactive by neglect, but lost by none, and resorted to as often as men meet who have no common articulate language. From the newborn child to decrepit old age, in every age, in every country, in every clime, and of every race and family of people, there never was one individual that did not possess it.

34. The common expression of this language is in the laugh, the cry, the shout, and the moan, which are the same everywhere. Every child must be taught to speak; none to cry. All have to learn the definition of words. All know what is meant by the laugh. The conqueror speaks of his triumph to men of a strange tongue in vain, but the shout that tells of victory is never misunderstood. The dying man's voice articulates bootless words to those who have not learned them, but the moan and the sigh of broken limbs and crushed hearts was never mistaken. The cry of childish fear and pain is comprehended by all ears. How else could infancy tell its sufferings?

35. No one has an articulate language by nature. If articulate language was natural to man, as is the language of the passions to both man and beast, he would be born with it, which no man is; or all would come to possess a uniform language at some definite stage of existence, which is not found at all; or there would be particular forms of language peculiar to particular races, which there is not; and the language would be changed by crossing the breeds, as among animals.

36. The child knows no word till it has been taught. It will use any sound whatever to express any particular idea, just as the tutor pleases to teach it. The English child, placed in a Dutch family, learns and speaks Dutch as well as a native. The Chinese child, placed in an American family, will not be possessed of one word of the language of his fathers. There is no peculiarity of race which adapts it to one language more than another.

37. There have been, in various countries and in different ages, instances of persons growing up to manhood with all their faculties unimpaired, but so entirely separated from the rest of mankind as to have no opportunity of learning articulate language. And every one of them have been as destitute of it as the beasts of the field. Not many years since a wild boy was found in the swamps of Alabama, who, according to the most plausible conjecture, had been lost at the age of three years. He could not speak one word of any known language. Yet all his natural faculties were decidedly good.

38. Similar examples are of frequent occurrence. Scarcely a year passes, but the newspapers bring us the account of one. And the facts in every case produce the same conclusion; that man by nature has one uniform and universal language of the passions, and that he has no articulate language. So uniform have been the results thus far, that in case a wild man should be found, men would just as much expect to find him able to laugh, moan and cry, as to have two ears and one mouth; and would just as little expect him to speak an articulate language, as to understand the art of painting or sculpture.

39. An eminent example of the natural inability of man to speak is found in Caspar Hausar, of Nuremberg, who was imprisoned from the age of four years to sixteen, during which time he never saw the face or heard the voice of man. He was possessed of natural talent of superior order, yet he could neither speak nor understand one word. But he could cry. That was natural language. He needed none to teach him that.

40. The ancients have recorded several cases of children brought up in utter seclusion, for the purpose of determining what language they would speak; vainly supposing that there was one original language, from which all were derived, and which all the untaught would speak. They spoke none. Why? Simply because they were not taught.

41. As man has never in any known instance been found in possession of an articulate language, and as in millions on millions of cases he is positively known to be destitute of it, the inevitable conclusion is that by nature he has no articulate language. Did he invent it? Could he originate it? Vain thought! There is not an instance known where he has added one articulate sound to the store of words which man possessed at the period of the earliest authentic records.

42. It is hardly conceivable that a man, destitute of language, should know the want of it. Certainly, it is impossible that one who was destitute of all the arts and sciences should see any need of a language, or have any desire to possess one. And it is not by any means conceivable that a people destitute of language should possess arts and sciences.

43. Man untaught is one of the weakest, most dependent, and inefficient of all animals. Other animals, cast off in the early period of their existence, seem very well able to take care of themselves. Man is almost sure to perish. The knowledge which has been made their universal heritage is usually sufficient to provide for all their wants. In man, even under favorable circumstances, it is barely sufficient to preserve life.

44. Is it possible that man, placed in such circumstances, a mere untutored animal of forests, swamps and meadows, more dependent and inefficient in providing the means of subsistence than any domestic animal, should ever have a desire for an articulate language? Or, that, destitute of such a language, he should ever possess any such knowledge of arts and sciences as would make it desirable?

45. But if it was possible for such a being to desire any mode of expression, beyond the mere language of the passions, which all animals possess, could he invent it? Could he invent radical articulations, capable of infinite combination, join them in words, and fix a meaning which each word should express? And, then, could he compel his fellowman to learn his language?

46. If all this has happened to man, we may expect some day to see

a dog on the errand of Cadmus, inventing a language to be spoken by dogs, which shall express ideas, instead of passions; reasonings, instead of impulses; and teaching it to his fellowdogs; and, in regular progress, making letters adapted to writing and printing, for general use in the fraternity of dogs.

47. Unseemly and ridiculous as such an idea is, it is more so of the untaught man than the dog; for, unaided by science, the arts, and instruction, man is less capable of providing a subsistence than a dog; and, therefore, has less means of improvement.

48. Man, without instruction, such as the child would be, if separated from all the human race, never hearing the voice or seeing the face of man to learn from him, is so far removed from anything we are in the habit of seeing or contemplating, that it is difficult for us to conceive of such a being; and should we meet with such a one, it would require an effort to esteem him human.

49. No man could for a moment suspect such a being of a capacity to develop the state of civilization, which now exists in the world, by his unaided effort. No one could suspect him of inventing or making a language, nor would any addition to the number increase their capacity for such a work.

50. From whom did man derive articulate language? Not from any of the animals of the earth. None of them possess it. They all have a language of the passions, as a natural endowment; always enjoyed, never acquired. None have anything beyond it.

51. Man, subject to the same wants, and still more helpless by nature, has also a language of the passions, equally expressive; always enjoyed, never acquired. And superadded thereto he has an articulate language, not by original endowment, but by acquisition; altogether artificial, incomparably superior, and capable of infinite forms of expression.

52. So far it is perfectly clear that he could not originate it, and while entirely destitute of a language, could have no desire to acquire one. It is equally certain that he did not derive it from any existing animal. None possess it.

53. It must have been learned of the superior; from someone to whom it is a positive faculty, not a transitory endowment.

54. Who is that superior? An animal similar to man, but one step above him in the scale of being? He is not found on

earth. Geologists have not found his fossil remains. Antiquarians discover none of the works of his hands. The pale faith of the most marvelous tradition has never named him.

55. Articulate language, the language of ideas, of logic, is the gift of God; by him communicated; revealed by him to man. There is no other teacher in whose school that lesson could have been learned.

56. As this proposition is contrary to the theories most prevalent on the subject, and the demonstration of it makes a full end of the Atheistic controversy, it may not be amiss to pursue the theory of the Atheist to its results, and thus reduce it to an absurdity.

57. No modern pretends that articulate language is a natural endowment. The universal experience is too strongly against it. But it is alleged by those who say there is no God, that it originated with man, and grew up with his necessity.

58. Without attempting to show how man, without one word of articulate language, could make any such progress as to feel the need or appreciate the use of it; ignoring the fact that he has never in any known case originated anything which was not analogous to something he had already witnessed, they have assumed that he could feel the necessity; could appreciate the use, and could invent a thing as unlike anything of which he had any knowledge as articulate language is unlike any natural faculty of man.

59. In attempting to justify this assertion, they have assumed, further, contrary to the principles of every language on earth, that there is some similarity between the sound and signification of words; and, hence, that language originated in the imitation of natural sounds, both of animate and inanimate nature.

60. The universal rule in articulate language is, that the meaning of words is merely arbitrary; entirely independent of the sound, and determined merely by usage; and, consequently, that any word might mean a very different thing from what it does, with the most perfect propriety, if it was only so used.

61. Contrary to this universal rule of language, these infidel theorists allege that the beginning of articulate language was in the imitation of such familiar sounds as the voices of domestic animals, the sound of thunder, wind, and various things in inanimate nature, from which it has gradually progressed to the present state.

62. It is sufficient answer to all this that not one of all those sounds

has become a word in any spoken language under heaven. More than that, we do not use one of those sounds in naming the sound itself, or the thing which produces it, or in expressing any idea concerning it; and if we should repeat it, it would not express any idea whatever, in any spoken language under heaven.

63. None of the sounds in nature are articulate; therefore, an articulate sound could not be derived from them. We write baàà, or mààà for the voice of a sheep; not because the spoken word is like the voice of the sheep; for it is not, If it was, we should have but one word for the one sound. The only point of resemblance is a long-drawn sound, slightly resembling the continued repetition of short à. There is not the slightest approach to any consonant sound. Consequently, we may substitute any other consonant for the b, or m, and the resemblance to the voice of a sheep will be just precisely the same.

64. In like manner, we write bðöð, lööö, and woöo, for the voice of a cow; changing the consonant freely, and the failure to make the true sound is precisely equal in every form, because the voice of the cow is not an articulation, and does not resemble one. The only approach to likeness is in a long-drawn sound, bearing a very slight resemblance to the constant repetition of long and close, as in move. There is not the slightest approach to any consonant sound whatever.

65. Similar is the case of every animal whose voice man has attempted to imitate. Not one of them has been found to articulate a single letter. Not one of them has made the slightest approach to a consonant sound. Not one has ever enunciated a vowel, or any sound that could possibly be mistaken for one.

66. As there are no articulate sounds in nature, either in the voices of men, animals, or inanimate nature, man could not get the idea of them from any of those sounds, or learn them by imitating those.

67. No sound in nature is the representative of an idea, nor is any combination of the natural sounds. The voices of animals are the representatives of passions, of feelings, but not ideas; and as such are a universal language, everywhere understood, nowhere learned; but the sounds in inanimate nature do not come up to that; they represent neither ideas nor feelings.

68. Therefore, in those cases where articulate language approaches nearest to the sounds heard in nature, there is not the slightest similarity in sense. For instance, the voice of a sheep, which makes

some slight approach to ààà, or a rapid repetition of short à, is used with slight variations in every feeling that the voice of a sheep can express; whether of pleasure, or pain; joy, or sorrow; love, or hate; triumph, or despair.

69. Yet it would be difficult to find a single instance in any language of the idea of the same passion or feeling, represented by that articulate sound. The same is true of every voice of any known domestic animal.

70. The celebrated Lindley Murray has pursued the subject of sounds corresponding with sense until he has exhausted it. Nothing can be added to the result of his labors, beyond additional examples on the same points, which he has fully illustrated (*English Reader, Part ii, ch. i*).

71. And the result of his labors is, that any words whatever, without reference to the articulate sounds of which they are formed, duly arranged in verse, with the proper succession of long and short syllables, may be so read as in some few studied cases, to produce a similarity, in a single point between the sound of the spoken sentence, and some one idea contained in it. He does not get one step beyond this.

72. In the couplet, “When Ajax strives some rock’s vast weight to throw, The line too labors, and the words move slow,” there is not one articulate sound which would not be perfectly appropriate in expressing any other sense, no matter how different. The author, by a skillful selection of long syllables, has put it in the power of the reader to make the sound correspond with the single idea of a slow-moving force.

73. In other words, if the idea is of a powerful and slow effort, the reader, by speaking with a strong breath and full voice, slowly, deliberately, and with emphasis, a succession of long syllables appears to tax his strength, much as the gigantic Ajax did in lifting a heavy rock. And this is the extent of that similarity of sense and sound, out of which men of learning construct their theory of a human origin and progressive development of articulate language.

74. The following is the exact opposite: “Not so when swift Camilla scours the plain, Flies o’er th’ unbending corn, and skims along the main.” Here a skilful combination of short syllables, which the variety of English synonyms puts in the reach of the author, enables the reader to make the sound correspond with the single idea of swiftness.

75. Pursuing the skillful selections of Mr. Murray, we find the following example of a noisy stanza to express the idea of certain work, attended with great noise: "Loud sounds the axe, redoubling strokes on strokes; On all sides round the forest hurls her oaks Headlong. Deep echoing groan the thickets brown; Then rattling, crackling, crashing, thunder down." In this example, the sole similarity of sound to sense consists in the use of words spoken with a full, quick sound. So far from there being a real likeness in our sounds and the ideas expressed by them, it is evidence of ability and skill in a writer to so combine his words as to produce some trifling resemblance. Should anyone say, "in cutting down the oak trees the repeated blows of the axe make a great noise, and in the fall there is a very noisy cracking and crashing of limbs and old dry brush and bushes, with a noise like a clap of thunder when the tree strikes the ground," he would, by the use of different words, express the same idea perfectly, without any similarity of sound and sense.

76. Without pursuing these examples further, it is sufficient to say that there is no possible similarity between sounds and the great mass of ideas, which language is used to express.

77. Sound can have no similarity to a color; none to a form. It is not possible that any sound should bear the slightest resemblance to an idea, a reason, a logical sequence, an abstract thought, a ratiocination of the mind; those things which spoken language is chiefly used to express.

78. There is no likeness whatever in the ideas expressed by the words virtue, vice, good, evil, faith, wisdom, folly, logic, reason, sense, seriousness, and the sounds of the words; and the words might be exchanged indifferently, one for another, without in any sense impairing the language, or the facility of learning it, so the change was generally adopted.

79. Articulate language is, therefore, an endowment of man; not possessed by nature, which he could not derive from anything in inanimate nature, or any of the animals below him in the scale of being; and which he could not originate, nor, until he was possessed of it, wish to enjoy.

80. In fine, he must have been instructed in it by a being possessed of a high degree of intelligence, of boundless beneficence and charity to man, to whom it is as much a natural

endowment as laughing and crying is to man, or singing to a bird. He must have learned it of just such a being as God has revealed himself, and as he is shown in all his works. Had there been no God, or had he never revealed himself and become our teacher, man could never have possessed any other language than that of the passions.

81. The oft-repeated assertion that language is progressive, is not proved. It is mutative, undergoing perpetual changes, but there is no evidence that on the whole it gains anything in the progress of change. All the sciences, with their new wants arising from year to year, find their vocabularies in the ancient languages; and the languages the most unlike, have derived their words from common roots. And if the old languages seem barren to us, we have no assurance that we possess half their words, or know well the use of them.

82. Moreover, man is not formed by nature especially for articulate language. The parrot, the crow, and several other birds, learn to speak words with less difficulty than the infant; though they fail of the intellectual strength to put them to much use.

83. Man, on the other hand, has not a compass of voice sufficient to answer his wants, and frequently finds it difficult or impossible to articulate words which his intelligence develops the want of. There are numerous words, in every language, which most men learn to speak with difficulty, and some not at all; but there is no sound in the natural language of all animated nature, but every individual of each species can enunciate, without even the trouble of learning it.

84. Truth will invariably sustain itself against error, in the long race of time; it is only because it is incessantly opposed by new errors, springing up from day to day, that it receives so little credence. All the battlefields of truth have to be newly fought from generation to generation. Every exploded attack of infidelity on revealed truth is renewed as often as men rise up who do not remember it.

85. Testing the existence of God, and the fact of revelations from him as the great facts in the natural sciences, are most of them tested and proved, and no room is left for doubt.

86. Geography, natural and political, is proved by the testimony of men. Yet its leading facts are undoubted. There probably may not be a man in the United States who has seen the city of Tombuctoo, the Chinese wall, or the sea of Aral. Who doubts their existence? Only the idiotic. What has produced such universal credence to facts

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

that none of us know? Simple human testimony. The words of men who have seen them, and their words by hearsay, second, third, and fourth-handed.

87. And this testimony has not been by any means uniform. All who had the means of knowing agree in the main point, the existence of those objects, however much they disagree in the details concerning them. Consequently, all men, except the merely insane, believe their testimony that such places really exist, but disagree according to the several witnesses in their characteristics.

88. The same is true in all the sciences. The facts are picked up here and there, by men of all classes, in every situation and circumstance in life. The statements of many of the witnesses may be anything but reliable; but in the constant accumulation of testimony, after a time, the truth rises, prominent above all error, and justifies itself before the world.

89. Often the facts are ever present, or at least within our reach, so as to be subject to present experiment, and satisfactory tests. In such cases the triumph of truth is prompt. Ignorance and prejudice take immediate flight.

90. In others the facts are not in our immediate reach, or at best are accumulated in long years of tiresome labor. In the ordinary course of human affairs, they would scarcely be accumulated in sufficient quantities to lead to any result. Some great scholar, or society of philosophers, gather them with tireless pains from the ends of the earth, or the old records of forgotten ages, and the truth is vindicated.

91. If, as in Geology, they can be had by looking for, public interest and a spirit of inquiry will explore mines, trace the tunnels and cuts which engineers have opened through mountains, gather rocks from cleft hillsides, and learn wisdom and divine truth where the door only wasted his strength, and spoiled his utensils on rocks and uncongenial soil.

92. Or, in Astronomy, the stargazer has, perhaps, noted a fact, not as possessing any consequence of itself, but merely as a phenomenon; a something he could not account for, and had not before witnessed. He cannot repeat it for examination. Perhaps centuries may elapse before it occurs again.

93. Through long ages, the facts accumulate. At the same time many falsehoods are recorded as facts. They also accumulate. When

enough is accumulated, some giant mind seizes them. As with a magician's wand, he brushes the scales from all eyes. Truth stands revealed.

94. In these cases, there can be no experiment; no putting theories to the test. They experiment themselves and test themselves in the revolutions of time. Man has only to see when the universe reveals herself. He cannot question her.

95. So it is in the knowledge of God. He speaks to man when he will; nor does he respond to presumptuous questioning. The fools, who have said in their hearts there is no God, have no claim upon his charity, that he should walk with those who regard him as vanity, and nothing.

96. But, though like eclipses, and the conjunctions of planets, he does not appear to every questioner, to demonstrate his being to ignorant doubters; like them, he is never without witnesses; and like them, the testimony is ever present to the wise.

97. To an Astronomer, an eclipse a hundred ages past is as certain, and its precise time and appearance as accurately ascertained, as that of yesterday, which he witnessed; and his faith in that which shall occur ten thousand years hence is as steadfast as it can be in the sunrise of tomorrow.

98. So is the faith of the righteous, that God is. That man could never have had a language, except God taught him, is already shown. Consequently, he must have visited man's abode and conversed with him. This necessary sequence is a proved fact: proved by just such testimony as has established the primary facts in all the sciences.

99. God has been seen of men. This fact has been proved by the testimony of men of every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, under the whole heavens, from the days of Adam down till this present time.

100. Neither savage tribe nor enlightened republic has refused its testimony to this great fact. The King upon his throne, the Priest at the altar, the Philosopher in his cabinet, the Reformer in the public assembly, the peasant by his fireside, and the captive in the dungeon, have each and all contributed their share of testimony that God is; which, if written, would crowd libraries, such as great Kings are proud of.

101. Notwithstanding the trifling disagreements found in human testimony on all subjects, all nations of men have agreed in the great

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

leading facts of their testimony; that besides the grosser bodies, ever visible around us, there is another, a more volatile world of animate existence, generally invisible, composed of myriads of persons, of greater or less power, some good and some evil, the greatest and best of whom is God, the Lord.

102. The Mosaic account is anything but without witnesses in the premises. Nor is it supported alone by the Jewish Prophets. The Egyptians, Chinese, Chaldeans, Hindoos, Phœnecians, Greeks, Romans, Scythians, Germans, Britons and Gauls; all the ancient world; had men standing among them, of all ranks, from the King on his throne to the peasant in the hovel, who testified that they saw God, and conversed with him.

103. The modern Chinese, Hindus, Persians, Turks, Greeks, Egyptians, Italians, Germans, French, Britons and Scandinavians all have men among them, men of learning and of good report, at this present day, who assert that they have seen God, or some of the myriads of spirits in subjection to him, and in rebellion against him.

104. Among the savage nations of America, Africa, Asia and the islands of the Indian and Pacific Oceans, not one people is found where similar testimony is not furnished, from generation to generation.

105. Is this testimony true? Can it be false? Have men in all the ancient nations from China to the Pillars of Hercules, and of all ranks from the king to the beggar, and of all characters from the philosopher to the dunce, with all their national divisions and animosities, conspired together to impose a lie on their fellowmen? And have men of every faith, of every nation, and of every age, from Abraham till James, made their whole lives one living lie, for the purpose of palming off such an imposition on their brothers, their sisters, their wives, and their children?

106. And in such a cause, with scarcely a point of unity but this, and ten thousand points of diversity, many of which have drenched the earth in blood, have such men traversed earth and sea to find fellow conspirators, in the unknown isles, which the covetousness of commerce, and the rapacity of conquest, never discovered?

107. Have sages, philosophers, and statesmen, joined hands with jugglers, impostors, and frightened fools, to impose bootless lies on posterity and friends, as well as strangers? And is there no truth in man, that when those nearest and dearest to them offered their lives

in blood and fire to such a faith, none of these have confessed the imposture, to save a father, a brother, or a child?

108. In all else, the united testimony of those who have studied the facts, is deemed sufficient and satisfactory proof. The facts of Geology, the facts of Astronomy, the facts of Chemistry, the facts of Botany, the facts of Zöology, are all proved by testimony like this in kind, less in accumulation. And upon facts so proved are based the principles of those sciences. The facts were thus determined. And the principles are but deductions from them.

109. The existence of God, the Lord of the universe, a being of intelligence, motive, and will, is proved by more testimony than that of Julius Cæsar. And a world of spirits is proved by more living witnesses, and has been in every generation of men, than can or ever could be adduced to prove the existence of one half the species of living animals on the earth.

110. Enter into the closet of your friends' hearts, open the door that shame and the fear of being called superstitious has shut, induce men to speak to you as they commune with their own hearts, and how many will you find, who have never beheld the spiritual? How many who have never been spoken to by the invisible? How many who have never been led by the intangible?

111. The world is now a vast crowd of living witnesses of the spiritual, shamed down to silence by the Atheistically doctrines of modern Christianity. This truth is a spring that can never be dried up.

112. A generation shall yet arise who, taking facts as they find them, will make religion a science, studied by as exact rules as mathematics. Then will these facts be sought for as are new discoveries in Geology and Astronomy. Facts well attested will be generalized. Rules be drawn from them. Man's prejudices will cease to minister to his blindness. The mouth of the Seer will be opened, and the whole earth enlightened.

113. In the transmission of testimony from generation to generation, it is by many supposed to lose much of its credibility. But this is not true, where it is supported by proper monuments.

114. When a religion has been built up, a new Law, sacrament, or ordinance, engrafted on an existing institution, or any public monument, erected in pursuance of a particular revelation of God, it is evidence to all succeeding generations, that at the time of the event, the testimony of it was believed by those who had the best means of

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

knowing whether it was true or false, and were most interested in the truth.

115. For instance, the appearance of God to Moses, and to all Israel, in Sinai, could not have been an original falsehood written by Moses, for if the events did not occur as written, all Israel would have cried out against palming the deception on their children.

116. Nor could it have been subsequently forged, for the Law then instituted was its monument. All the people would have cried out, we received no such Law from our ancestors. They left us no such history. National or great public events cannot be forged in history. Facts in which multitudes are interested may be distorted, but they cannot be created.

117. That God has been seen by, and has conversed with men, is the best proved fact in history, whether tested by historic testimony, or by induction. These testimonies remain forever, to confound the unbelieving. But to us, he has given the inspiration of his Spirit, and the sure word of prophecy; a perpetual and ever-present witness.

Chapter 3

Oaths

I

On Verse 1

1. It is imagined by some that Christ abolished the oath in saying, "Swear not at all. (*Matt. 5:34*). There is a slight error in the translation of his words into English, but not enough to conceal the true intent, to wit: that they should not swear by the less, but only by the greater (*Matt. 5:35, 36*).
2. Of the legality of oaths, under the dispensation of Christ, an eminent example is found in the Angel, who "swear by him that liveth forever, that there should be time no longer" (*Rev. 10:6*).
3. And in the dispensation of the final gathering and holiness of Israel, God will exact of all men to swear by his name (*Isa. 65:16, Jer. 7:16*). In the very discourse in which it has been supposed that

oaths were abolished, Jesus said, “Think not I am come to destroy the Law” (*Matt. 5:17*). Yet that was the Law which required these oaths.

II

On Verses 2-3

1. It is profaning the name of God to swear vain oaths, such as are not appointed in the Law, or are not necessary to justice. The oath was appointed of God for great occasions, and not to be made a light thing of by familiar use.

2. In the conversations and communications of men, let your communication be yes, and no; for he that is not worthy of credit in these, is more to be suspected of falsehood when he swears. Profanity will not prevent falsehood.

3. Nor should Judges and Rulers, and those set in authority, exact an oath in all cases of controversy among men. The habit of always swearing a witness in all cases of litigation about little trifles tends to destroy the sacredness of the oath by making it too common and encourages perjury.

4. Be not too ready, after asserting anything with ever so much sincerity, to swear to it. Men are sometimes mistaken when very sure. A word should be spoken on oath only with much deliberation and thoughtfulness. Otherwise, it ceases to be the end of controversy. Great readiness to swear without due deliberation would reduce the oath of the swearer to another man's yes, and no, or below it.

5. The practice of swearing by the name of God, or of any holy person, or of any false god, or of any man, or place, or thing, or by any name, word, or place whatever, in our conversations, or in anger, is to be reprehended and punished as a gross violation of this Law.

6. And all those modes of speaking which approach to, and resemble profane swearing, should be avoided; and if anyone, after admonition, persists in them, he should be punished.

III

On Verse 4

1. It is the duty of a Judge to use the most careful discretion in requiring an oath of a party or witness before him. If a witness is under reasonable suspicion of willful falsehood, an oath will seldom relieve it. If he is not corrupt, the truth can generally be got out of him without it.

2. The principal use of the oath is to bind one for an act long in the future; and to be of any value for that purpose, it should only be resorted to on great occasions, and with much deliberation.

3. In covenants between parties, it is proper only in cases where, for some reason, the Law would scarcely afford a remedy for the breach of the covenant, or there is no sufficient authority to enforce it.

4. So between a Prince, or Ruler, or Master and his servants, it is right to take an oath of a Steward, for the substance of another is in his hand, and no one knows what he does with it. And if a promise be made to a servant, by a great man, of some great favor, he may confirm it with an oath.

IV

On Verses 5-7

1. There is, perhaps, no more difficult question in moral philosophy than that arising out of this class of oaths. The discussion of it for near three centuries has failed of any satisfactory result.

2. One of the chief accusations of the Protestants against the Roman Catholics was that the Romish Priests, or some of the higher of them, exercised the prerogative of absolving Christians from their oaths.

3. This question had most consequence during the political struggles between Protestants and Romanists in Europe, which continued for three centuries, and during which the Pope not unfrequently absolved nations from their oaths of allegiance to Protestant Princes.

4. The same power had frequently before been exercised against Princes who were not sufficiently subservient to the Pope, though of the Roman Catholic religion. Indeed, it is not improbable that the dread of that power, more than anything else, induced several Princes to encourage the reformation.

5. So terrible had this power become in the hands of the Popes, that by means of absolution^a and interdic^b the Pope, by a simple writing from the Vatican, could drag a powerful Potentate down from his throne, and the meanest of his subjects would refuse him homage. Not unfrequently by the exercise of these prerogatives, renowned Princes had been brought on their knees before the Pope, to kiss his feet, and beg restoration to favor.

6. Protestants maintained that such acts by Popes, Bishops, or Priests were a mere license to commit perjury, and that the oaths of allegiance were, nevertheless, binding, and no power on earth could absolve the subject from his oath of allegiance to his Prince.

7. But in the progress of the reformation, it not unfrequently happened that Protestants found themselves bound by oath of allegiance to Princes of the Roman Catholic religion; Princes whom they deemed it their duty to God to oppose in arms.

8. They did not stand upon the obligations of the oath. The better sort of men, perhaps, in some way, persuaded themselves that the oath was not pleasing to God, and on the whole ought not to be kept, and so took to themselves a dispensation to violate it

9. Taking example from them, worse men assume to disregard any oath they wish to be rid of, as often as they can do so without fear of punishment.

10. If it was dangerous to trust the dispensation of oaths, under circumstances when the propriety of keeping them was exceedingly doubtful, to the leaders, instructors, and pastors of the people, how much more dangerous to trust the same powers to the mass of the people, with all their temptations, to depart from obligations, voluntarily assumed, but which they no longer wished to keep.

11. This was the opening of a floodgate of crime, which Protestants have never been able to close. And a horrible comment it is on their

5aAbsolution extended not only to pardon of sins, but to releasing from oaths, obligations, or allegiance.

b By the Pope's indult, public worship ceases, the churches are closed, the sacraments cannot be administered, nor the dead buried. There can be neither marriage nor baptism, or any religious act, till the interdict is withdrawn.

affected indignation at the Roman Catholic Priests, for dispensing the obligations of an oath.

12. In the English and German revolutions of the last three centuries, as well as in the American Revolution, whole nations of Protestants trampled on their oaths of allegiance and sundered them as ropes of sand. Indeed, latterly, revolutions seem to have been entered on just as lightly, and upon just as small causes as though subjects were not bound by an oath.

13. If the mischief ended here, there would be hope for those nations which dispense with the administration of the oath of allegiance. But the doctrine once set on foot that a man may simply throw off the obligation of an oath, because he thinks it ought not to have been taken, has almost destroyed the force of all oaths.

14. The practice of the Protestants is grossly contrary to the Bible, as they read it. In the ambiguous statement of the Law (*Lev. 5:4*), whatever else may be in the dark, it appears that "if a soul swear to do good, or to do evil, and it be hid from him, when he knoweth it, he shall be guilty." That is, if, in the result, the oath unexpectedly requires a sinful act, he shall be guilty, whether he keeps or breaks it.

15. Further, the Law is not clearly set out, but it requires him to confess, and to make a trespass offering, and the Priest shall make an atonement for him, and he shall be forgiven.

16. This much is, therefore, clear; that a man cannot, of right, put off and break such an oath; and that those who are unfortunately involved in it, must submit themselves to the Priesthood of God.

17. An eminent case in point is that of Jephthah, Judge of Israel, who, when he went out to battle against the Ammonites, vowed unto the Lord that if he would deliver them into his hands, he would make a burnt offering of whatsoever first met him, as he returned home in peace.

18. He did not know what would first meet him. Therefore, what the oath required was unknown. He won a great victory, but as he returned home, his daughter, his only child, met him. Yet Jephthah dared not to break his vow^a (*Jud. 11:30-37*).

18a Jephthah's daughter was not slain and burnt. As she was not a lawful sacrifice, she was valued by the Priest according to the Law (Lev. 27:1-7), and a sacrifice was made instead. But as she was devoted, she could not be redeemed (Lev. 27: 28-33); therefore, she was given to the service of the Tabernacle as a Nazarite all her life. For this reason, it is not said that she or her companions lamented or bewailed her death, but her virginity (Jud. 11:37-40). She could not be given in marriage; a very great misfortune in Israel, and this is what she and her companions bewailed.

19. A still stronger case is that of the Gibeonites (*Josh. 9*) who, by lies and false pretenses, obtained a covenant of the Princes of Israel to let them live.

20. The Law of God forbade Israel to make any league or covenant with the people of the country; and by the deep guile of the Gibeonites, they were induced to violate this Law. Yet God held them and their children bound by the oath, throughout all generations.

21. For when Saul, King of Israel, slew some of the Gibeonites, in violation of that oath, God punished Israel, at whose instance he did it, with three years' famine, until the posterity of Saul were given up to be destroyed; the most conclusive evidence that in the judgment of God the oath was binding on the nation, though the taking it was sinful.

22. Had the Gibeonites and the Princes of Israel both understood that the oath was unlawful and unlawfully obtained, it seems that it would have been void.

23. But it would be wrong that the Princes should excuse the breach of an oath made in favor of strangers by saying it was contrary to the Law of Israel, which the stranger might be quite ignorant of.

24. Nor could they excuse themselves because the Gibeonites had deceived them, for that would present a temptation to all men, after receiving the benefit of a covenant, to seek some pretense for casting off the obligation. Deliberation should go before the oath, but, as far as possible, that should be the end of strife.

25. These cases and Commandments make a strong rule against the doctrine and practice of Protestants. Still, the rule of the Romanists is inadmissible. For it is not to be endured that there should be any power within the State which can step between sovereign and subject, and absolve one from his obligation to the other.

26. Among a people who truly believe their religion, and will not profane their oaths, such a rule would at once transfer the real sovereignty to the Priests, to whom the power of absolution belonged.

27. If the Priest may absolve a citizen and give him a dispensation to violate any oath, which, as a citizen or subject, he is bound by, the State has lost its power over him and can bind him by no obligation; it depends on the Priest alone.

28. If he may absolve the Prince, the subject can have no guarantee that what the Prince has sworn to at his coronation, he will perform

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

in his reign. The Priest, in becoming the conscience keeper, becomes the common ruler of the Prince and the people.

29. This was doubtless the intention of the Law of Moses. Under that Law, officers of the Church were all officers of the State; for State and Church were one institution. And the delicate question of the obligation of oaths, not proper of themselves, but when the impropriety was unintended, was reserved to the men raised up of God as leaders and pastors of the people.

V

On Verses 8-10

1. Wives, children, and servants, being subject to an authority which may control their actions, cannot always perform what they may have sworn. Hence, the husband, the father, or the master, is made liable for all the consequences, if permitting them to take the oath, he will not allow them to perform it.

2. But some oaths he cannot disallow. If a higher authority interposes rightfully, they must yield to it, and that authority will shield them and will be their avenger.

3. Those who are thus subject to the control of another ought to be very careful not to incur any obligation which they may not be allowed to perform, without permission so to do, except upon very grave cause.

4. It is their duty, also, after incurring the obligation, to seek diligently to perform it. Though the husband, father, or master may interpose to prevent the keeping of the oath, they cannot appeal to him to shield them from their voluntary obligations. On the other hand, they are bound to seek his permission, to do what they have sworn. For so sacred is the obligation of an oath, that to seek a pretense for drawing back from it is a violation of its intent and purpose.

Chapter 4

Benedictions

I

1. If blessings were only an expression of the goodwill and wishes of him who pronounced them, more appropriate forms of language could be found, and forms which would not seem to trifle with the name and power of God, Angels, and Saints.

2. Jacob pronounced blessings on his sons, and the sons of Joseph, whom he adopted (*Gen. 48:15-22, 49:1-27*), because he had power from God to bless, and the blessing should come. Laban and Bethuel blessed Rebecca when they gave her in marriage to Isaac (*Gen. 24:60*), and the blessing was with her. Melchisedek blessed Abraham (*Gen. 14:19*).

3. But blessings are not limited to occasions of so great consequence as these. It is our duty to bless, rather than curse; ever to bless all but the impenitent, who love iniquity.

4. While we should only curse, as a mere duty, those justly condemned, for whose repentance there is no hope, it should be our pleasure ever to bless, and to honor those from whom blessings flow.

5. The ancient Saints blessed in their salutations, in their greetings, and in their feastings. In consequence of this practice, John gave a commandment that no one should bid the schematics, who came among them, God speed (*2 John 10*), which was a very wholesome commandment, not to be forgotten in these days; for he that blesseth such, is partaker of their evil deeds (*2 John 11*).

6. The proper manner of the Saints, is, therefore, when they meet those who are entitled to blessings from them, instead of the ordinary salutations in use among different people, to salute them with blessings in the name of God, Saints, or Angels.

7. These salutations ought to be adopted on occasions of meeting and separating, and ought to be practiced neither in levity, nor in a gloomy and misanthropic mood; but in cheerfulness and hearty

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

good will, which tends to blessings and happiness.

8. Parents should be an example in these things to their children, and Elders to all the people. The effect of the general adoption of this manner would be to put an end to most of the difficulties which occur among neighbors, and to smooth down the asperities of human life. In short, if the Saints bless with all their hearts, the blessing will not fail.

9. The less cannot bless the greater (*Heb. 7:7*). But whom you cannot bless, them honor with becoming reverence, as the Stewards of God, appointed to minister unto you.

Chapter 5

Maledictions

I

1. So general and widespread is wickedness among men, that while the salutations so common among the Saints of the former days, "Peace be with you," "God speed you," and various others, are nearly forgotten, cursing and swearing, then rarely heard, have become features in conversation.

2. Thus, the whole order of God in this respect, as in many others, is reversed. Cursing has become the practice and blessing the exception. It is not singular that the curse has come, after being so oft invoked.

3. The whole practice of mixing up cursings in conversation is an offence to God and to all the Saints, and is a fruitful source of divers mischiefs.

4. Maledictions should only be invoked on such as, on deliberate and candid thought, are found condemned to them by the Law of God; and then the curse should be invoked as in the presence of God, the searcher of hearts; conscious that whosoever curses in the bitterness of his own corrupt heart, and not in the light of God's truth, the curse will return upon him.

5. The different occasions of cursing are marked by different

modes. When hospitality is refused to the ambassadors of the Gospel, by the instruction of Jesus, they wash their feet, or wipe the dust from them, as a testimony against the house or city in which they have been refused food and rest (*Matt. 10:14; Acts 13:51, 18:6; Mark 6:11; Luke 4:5, 10:10-11*).

6. Maledictions are also pronounced on heretics, schismatics, and those guilty of gross and abominable immoralities, and acts of great cruelty and wickedness. For this purpose, not unfrequently the Prophets, Apostles, and Bishops, pronounce the maledictions, and the whole body of the people say: Amen (*1 Cor. 5:5. 1st Tim. 1:20. Mal. 4:6*).

Chapter 6

Prayer

I

1. A great mistake prevails in regard to the proper occasions of prayer. Many pray at certain appointed times every day, or every week, without regard to the occasion, and think attention to it with perfect regularity a most important duty.

2. With such, prayer becomes a parrot-like repetition of words, and tends more to hypocrisy than communion with God

3. Man ought always to give thanks when he has abundance; always to pray, when in unprovided want.

4. But his wants are not the occasion of prayer, if he is able to put forth his hand and supply them. Rather, should he help himself, and then give thanks that abundance was bestowed, so that he had but to reach forth his hand and enjoy.

5. How much annoyance do children often make, continually asking for that which, perhaps, has already been refused them, or is being prepared with all possible expedition, or possibly is ready and waiting to be taken by them.

6. Like this is the conduct of the children of our heavenly Father, who continually importune, year after year, for what God has never

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

found them worthy to receive, or what he is preparing for them, or has already bestowed upon them in abundance.

7. The Lord Jesus, in his day, taught his Disciples to pray, "Give us this day our daily bread" (*Matt. 6:11*), because he had taken them from the business at which they labored, and sent them out preaching without purse or scrip.

8. But that instruction is no reason why he should pray, "Give us this day our daily bread," who has bread for himself and all in his house for a whole year, and a like abundance for all other wants. Such a one should give thanks for what God has bestowed upon him, and, perhaps, pray God to inspire him with meekness and charity to so use it that it shall be a blessing, and not a condemnation.

9. Not only do thousands pray for what is already supplied to them in abundance without the asking but also mistake the direction of their petitions; asking of God what they have only to ask their neighbors or their rulers for.

Chapter 7

Thanksgiving

I

1. There is a natural buoyancy of spirits in the constitution of man, which will not live down to the demands of misanthropy. It is the native thankfulness of the heart, for blessings bestowed, favors conferred, and happiness enjoyed.

2. In that false system of religion, which condemns all the pleasures of life as sinful, and enjoins on us the self-infliction of gloom, pain, and misery in this life, as the price of happiness in another, this natural thankfulness is condemned as sinful.

3. Give it a voice, and it will speak the praises of God; motion, and it will act the gratitude of the heart, inspired with an afflatus from the heart of the Redeemer of men.

4. In the Jewish Church, singing, instrumental music, feasting,

and dancing were all used in praising God. But it is worthy of remark that they used them or not, according to the extent of their blessings or calamities (*Ps. 137:4*).

5. While in Egyptian bondage, they had no national feasts, but on the destruction of the firstborn of Egypt, the feast of the Passover was instituted (*Ex. 7:3-10*).

6. On different occasions, new feasts, sacrifices, and dances were instituted, and new psalms and songs composed for their various thanksgivings; both national, sectional, and individual.

7. The use of all these modes of praising God and giving thanks to Him prevailed among them and were anticipated in the Church of the latter days. They were regarded as most acceptable forms of worship (*Ps. 144, 15*).

8. Dancing and instrumental music should, therefore, be regarded as forms of religious worship, acceptable to God, when done to His praise and the magnifying of his name.

9. And though it may not be positively sinful to join in a dance which was not instituted to the praise of God; yet, as tending to an unprofitable mixing with unbelievers, the practice should be avoided. It may cause some to stumble.

10. Be admonished, therefore, that whatsoever you do, you do it in reference to the Law of God, being guided thereby in all things; rendering due thanks and praise unto him for all his goodness, and assembling your neighbors with you to be joyful in the Lord.

Chapter 8

Sacrifice

I

1. Of the first institution of sacrifices, the Divine Oracles make no record. But, the date of them goes back to the first of men.

2. Cain and Abel, the sons of Adam, offered sacrifices; Cain, of the fruits of the field, and Abel of the firstlings of his flocks (*Gen. 4:3-5*),

and God had respect to the offering of Abel, and not to that of Cain.

3. Why God had respect to the offering of Abel, and not to that of Cain, is not stated in Genesis; but the most common inference has been that it was merely because Abel offered of the flocks, and Cain of the fields.

4. This reason alone seems quite insufficient; for other offerings than those of slaughter are often acceptable and required by the Law.

5. The Book of Jasher^a gives as the reason that Cain “had brought of the inferior fruit of the ground before the Lord” (*Jasher 1:16*); whereas, an offering, to be acceptable, should always be of the best.

6. Sacrifices continued in all ages, from Adam till Christ; but there has been a wide field of argument as to the propriety of their continuance subsequently.

7. The general, though not quite universal, sentiment among Protestants is, that no form of sacrifice should be offered since the offering of Christ for the redemption of mankind.

8. Romanists hold that the Eucharist, as often as it is repeated, is an offering anew of Christ a sacrifice for the sins of men; and in supporting their theory, offer some testimonies, clearly enough showing that, in all the ages, the chosen of God will offer unto him acceptable offerings (*Mal. 1:11, Rev. 8:3*); but fail to show that that in particular is the offering spoken of.

9. Both Protestants and Romanists are in the dark in this matter, not only for want of a proper understanding of the true nature of a sacrifice, but also of the prerogatives of the Priesthood, in all its divisions.

10. It is the prerogative of the Melchisedek Priesthood to offer certain sacrifices and to administer certain ordinances and sacraments. Wherever that Priesthood is found, there those sacrifices, ordinances, and sacraments may be looked for.

11. The Melchisedek Priesthood existed in the times of the Patriarchs and offered sacrifices. The same Priesthood, during the continuation of the Jewish nation, existed in the persons of several Prophets, who erected and sacrificed on altars at other places than the sanctuary in the keeping of the Aaronic Priesthood (*1 Kings 28:30-38; 2 Sam.*

^a The name Jasher is not that of a man, the author of a book, but of the book itself, and signifies the upright or just: the Book of the Upright, or the True or Upright Record.

24:25; *Jud.* 6:25-28, 8:16-20), which the Aaronic Priesthood were forbidden to do (*Deut.* 12:0-14).

12. Jesus, as well as most of these Prophets, came of other tribes than that which held the Aaronic Priesthood, and it is witnessed of him that he is a Priest after the order of Melchisedek. (*Ps.* 110:4; *Heb.* 5:6-10, 6:17, 21).

13. His Apostles were made partakers of the same calling (*Heb.* 3:1; *Matt.* 16:18-19, 28:18- 19; *Eph.* 2:20), and inducted into the same Priesthood; for they were of tribes to which the Aaronic Priesthood did not pertain, and administered sacraments and ordinances over which it had no power.

14. The Apostles, therefore, are Priests after the order of Melchisedek. Being inducted into that Priesthood, they have power to administer the sacraments and offer the sacrifices which pertain to it.

15. And it is particularly worthy of remark that the only offering made by Melchisedek, of which the Bible makes any mention, is that of the bread and wine (*Gen.* 14:18), which is everywhere recognized as a sacrament, if not a sacrifice.

16. It is, therefore, clear from the testimonies in the Bible, without reference to any other revelation or law, that the rites peculiar to the Melchisedek Priesthood continue.

17. Christ himself is the one sacrifice, great above all others, offered once in fact; offered ever in symbol; who was offered, not upon an altar, nor by a Priest, after the manner of all instituted sacrifices, but a natural sacrifice; yielding himself, who had done no sin, to the wrath of sinners; that by his sufferings he might bring them life.

18. This is the true and proper idea of a sacrifice. It is something valuable given, or yielded up to be destroyed, as the sole or necessary means of saving something else. From this natural, originated all sacerdotal sacrifices.

19. And as the Eucharistic Sacrifice is a symbol of the natural sacrifice of Jesus, so sacerdotal sacrifices are all voluntary offerings, in lieu of natural sacrifices. Instead of being burdensome to those who offer them, the design and effect of the institution of sacerdotal sacrifices is to diminish the necessity for the natural.

Chapter 9

Monuments

I

1. The Scriptures mention but a few instances of the erection of monuments to preserve the memory of the revelations of God's majesty and mercy. But those mentioned were of an early date, and show that the Law was kept in the beginning.

2. It is worthy of note that travelers find many ancient monuments in the land of Canaan, of Israelite origin, and prophetic ages, which are nowhere spoken of in the Bible.

3. But that country has so often changed masters; so often been desolated by destructive and long continued wars, that many of its monuments have been destroyed; others lost; and such a multitude of false tales put afloat in regard to them, that little is now known of the genuine Israelite monuments.

4. The best-known ancient nations, whose books are lost, are Egypt, Assyria, and Chaldea, whose histories have been preserved by their monuments; and their claim to ancient renown, which tradition had preserved, but books ignored, has been recently fully vindicated.

5. The universal practice of erecting monuments, in all the early nations, was the result of Law, not caprice. All Archaeologists concur in this, that as their knowledge of God diminished, their monuments became inferior, till, with the loss of true religion altogether, the construction of monuments was, to a great extent, abandoned. Instead of monuments, they then erected statues, and, forgetting the living God, worshipped them as gods.

6. The expense of constructing enduring monuments is not great. The most valuable material should not be sought for, as it is more likely to be demolished for new structures, but rather that which, after being demolished, will be of little or no value.

7. For common monuments, brick, laid in strong mortar, is preferable. The brick should be made of different sizes, with

everyone a letter sunk into the end, and laid up in order, as type are set.

8. In this style of building, the side of every structure of brick could, with little expense, be made a monument, covered with records; and as the brick would be of little value for any new structure, these works would seldom be demolished.

9. To make the temptation to demolish them less, the whole interior mass might well be constructed of gravel and rough stones, mixed with lime and sand, which would very soon harden and become massive stone.

10. It would be preferable to impress the letters into the brick, rather than emboss them, because they would be more durable; but either style could with propriety be adopted, in interior tablets, properly protected from weather.

11. In this style of building, the walls of houses should be divided into panels, and each panel filled with an inscription, beginning a little above the earth's surface, and placing each line above the last, in succession, as each is below the last in the pages of a book. 1

2. Or, a draught might be made of each panel, with its proper inscription, with regard to the size of the letter bricks, and by that they could be laid up so as to read from top to bottom, in the usual style.

13. As these monuments would be valuable as structures and nearly valueless as materials for future structures, they would be most likely to be permanent.

14. But in the construction of them, some events might well be briefly commemorated on a single brick, and occasionally a brick be laid with the inscribed side within the wall, so that no process of destruction would blot out its testimony, short of tearing the monuments down to the foundation, and breaking up each brick.

15. Such monuments would withstand the elements as long as any other material, and could be constructed without difficulty, in most countries. When made of pressed brick, they would present a fine appearance.

Chapter 10

Blessing of Infants

I

On Verses 1-2

1. The blessing of infants is no new sacrament. It was practised by Jesus Christ during his ministry (*Mark 10:13-16, Luke 18:15-17*). After the practice of baptizing infants was introduced, in the days of the apostasy of the Church, it was confounded with confirmation.

2. But there was such a manifest impropriety in confirming unconscious infants that that sacrament was necessarily postponed to a later period of life. By this means, blessing as a sacrament was quite lost.

3. Yet it is retained among Romanists, the eastern Christians of various sects, and some Protestants, not as a sacrament, but as a nonessential ceremony attending baptism, or sprinkling, which most of them have substituted for baptism.

II

On Verses 3-4

1. The name by which a child is blessed, that is its name. Those who bring a child to be blessed should determine what name they wish, and if there is no good objection, it should be blessed by that. But if any just objection appears, he who blesses should bless by such name as is most proper.

Chapter 11

Baptism

I

On Verse 1

1. The language, “born of water,” as found in this Law, and in the discourse of Jesus to Nicodemus, is sufficient to settle the controversy as to the manner in which baptism should be administered.

2. For a birth is a coming forth out of something that covers and conceals. Such is baptism, only when the subject, being covered in water, is brought forth out of it.

3. It would be folly in the extreme to say of one, upon whom a few drops of water had been sprinkled, or a small quantity poured, that he was born of the water. It cannot even be said that he is sprinkled or poured. It is the water that is sprinkled or poured.

4. Nor can anyone say that this language, “born of the water,” was not used of baptism. For if baptism is not the thing here spoken of, then there is another ceremony to be administered in water, besides baptism, so entirely essential that without it no one can enter into the Kingdom.

5. And that other ceremony would also be baptism; that is, an immersion in water. For as no one can dispute that, it is necessary to be born of water, in order to enter into the Kingdom, so whether baptism is or is not an immersion. Nevertheless, immersion is essential to entry into the Kingdom.

6. This discourse of Jesus with Nicodemus, a ruler of the Jews, has given a further key to the manner of administering baptism. He reproached Nicodemus for not understanding what it was to be born again.

7. Why that reproach? Because the Jews were at that time making considerable numbers of converts to their faith, all of whom were baptized, and they always spoke of this baptism as a new birth.

8. Maimonides, one of the most distinguished of the old writers

on Jewish theology, after relating that proselytes were received into the Jewish faith, males by circumcision, baptism and sacrifice; and females by baptism and sacrifice, adds, "A Gentile who has become a proselyte, and a slave who is set at liberty, (on embracing the faith,) are both, as it were, new born babes; which is the reason why those who before were their parents are now no longer so" (*Clarke's Fleury, B. iv, ch. i, p. 273*). Hence, a master in Israel could not be ignorant of how a man should be born a second time.

9. Baptism was most clearly treated as regeneration, or a new birth, by Jesus during his ministry. He said to Peter, and the rest of the Apostles, "Ye which have followed me in the regeneration, when the Son of Man shall sit in the throne of his glory, ye also shall sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel" (*Matt. 19:28*).

10. In what had the twelve Apostles followed? The regeneration. What is regeneration? Butterworth says: "Regeneration is the change and renovation of the soul, by the spirit and grace of God (*John 3:5-6*). It is called the new birth, and consists in the infusion of spiritual life into the soul (*John 5:25*), whereby it is capable of performing spiritual actions, and living unto God (*Rom. 14:3; But. Con*).

11. Buck says: "Regeneration, a new birth; that work of the Holy Spirit by which we experience a change of heart It is to be distinguished from baptism, which is an external rite, though some have confounded them together. The evidence of it are: conviction of sin, holy sorrow, deep humility, knowledge, faith, repentance, love, and devotedness to God's glory" (*Buck's Th. Dic., p. 395*).

12. These are standard writers of Protestant theology, and their definitions express the doctrine of most Protestant sects. But they are irreconcilable with the teaching of Jesus.

13. For if regeneration is a change of heart, evidenced by conviction of sin and repentance, as Buck says; if, with Butterworth, it is a change and renovation of the soul; how could he undergo that change? How could he be convicted of sin, and repent, who was without sin? (*Heb. 4:15, 6:26*).

14. The language of Jesus, "ye who have followed me in the regeneration," just as truly implies that he whom they followed was regenerated, as that they who followed were. And as he who was without sin could not repent and turn from sin, and was nevertheless regenerated, so repenting and turning from sin is not regeneration.

15. The change of heart or turning from sin to holiness, which has been mistaken for regeneration, is in the Gospel denominated repentance, and is a prerequisite to baptism, without which no one, once in sin, can become regenerate.

16. In this view of the matter, Paul spoke of the baptism of water as the washing of regeneration, and that of the Spirit as the receiving of the Holy Spirit, shed abundantly on us through Jesus Christ (*Tit. 3:5-6*).

II

On Verse 2

1. To be a lawful candidate for baptism, it is necessary to have faith toward God, and to repent of all sin. Without these prerequisites, baptism will avail nothing.

2. Without faith, it is impossible to please God (*Heb. 6:6*). This faith does not consist merely in believing in the existence of God. It is necessary to believe in actual communion with him; in the language of Paul, that he is the rewarder of those who seek him.

3. In sending out the Apostles to preach the Gospel in all the world, Jesus gave them this promise, "He that believeth, and is baptized, shall be saved" (*Mark 16:16*). Believeth what? The word preached. Thus, belief is a prerequisite to baptism.

4. So, Philip taught the eunuch of Ethiopia when he inquired of him why he could not be baptized. "If thou believest with all thy heart, thou mayest" (*Acts 8:37*).

5. But faith toward God will not alone qualify one to receive baptism. It is equally necessary to repent of all sin, whether of action, word, or thought.

6. The Apostles, when they received their commission to preach the Gospel in all the world, were sent to preach repentance and the remission of sins (*Luke 24:47*).

7. Very soon after receiving this mission, when Peter was inquired of by his congregation what they should do (to be saved), he replied, "Repent, and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ, for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Spirit." (*Acts 2:38*).

8. This repentance is that conversion, or change of heart, of which the sects so often speak under the name of regeneration; their error being chiefly this, that they think that to be regeneration, which in fact is its necessary prerequisite.

9. But baptism will be unavailing if it is not administered by those duly authorized of God. The doctrine of the Roman Catholic Church, that it may be administered, not only by a Priest, but by a layman, a woman, or an infidel; and that it will be valid, so the intention is right, is absurd.

10. For, baptism is the sacrament by which and in which sins are remitted, and unauthorized Priests, laymen, women, and infidels have no authority to remit sins.

11. This doctrine is made very plain in the Gospel. The authority conferred on the Apostles by Jesus, was to go into all the world, preaching repentance and the remission of sins to every creature (*Luke 24:47-48*); witnessing unto them, he that believeth and is baptized, shall be saved; and he that believeth not, shall be damned (*Mark 16:16*); and baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit (*Matt. 27:19*).

12. The reason of this rule is plain. For sin is an offence against God. He, being the party wronged, has the right to forgive or to withhold forgiveness.

13. Nothing is clearer, therefore, than that he has the right to prescribe the conditions on which he will forgive sin, and the manner in which he will do it, and to confer the authority to grant the remission, upon whomsoever he will; and that no man can validly exercise that authority, except he that is duly authorized of God.

14. All sects substantially admit the soundness of this rule, by confining the administration of the rite, under ordinary circumstances, to those whom they regard as God's Ministers. Their occasional aberrations from the rule grow out of the defects and innate follies of their various systems of theology.

15. Nor is there any other door into the Kingdom, by which men may enter. Children under eight years old are not subjects of baptism, because at that tender age there is not a foundation for intellectual responsibility. If made liable for the consequences of their conduct, they have not the intelligence to so act that their conduct shall be the counterpart of their intentions.

16. But the sole fact of their freedom from the stain of actual sin does not authorize them to enter the Kingdom by any other door; for Jesus was without sin (*Heb. 4:15*), and yet it was necessary for him to be baptized (*Matt. 2:13-16, Mark 1:9, Luke 3:21*).

17. Not pursuing these special cases any farther, the general rule is so clearly laid down: that no one can come into the Kingdom, except through valid, authorized baptism, that it is only a matter of surprise that any believer of the Gospel should have ever doubted it. Nor is it possible that any who has faith in the Gospel should be in doubt on the subject, after reading the testimonies in God's word.

III

On Verse 3

1. The keys of authority to baptize for the remission of sins belong to the Priesthood after the order of Melchisedek, in all its grades. Priests of the Aaronic order are also authorized to baptize for the remission of sins.

2. John the Baptist was of the Aaronic Priesthood. Yet his principal ministry was in preaching repentance and baptism for the remission of sins; that is, the baptism of repentance. (*Matt. 3:1-3, Mark 1:4, Luke 3:3*).

3. And when Jesus gave the Apostles the plenary authority, in all cases throughout the earth (*Matt. 28:18*) to remit and retain sins (*John 20:23*), their first use of the power on behalf of new converts was in the washing of regeneration, or baptism for the remission of sins (*Acts 2:38*).

Note I—The Manner of Baptism

1. A most singular and uncalled-for controversy exists among Christians as to the manner of baptism, there being three rites or forms in use, each of which is offered as a valid manner, to wit: immersing the subject in water, pouring water upon him, and sprinkling a few drops on him.

2. The Greek Church, which uses the New Testament in the language in which it was written, has always practiced immersion and denies that the members of the Latin or Roman Church are Christians, because they are unbaptized.

3. The oldest Church edifices in Europe, both in Protestant, Greek, and Romanist countries, are provided with baptismal founts for the immersion of adults; and it is a matter of undisputed history that sprinkling and pouring were not used until quite modern times, except on the plea that the health of the subject would not admit of immersion.

4. Romanists, among whom sprinkling and pouring originated, justify it, not by Apostolic institution, but by the authority of the Church to change forms and ceremonies.

5. It is not a little singular that Protestants, who deny all authority of the Church over the sacraments, and claim that the Scriptures are a complete rule of faith and practice, should follow the Romanists in that for which they claim no warrant from the Bible, and justify under the authority of Romish Councils.

6. But nearly all Protestants do so follow the canons of the Church of Rome. The Methodists have carried the folly farther by leaving the question of the manner to be determined by the subject (*Discipline, ch. i, sec. xxi, 1. ch. ii, sec. ii, pp. 103, 109, edition of New York, 1836*).

7. And this folly is practiced by numerous other sects, though it carries with it the scandalous admission that the ministers of those sects are not capable of instructing their converts in religious ceremonies, but need to be instructed and guided by them.

8. If three manners had been originally instituted, the Minister of God, rather than a new convert, would be the proper person to judge which was appropriate to the occasion. And if one mode was

instituted, and that had fallen into doubt, it is ridiculous that the solution of that doubt should be referred to one not yet inducted into the Church, rather than a Minister of God's Law.

9. But it is nowhere pretended that more than one mode of baptism was originally instituted; and among those who are acquainted with early Church history, and the Greek language, no pretense is made that the mode was other than immersion.

10. Romanists, who instituted other forms, admit unhesitatingly that they rest on the authority of the Church, and not on the warrant of Scripture.

11. The apparent doubt which hangs over the subject in the English language, grows out of the fact that the Scriptures have never been duly translated.

12. The English version of the Bible was made by sprinklers; not baptizers. When they came to the words rendered in English, "he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved (*Mark 16:16*), they translated all but one word. The word, "baptistheis," they did not translate. To have done so would have decided the controversy in favour of the Baptists. They Anglicized it into the word "baptized," and thus left the controversy where they found it.

13. These translators, when the sacrament of baptism was not involved, found no difficulty in translating the same word. Translating the Old Testament, not from the original tongue, as the title page represents, but from the Septuagint, they made no difficulty in translating, "and Naaman went down and dipped himself seven times in Jordan;" rendering "ebaptisato" "dipped."

14. In the Greek language, this sacrament is always named by the word "baptizo," which invariably signifies "immersion;" whatever Cavilers may say to the contrary, when they have an audience who do not read Greek. Of numerous examples, the following, selected from the classics, will be satisfactory:

15. "But when the sun had dipped himself (*Greek, baptized himself*) into the flood of the ocean, and the dark shining moon led in the stormy night, then went forth the warlike men who dwelt in the northern mountains." –Orpheus.

16. "When a piece of iron is taken red hot from the fire, and is dipped (*Gr., baptized*) in water, the heat, being quenched by the peculiar nature of the water, ceases." –Heraclides Ponticus.

17. Polybius, describing a naval engagement between the Romans and Carthaginians, in which the latter were defeated, says that “on account of the weight of the vessels, and the unskilfulness of the rowers, they sunk (*Gr., baptized*) many of them.”

18. In relating the siege of Syracuse, he says: “The greater part of their vessels being sunk (*Gr., baptized*), they were filled with consternation.” In speaking of the naval engagement between Philip and Attalus, which happened near Chios, he says: “Attalus seeing one of his quinqueremes (galleys with five oars in a seat) sunk (*Gr., baptized*) by one of the enemy’s vessels,” &c.

19. “As when one dips (*Gr., baptizes*) the vessel into the fountain of water.” –The Greek Scholiast on Euripides.

20. “The crow often dips (*Gr., baptizes*) herself from the head to the top of the shoulders in the river.” –The Greek Scholiast on Arātus.

21. “And I plunging (*Gr., baptizing*) you in the waves of the sea, will destroy you in the briny surges.” –Alcibiades in Ja cob’s Anthol.

22. “Finding Cupid among the flowers, I caught him and plunged (*Gr., baptized*) him into wine, and drank him up.” –Anacrëon, in his Ode on Love in the Heart.

23. Esop, in his fable of the Ape and the Dolphin, relates that the dolphin, having generously undertaken to carry an ape ashore, who had been unfortunately wrecked at sea, became vexed with him for telling him a falsehood, and sinking (*Gr., baptizing*) him, “killed him;” that is, he plunged him under the water, till he was drowned. In the fable of the Shepherd and the Sea, he says: “The vessel being in danger of being sunk” (*Gr., baptized*), &c.

24. Diodōrus Siculus, speaking of the sudden swelling of the Nile, says: “Many of the land animals are overtaken by the river, and being sunk (*Gr., baptized*) perish.”

25. In another place he says: “The Admiral’s ship being sunk (*Gr., baptized*), the armament was thrown into great confusion.” In another he says: “The river rushing down with a violent current, sunk (*Gr., baptized*) many and destroyed them.”

26. Baptizo always denotes a total immersion. If only & part of a thing be immersed, still it is an entire immersion of that part, and the context limits its extent. Thus, Polybius says: “The foot soldiers passed through (the water), scarcely immersed (*Gr., baptized*) to the paps.”

27. The Fathers of the Protestant Reformation, and the most learned Protestant Divines, have admitted, contrary to their practice, that immersion is the proper form of baptism.

28. Thus Calvin, though he contends that “whether the person who is baptized be wholly immersed, and whether thrice or once, or whether water be only poured or sprinkled upon him, is of no importance,” yet says, in the same section, “The very word baptize, however, signifies to immerse; and it is certain that immersion was the practice of the ancient Church” (*Institutes, Book iv, ch. xv, sec. 19*).

29. “Baptism is a Greek word, and may be translated immersion, as when we immerse something in water, that it may be wholly covered. And although it is almost wholly abolished (for they do not dip the whole children, but only pour a little water on them), they ought, nevertheless, to be wholly immersed, and then immediately drawn out; for that the etymology of the word seems to demand.” –Luther.

30. “Christ commanded us to be baptized; by which word it is certain, immersion is signified. Baptists that, in this place, is more than niptein; because that seems to respect the whole body, this only the hands. Nor does Baptizein, signify to wash, except by consequence; for it properly signifies to immerse for the sake of dying. To be baptized in water, signifies no other than to be immersed in water, which is the external ceremony of baptism. Baptizo differs from the verb dunai, which signifies to plunge in the deep and to drown” –Beza, (on Mark 7:4).

31. “The act of baptizing is the immersion of believers in water. This expresses the force of the word. Thus also it was performed by Christ and his Apostles.” –Vitranga.

32. “Christ commanded us to be baptized, by which word it is certain immersion is signified.” –Hospinianus.

33. “To baptize, among the Greeks, is undoubtedly to immerse, to dip; and baptism is immersion, dipping. Baptismos en Pneumati agio, baptism in the Holy Spirit, is immersion into the pure waters of the Holy Spirit; for he on whom the Holy Spirit is poured out, is, as it were, immersed into him. Baptismos en puri, ‘baptism in fire,’ is a figurative expression, and signifies casting into a flame, which, like water, flows far and wide; such as the flame that consumed Jerusalem. The thing commanded by our Lord is baptism; immersion into water.” –Gurtlerus.

34. “The words Baptizein and Baptismos, are not to be interpreted of aspersions, but always of immersion. –Buddeus.

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

35. "Baptism is immersion, and was administered in former times, according to the force and meaning of the word." –Salmasius.

36. "The word Baptizein, to baptize, is nowhere used in the Scripture for sprinkling." –Venema.

37. Professor Fritsche, a disciple of Hermann (*in his Com. on Matt. iii, 6*), says: "Baptism was performed, not by sprinkling, but by immersion; this is evident, not only from the nature of the word, but from Rom. 6:4."

38. "The word baptism, according to etymology and usage, signifies to immerse, submerge, &c.; and the choice of the expression betrays an age in which the latter custom of sprinkling had not been introduced." –Augusti.

39. "The word corresponds in signification with the German word taufen, to sink into the deep." –Brenner.

40. "Baptism is perfectly identical with our word immersion or submersion (tauchen oder untertauchen). If immersion under water is for the purpose of cleansing, or washing, then the word means cleansing or washing." –Free Inquiry respecting Baptism, Leipsic, 1802.

41. Again, "The baptism of John, and that of the Apostles, were performed in precisely the same way; that is, the candidate was completely immersed under water." Speaking of Rom. 6:4, and Gal. 3:27, it says: "What becomes of all these beautiful images, when, as at the present day, baptism is administered by pouring or sprinkling?" –id.

42. "An entire immersion belongs to the nature of baptism. This is the meaning of the word." "In the word Bap tizo and Baptisma is contained the idea of a complete immersion under water; at least, so is Baptisma in the New Testament." –Bretschneider.

43. "The word baptize signifies, in Greek, sometimes to immerse, sometimes to submerge." –Paullus Com.

44. "Baptism consists in the immersion of the whole body in water." –Scholz, on Matt. 3:6.

45. Professor Lange, on Infant Baptism, says: "Baptism, in the Apostolic age, was a proper baptism; the immersion of the body in water. As Christ died, so we die (to sin) with him in baptism. The body is, as it were, buried under water is dead with Christ; the plunging under water represents death, and raising out of it the resurrection to a new life. A more striking symbol could not be chosen."

46. Bloomfield, in his *Critical Digest* on Rom. 6:4, says: "There is here plainly a reference to the ancient mode of baptism by immersion; and I agree with Koppe and Rosenmuller, that there is reason to regret it should have been abandoned in most Christian Churches, especially as it has so evidently a reference to the mystic sense of baptism."

47. Rosenmuller (on this passage) says: "Immersion in the water of baptism and coming forth out of it was a symbol of a person's renouncing his former life, and, on the contrary, beginning a new one. The learned have rightly reminded us that on account of this emblematical meaning of baptism, the rite of immersion ought to have been retained in the Christian Church."

48. Neander, in his letter to Judd, says: "As to your question on the original rite of baptism, there can be no doubt whatever that in the primitive times, it was performed by immersion, to signify a complete immersion into the new principle of the divine life which was to be imparted by the Messiah." –Judd's Reply to Stuart.

49. Dr. Knapp, an eminent and pious German divine, speaking of the passage in question, says: "We are, like Christ, buried as dead persons by baptism, and should arise, like him, to a new life." "The image is taken here from baptized persons, as they were immersed (buried), and as they emerged (rose again)".

50. John Wesley, on Rom. vi, 4, says: "Buried with him, alluding to the ancient manner of baptizing by immersion."

51. "It being so expressly declared here, Rom. 6:4, and Col. 2:12, that we are buried with Christ in baptism by being buried under water; and the argument to oblige us to a conformity to his death, by dying to sin, being taken hence; and this immersion being religiously observed by all Christians for thirteen centuries, and approved by our Church, and the change of it into sprinkling, even without any allowance from the author of this institution, or any license from any council of the Church, being that which the Romanist still urges to justify his refusal of the cup to the laity; it were to be wished that this custom might be again of general use, and aspersion only permitted, as of old, in case of the clinic, or in present danger of death." –Whitby.

52. "Anciently, those who were baptized put off their garments, which signified the putting off the body of sin, and were immersed and buried in water, to represent their death to sin; and then did rise up out of the water, to signify their entrance upon a new life.

And to these customs the Apostle alludes, when he says: ‘How shall we that are dead to sin live any longer therein? Know ye not that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ, were baptized into his death? Therefore, we are buried with him by baptism.’” Archbishop Tillotson

53. Ohrystostom proves the resurrection from the Apostolic mode of baptism, as follows: “Our being baptized and immersed in the water, and our rising again out of it, is a symbol of our descending into hell or the grave, and of our returning from them.” –Chrys. Hom.

54. “In the time of the Apostles, the form of baptism was very simple. The person to be baptized was dipped in a river or vessel, with the words which Christ had ordered, and, to express more fully his change of character, generally assumed a new name. The immersion of the whole body was omitted only in the case of the sick, who could not leave their beds. In this case, sprinkling was substituted, which was called clinic baptism. The Greek Church, as well as the schismatics in the east, retained the custom of immersing the whole body; but the western Church adopted, in the thirteenth century, the mode of baptism by sprinkling, which has been continued by the Protestants, Baptists only excepted.” –Edinburgh Ency. Baptism.

55. The word Baptizo is still used by the Greeks, and they mock to utter scorn the absurdity of supposing that it means sprinkle or pour. They employ terms of contempt for those practices and always immerse any members who join their Church from other Churches, where they have only received sprinkling or pouring.

56. Professor Stuart says: “The mode of baptism by immersion, the Oriental Church has always continued to preserve, even down to the present time. The members of this Church are accustomed to call the members of the Western Churches “sprinkled Christians,” by way of ridicule and contempt. They maintain that Baptizo can mean nothing but immerge, and that baptism by sprinkling is as great a solecism as immersion by sprinkling; and they claim to themselves the honor of having preserved the ancient sacred rite of the Church free from change and corruption.” –The Mode of Baptism.”

57. “The Oriental Church has not only preserved unchanged the custom of immersion but declares it so essential that they rebaptize those who were sprinkled, and by way of contempt call them ‘sprinkled Christians.’” –Augusti.

58. Walch says: “The Greeks not only immerse the candidate thrice

under water, so that the water closes over his head, but consider that such a mode of baptism is essential. They reject sprinkling.” –History of Religious Controversies.

59. Dr. Wall says: “The Greek Church, in all the branches of it, does still use immersion.” –History of Infant Baptism.

60. Dr. Knapp (Professor of Theology in the University of Halle) says: “In the Greek Church, they still hold to immersion. It would have been better to have adhered generally to the ancient practice, even as Luther and Calvin allowed.”

61. Stourtz, a native Greek (in a work published in 1816), says: “Baptizo has but one signification. It signifies, literally and invariably, to plunge.”

62. The Greek Patriarch, Jeremiab, says: “The ancients were not accustomed to sprinkle the candidate, but to immerse him.” –Walch’s Controversies, out of the Lutheran Church.

63. Christopulos, a Greek, in his “Confession of Faith,” says: “We follow the example of the Apostles, who immersed the candidate under the water.”

64. The great standard of the Greek Church is the Pedalion (the Helm), duly authenticated by the Patriarch and Holy Synod. The Pedalion speaks thus: “We say that the baptism of the Latins (Roman Catholics) is baptism falsely named” (*Gr., Pseudonum on Baptisma.*) Again, “The Latins are heretics of old, especially from the very fact that they are unbaptized” (*Gr., Abaptistoi*). Again, “The more ancient Latins, the first to make innovations upon Apostolic baptism, practiced pouring (*Gr., Epikusin*), that is, they poured a little water upon the crown of the child’s head. And this is still practiced in some places at the present time. More, however, now, with a bunch of hogs’ bristles, throw a few drops of water thrice upon the child’s forehead.” Again, “Observe, then, that we do not say, that we rebaptize (*Gr., Anabaptizomen*) the Latins, but that we baptize (*Gr., Baptizomen*) them, since their baptism (*Gr., Baptisma*) is a lie in its very name. It is not baptism at all, but bare sprinkling” (*Gr., Rantisma*).

65. A celebrated treatise, authenticated by the Patriarchs of Jerusalem, Constantinople, and Alexandria, is called Rantismou Sielcteusis (an exposure of sprinkling). Here are the titles of some of the chapters:

“A Demonstration that Sprinkling is not Ancient, and that the Proofs adduced by Papists are Lies.”

“Reproofs of the Fathers against Sprinkling.”

“A Demonstration that the Law of the Church to admit the Latins as Baptized was made when they were accustomed to baptize as we do. Also, witnesses from Latin Authors that Sprinkling was not received then by them.”

“A Demonstration that Baptism is the Command of the Lord; Sprinkling that of Satan.”

“A Demonstration that Sprinkling, being Satanical, is opposed to Divine Baptism.”

“A Demonstration that Sprinkling, being a Heretical Dogma, is under Anathema.”

66. If any one point is made out in theology, it is this: that Christian baptism, in the days of Christ and the Apostles, was an immersion of the whole body in water, and that there is no authority for any different mode, but the assumed power of the Roman Catholic Church to change the ordinances of God.

67. And the thing made out is not that one mode of baptism is better than another, but it is that immersion only is baptism; that pouring and sprinkling are not.

Note II—The Subjects of Baptism

1. It has already been shown (*post 11, note II*) that faith and repentance are prerequisites to baptism. These facts alone ought to put an end to all questions as to whether infants are proper subjects of baptism.

2. Calvin has made a most ingenious argument in favor of baptizing the children of believers, on the assumption that baptism came in place of circumcision, which was administered to infants (*Institutes, B. iv, ch. xvi*). All Pedobaptists follow him.

3. It will not be necessary to trace the course of his argument, for the following reasons:

1st. Faith and repentance were not requisite to circumcision; and, therefore, if baptism was substituted for circumcision, it was upon new conditions, which excluded infancy.

2d. Circumcision was not administered upon females; therefore, if baptism was a substitute for it, females would be excluded.

3d. Circumcision was the seal of the covenant, by which Abraham and his posterity have the land of Canaan for an everlasting possession (*Gen. 17:10-14*); and as that grant was for a thousand generations, at least (*1 Chron. 16:15-18, Ps. 15:8*), the seal of circumcision has not been superseded, but must be kept by all Israel, on pain of forfeiting all share of the inheritance.

4. There is another objection to Calvin's argument, which reduces it to an absolute absurdity. If the children of believers are entitled to baptism, as a substitute, because Abraham's children were to circumcision; then are their servants also, and all slaves bought with money or born in their houses; for all the servants of Abraham and of his posterity, whether born servants, or bought servants, were just as much entitled and required to be circumcised as his children; and this without reference to age, faith, or any other condition, except owing service to Abraham and his posterity (*Gen. 27:10-11, 23, 27*).

5. An attempt has been made to prove infant baptism by several New Testament cases of the baptism of a whole household. But in none of these cases is it mentioned that there was an infant in the house. In the present dispensation, several hundred instances have

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

occurred of baptizing a whole household; yet never a child under eight years.

6. The rule may, therefore, be laid down as a safe and universal one, that believers, whose hearts are free from the love of sin, and they only are subjects of Gospel baptism; and that such are truly buried with Christ in baptism, and raised, resurrected or regenerated to a new and holy life.

7. Nor is it necessary to submit the question of baptism to the Church to be acted on by them. The Apostolic practice was, and now is, to baptize all of eight years old and upwards who offer themselves for baptism, professing faith toward God, and repentance of all sin. None but hypocrites, and those who come to mock the sacraments, or the Ministers of God, are refused. Nor are they delayed from night till morning, or from morning till night.

8. The candidate need not be questioned as to the general soundness of his faith. It is enough that, like a little child, he be ready to learn of the Minister of God.

Chapter 12

Baptism for the Dead

I

On Verse 1

1. A special dispensation was given to baptize for the dead at Nauvoo in 1842, and the waters of the Mississippi, in front of the city, sanctified for that purpose, until a place for baptism should be prepared in the Temple (*Doctrines of the Saints 78:31-37, DaC 107:10 RLDS, 124:25-31 CJCLdS*).

2. Such a place was made in the Temple, but in the rejection of Nauvoo as a holy city, the baptisms there administered were rejected, and the dispensation forfeited (*Doctrines of the Saints 78:38-52, DaC 107:11-14 RLDS, 124:32-48 CJCLdS*). The rejection took place at the time of the exodus from Nauvoo, subsequent to which all baptisms were invalid.

3. Those baptisms, administered down till that time, were valid when done by competent authority. But those who were baptized, if they followed leaders whom God did not call, were also rejected, with their dead, which leaves the dead without saviors; and yet dependent on the charity of the living (*Mal. 5:6*).

4. The records of those baptisms were never set in order in the Temple, and are lost. It is necessary, where the baptisms are valid, that due proof be made before a Recorder, and the baptisms recorded anew. In cases of rejected and invalid baptisms, the rightful representatives should be baptized, as though it had not been done.

5. A dispensation to baptize for the dead at Voree was given August 9th, 1849, and the waters of White River sanctified for that purpose.

6. A dispensation was given to baptize for the dead at Saint James, during the session of the General Conference, in 1855, and Fount Lake sanctified for that purpose.

II

On Verses 2-4

1. When the candidate claims baptism for the dead by revelation, in any form whatever, the Administrator should inquire and judge of the validity of the claim, and the Recorder should briefly state the revelation in the record.

2. Care should be taken that this record is sufficient in substance; otherwise, the baptism may be set aside as invalid.

III

On Verse 5

1. Baptism for the dead is an ordinance of the Temple, and it is only by special dispensation, in consequence of the poverty of the Saints, that it is ever administered out of a Temple. Hence, those who withhold the funds due for the construction of the Temple are refused baptism for the dead.

2. Those who are under condemnation for disobedience to any word of this Law of God, whether it be a Commandment, a statute, a precept, or whatsoever word it may be, are unfit for saviors of others, because they are not themselves in a state of salvation, nor even progressing forward towards it.

3. But those who are not regular members of any family, duly organized, have no place to bring those for whom they shall be baptized; they have no home for them to abide in, in the everlasting life. The chief thing in the salvation promised in the Gospel is in the family relation and love of a holy people. They who lack that relationship are unsaved themselves, unprepared to save others.

Note on Baptism for the Dead

1. To millions of mankind, the Gospel was never preached in life. If it is not to be preached to them in another state of being, then the salvation which the Gospel promises is not offered to them. And if the Gospel is not preached to them at any time, then they are denied the possibility of entering into life.

2. Many Christians, unwilling to admit that salvation was not offered to all men, have asserted that those to whom the Gospel was not preached were saved, on the general ground that, as they did not know the Law of God, they were not under condemnation for breaking it.

3. Admitting this to be true, the consequence would be that ignorance of the Gospel was as pleasing to God as obedience; and the just conclusion would be, that the Gospel was not revealed to save men, but as an excuse for damning them. For if all who are ignorant of the Gospel are to be saved, universal ignorance would have produced universal bliss.

4. If they fall back on the old Christian faith of the Fathers, that there is no salvation without obedience to the Gospel, then, without preaching to and baptism for the dead, those to whom the Gospel was never preached may justly claim that they were lost; not because they would not obey, but because they could not hear.

5. If, to avoid both sides of this dilemma, the Christian shall say that the sincere and well-meaning of every nation will be saved, whatever his religious faith, then they are not saved by the Gospel, but by their own righteousness; not by obedience to the word of God, but by integrity to the institutions of their several countries and nations.

6. God, having established the rule that all shall be destroyed who obey not the Law of the Gospel (*2 Thess. 1:8, 2:12; Rev. 12:14; Mark 16:16*), has provided for the preaching of the Gospel to the spirits in prison (*1 Pet. 3:19; 4:6; Luke 23:43*), and the baptism for the dead (*1 Cor. 12:29*), that salvation may be offered to all men, and only those lost who take pleasure in unrighteousness (*Matt. 3:10*).

7. When Jesus had finished his testimony on earth, and offered himself for the sins of men, he went in the spirit and preached to the spirits in prison (*1 Pet. 2:19-20*) and opened unto them a dispensation of

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

the Gospel before he ascended to heaven (*John 20:17*).

8. The dispensation being opened, and he having, by a stainless life, and a sacrifice of himself for the salvation of others, become worthy of the keys of the resurrection and everlasting life, ascended to heaven, received all power, and sat down at the right hand of God.

9. Those who become partakers of the same calling with him, as they leave their ministry on earth, go to minister among the spirits of the dead; that they, by obedience to the Gospel, may be saved, as are the living.

Chapter 13

Confirmation

I

On Verse 1

1. The birth of the spirit is fully illustrated by Jesus in his discourse with Nicodemus. Assuming that a ruler of the Jews could not be ignorant of what a birth of water was, he seizes upon a familiar illustration of the other, to which the dry, hot climate of that country gave peculiar force.

2. The severity of the climate in that country is not in its wintry frosts, but its summer heats; so that the coming of the blessed is compared to the shadow of a great rock in a weary land (*Isa. 32: 2*).

3. Passing over the parched plains, under a cloudless sky, with the sun's rays pouring down like the blast of a furnace, when the traveler is ready to perish, suddenly he hears the sound of wind. Immediately, it sweeps past. The cooling breeze comes upon him. His lungs are inflated, and his strength renewed. He feels himself another man. So is everyone that is born of the spirit (*John 3:8*).

4. A more splendid exhibition of this power occurred at Jerusalem, at the first Pentecost after the ascension, when the outpouring of the Spirit was so abundant that those present spoke in tongues, and everyone understood in his own language (*Acts 2:1-11*).

II

On Verse 2

1. It cannot be expected that everyone who receives the laying on of hands will receive with it a powerful and overwhelming inspiration. But he will receive a spirit of truth sufficient, if cherished, to guide him into all truth, and make him wise in the things of God's Kingdom. Such should avoid looking for marvels, and be content with substantial

wisdom and enduring knowledge.

III

On Verse 3

1. It is a mistake to suppose anyone will possess all the spiritual gifts, who has the laying on of hands, or that he will have any particular one he may choose. The spirit divideth gifts severally, as He will (*1 Cor. 12:11*).

2. Paul enumerates the gifts of the spirit, as wisdom, knowledge, faith, miracles, prophecy, discerning of spirits, tongues, and the interpretation (*1 Cor. 12:8-10*). Of these, every servant of God, obedient in faith, repentance, and baptism, will, by the laying on of hands, receive his portion, sufficient to guide him to life, if he will follow its inspiration.

Note on Spiritual Gifts

1. When Jesus sent his Apostles to preach to the nations of the earth, he commanded them, “go ye into all the world, and preach the Gospel to every creature: he that believeth, and is baptized, shall be saved; but he that believeth not, shall be damned. And these signs shall follow them that believe: in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents (with impunity); and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover” (*Matt. 16:15-18*).

2. This promise, as broad as the earth, and as long as time, just as much assures signs as salvation. The believers of the Gospel which the Apostles were sent to preach are as certain that signs will follow them, as that they will be saved.

3. It makes a simple issue of veracity between the Lord Jesus Christ and all those sects who say the signs do not follow. Inquire of any Christian sect if the signs follow them. As oft as they say they do not, so often be assured, on the oath of Jesus Christ, that they do not believe the Gospel.

4. But the signs do not go before unbelievers. They are not given to beget faith in their minds, but to benefit the faithful.

Chapter 14

Eucharist

I

On Verse 1

1. Wine is to be preferred for the blood of the sacrifice, and bread of wheat for the flesh; but the expressed juice of any edible fruit whatever is lawful, and bread of any grain. No article of commerce should be used for wine, on account of the practice of adulterating so perfectly that the fraud cannot be detected.

II

On Verse 2

1. Jesus Christ was the real sacrifice, of which the bread and wine are the symbols. By consecration, and not by any change in their physical nature, structure, or identity, they become the body and blood of Christ, that by eating them we may truly feast upon him as a sacrifice and live.

III

On Verse 3

1. It is not right to stay away from the table of the Lord, because anyone there has wronged us. The table is the Lord's, not ours. We partake, seeing his body and blood in the bread and wine, and if we stay away, stay in contempt of him.

2. But it is our duty, as we approach the table, to examine ourselves, whether we have wronged anyone; and, if so, to make restitution first, and partake of the sacrifice afterwards. Anyone who persists in going to the table, knowing that another has just cause against him, will be hardened in iniquity.

Note on the Sacrifice of Christ

1. The most common doctrine among Trinitarians is, that Christ was God, from eternity to eternity, according to the theory of the Creed of Saint Athanasius (*ante pp. 51, 52*), and possessed all the attributes of the Godhead; that God, being infinite in all his attributes, his Law was infinite; and, therefore, the violation of it an infinite sin; that as man was finite, and therefore incapacitated to endure an infinite punishment, there was no way by which he could be redeemed from the stain of sin, and consequent everlasting destruction, but by a vicarious and infinite atonement; that Jesus Christ, being Almighty God, infinite in all his attributes, offered himself a sacrifice to appease the wrath of God; or, in the language of the creeds, “to reconcile his Father unto us;” that by his infinite sufferings, paying the debt which we by our sins had contracted, we might be released therefrom, come into the favor of God, and live forever.

2. This theory involves the dogma that justice and mercy are antagonists, and not collateral attributes, and that justice is so vindictive that it must have its demand, without reference to the reformation of the subjects of its exactions, or the amount of intellectual and physical happiness enjoyed in the creation of God.

3. And it involves the further dogma, that the exactions of justice are so indiscriminating, that they are equally satisfied so the demand is paid, no matter who pays it; a dogma which, though not particularly obnoxious in the mere voluntary payment of money, presents a very different aspect, when it exhibits itself in inflicting pain on an innocent being, who, through excessive generosity, may volunteer to suffer as proxy for the guilty.

4. Such dogmas could only have found footing among men in times of ignorance and barbarism. They, in fact, grew up among a people not half redeemed from Pagan superstition. But once thoroughly established as a part of the creed of Christendom, the mind is progressively hardened in them as it advances in the knowledge of such a system. Hence, many very intelligent and just men, in later times, have given an unconsidered assent to this dogma, in comparatively enlightened ages.

5. The innate injustice of this dogma has had less influence in

overthrowing it, for the want of anything on which to fall back; the true doctrine of the atonement and the mediatorial office having been quite lost among Christians.

6. The idea of a sacerdotal sacrifice is not original but derived from that of a natural sacrifice. A. natural sacrifice is something given up or yielded to be lost or destroyed; and is made, not willingly, but as the means of saving something else, or of avoiding some calamity. Sacerdotal sacrifices are voluntary offerings of things esteemed, in pursuance of some appointment or law, by the keeping of which, calamities are avoided, or blessings obtained; the assent of the heart being the very gist of the matter, of which the offering is the proper sign.

7. The offering of Christ was a natural sacrifice, and it was not necessary that he should be offered on an altar, nor by a Priest. The numerous volumes written on the fact of his being killed by the instigation of the Aaronic Priesthood, and at Jerusalem, the place consecrated for sacrifices, are nonsense; for he was not slain upon the altar, nor after the manner of slaying victims for sacrifice. The Priesthood are not authorized, and never were in any dispensation, to offer human victims for sacrifices. Sacerdotal sacrifices are either eaten or burned, and he was neither.

8. But this dogma is obnoxious to the further objection, that if the manhood only of Christ suffered death, then there was no infinite suffering, and therefore no infinite atonement; and if the Godhead died, immortality, and consequently infinity, are not attributes of God. If God died, he was mortal, and finite like ourselves. If he did not die, there was not an infinite sacrifice.

9. All these mistakes and follies flow naturally from the error of imagining that God can do anything whatsoever that the mind of man can conceive, and is only restrained by His own attributes from doing many things which to good men seem most desirable and right, which He does not do.

10. Believing that God can do anything whatsoever, and therefore that He can at any moment purify all men from all sin, and all corruption; and thus make them all holy, and all happy; most undisputably a most holy work, and well worthy of God. They set about accounting for His not doing it, by saying that it would be contrary to His attribute of justice, which, when mercy pleads in behalf of miserable man, continually demands satisfaction for the debt of sin. Man, therefore, must have perished everlastingly, but that Jesus Christ, the infinite

God, took upon himself this infinite debt, and expiated it by His infinite sufferings, in the death of the infinite.

11. The dogma is monstrous blasphemy. It makes God's mercy so short that He will not forgive the penitent till they have paid the uttermost farthing, knowing they have nought wherewith to pay, and never can obtain it. It makes his justice so blind that it only demands a victim, and is as well satisfied with punishing the innocent as the guilty. It charges on God all the misery of the universe, which it alleges He can change to blessedness by only willing it.

12. In opposition to this horrible dogma, the truth is that God made man and all the creatures of his hand as good as it was possible to make them. If the creator was infinite, the material of which he made man and animals was finite, corruptible. He made the best possible work of the material. His goodness demanded of him to make all things the best possible, and forbade him to make anything which, on the whole, would not be blessed by its existence.

13. It is necessary to be thoroughly impressed with this truth: that God cannot do all things; that some things are essentially and immutably impossible; impossible to omnipotence, as well as to worms of the dust; that almighty power extends only to doing such things as, in their nature, are possible.

14. For instance, almighty power cannot produce something from nothing; it cannot make two and two to be either more or less than four; it cannot make truth to be false, or falsehood to be true; it has no power over the past, but oblivion; over the future, but change; and it can produce no effect, but by the use of sufficient means. And in the selection of means, there are many things possible, which, nevertheless, can only be accomplished through numerous processes, which, in their accomplishment, necessarily occupy long periods of time.

15. As the earth and all things therein were of created corruptible matter, the creation necessarily partook in some degree of the nature and of the defects of the material. The successive acts of creation seem to have developed improved results in every step of progress; not by any improvement the skill of the creator, for, so far as we can judge, the most stupendous acts of creation were in the beginning; but, by the improvement of the material, by each change for the final consummation.

16. Each thing made was good, because on the whole its being was beneficial, especially each living thing was good, because its

existence was a blessing to it. But the last, best, the finishing work of creation, was the making of man, in the image and likeness of God. Though we know he was of the dust, for he returns to it, yet that dust must have undergone numerous and great changes to bring it from mere dust to be a living man. What time these changes occupied, we cannot know, for we know not the creative process.

17. To man was given dominion over the earth, and all created things therein. Had it been possible to bestow divine perfections on one thus placed to rule as Lord over the creation of God, and who, because made in the likeness of God, was feared and obeyed as God by all the rest of creation, the infinite goodness of God would have dictated that he be so created.

18. The injunction in the Gospel, “be ye perfect as your Father in heaven is perfect” (*Matt. 5:48*), is conclusive evidence that in the mind of God this is a desirable and necessary attainment, and if desirable during the eternity to come, equally so in the times past. If we really believe that God is infinitely good, we are compelled to believe that the only reason man was not so made, was because it was impossible.

19. It being impossible of any existing material to make man perfect as God is perfect, and yet possible to so make him that his existence would on the whole be beneficial, and so that through a long series of changes he could ultimately attain to that, it was consistent with the goodness of God to make him as man was created, relatively good, but not altogether perfect.

20. And as the world would be better by his dominion over beasts than without it, notwithstanding his imperfections, it was also consistent with his goodness to give man the dominion over them.

21. We are equally compelled, both by our faith in the divine goodness, and by all our knowledge of the works of God, to believe that the means devised for the improvement and final perfection of man, is the best adapted to accomplish that end; and that by the use of that means as large a portion of the human race will be made “perfect as God in heaven is perfect,” as it is possible to bring to that condition.

22. As God, like man, can only produce results by the use of sufficient means, no amount of suffering in his creatures becomes a reproach upon divine goodness, unless that suffering is allowed by him wantonly, or is so great as to make the existence of those who suffer a curse, rather than a blessing.

23. Wisdom, knowledge, prudence are, in some degree, the result of experience. Inspiration and revelation may act a large part in producing them, but they can no more be brought into being without experience than a child can be born without a mother. Experience is the mother of them all.

24. But whatever other attributes man was created with, he could not be with experience. That every being must have for himself. None can derive it from another.

25. Had the conduct of man been subject to such a control that he could only choose and do the right, his time of life would have given no experience. Unless he was capable of choosing or refusing either the good or the evil, he could no more learn by experience than could a machine. He could have no wisdom. He could only act the wisdom of the maker, as does the clock.

26. Therefore, the very condition of things through which sin entered the world, and death by sin, was necessary, in the progress of the work, of making man perfect as God is perfect. Not that sin itself was necessary, but peccability, or the liability to sin.

27. Sin, having entered the world, the benevolence of God demanded that an effort be made to save the sinner. And justice did not demand that he should be immediately destroyed, or that he should be destroyed at all, if he could be separated from sin. And thus made a blessing, rather than a curse.

28. The fall of man principally introduced hereditary corruption of the flesh, which could only result in the death of the body. This hereditary corruption, and consequent death, is not to be regarded as a punishment inflicted by God on all men for the sin of one, but as the mere natural consequence of the corruption which Adam, by eating improper food, produced in his flesh; which corruption of flesh his posterity inherited from him, with its consequent death.

29. Had it been in the power of God, by a mere and immediate effort of the will to remove that corruption, his goodness could not have failed to do it. But this being impossible in the nature of things, the divine goodness has, in its wisdom, devised a practical mode of finally accomplishing that result, and something more than that, for such as by obedience to the Law, seek everlasting life.

30. In bringing about this result, the corruption of man's flesh, constantly exciting evil passions, is at war with those features in the character of man which approach nearest to the divine character.

And God's mercy cannot save and render happy those who will not exercise a proper government over their passions and propensities.

31. It is proper to know, therefore, that if any are lost in the end, it is because they prefer corruption. That the difficulty in the present and perpetual salvation of all men, from all sin, and their early delivery and perpetual redemption from all misery, is in their own unwillingness to live according to the true laws of life, and not in any unwillingness of God to forgive and save them.

32. This unwillingness to live according to the law of life is not peculiar to Adam. Every violation of the law of life in eating, drinking, or other carnal indulgence, is a new fall, like in kind to that of Adam, though possibly less in degree: and like that, it not only brings an earlier and more aggravated death on the sinner, but it entails it on his posterity also. The reason men, in their sins, are not saved, is not that God is unmerciful, but that their salvation is impossible. What the wicked ask as salvation is the worst damnation. God is better to them than their prayers.

33. Those who are anxious to obtain delivery from pain and disease, without reforming in their character and conduct are seeking to themselves the worst of calamities, an eternity of ill, in the unrestrained indulgence of a corrupt heart; against which God guarded Adam, by casting him out of the garden, and placing cherubs to guard the way, lest he should eat of the tree of life, and live forever in his corruptions (*Gen. 3:24*); a calamity greater than everlasting death.

34. As death was the ultimate and inevitable consequence of sin, the life for which man was created could only be attained through a resurrection of the body. But had the power of accomplishing that resurrection been conferred on sinful man, in his anxiety to live, and to give life to all who were dear to him, he would have conferred the boon on those he loved, though they were yet in their corruptions; and in that way secured an eternity of ill, which he had not yet learned to sufficiently abhor.

35. There can be no such thing as a conformity of man to the character of God; which is the true idea of salvation; till with a high order of wisdom and intelligence, and a power of choosing between good and evil, man continually prefers the good, and abhors the evil; preferring good to evil, not from the fear of the punishment which evil deeds entail, but on account of the innate loveliness of undefiled goodness; of pure, unalloyed holiness.

36. To be a safe repository of the keys of the resurrection, or the power of raising up these mortal bodies, and sealing them to everlasting life, one must not only love every good thing with an unalterable affection, and hate every evil thing with unchanging abhorrence, but he must have such divine wisdom, such a patient forbearance, and so much control over the sympathies of the heart, that he will never turn aside to raise up any one, even his own child, to that state of being, only such as are prepared for continuing ever in a state of perfect holiness, without any compulsion exercised over them, but from the mere love of righteousness.

37. Such a one was the Lord Jesus Christ. Down to the age of thirty years, in the retirement of a peasant's life, He never stepped aside from the path of rectitude, to do a single evil deed. Not one even of the least of all the Commandments or precepts of God did he ever transgress, nor did an evil thought enter his heart. Conscious that he was the lawful heir to the throne of David, and that the whole house of Israel were his inheritance; never did he turn aside from the present duties of the humble position in which he was born, to disturb the peace, and peril the safety of his brethren, even in claiming his own.

38. Made of the seed of Abraham (*Gal. 3:16, Heb. 2:16*), of the tribe of Judah (*Heb. 7:14*), and of the house and lineage of David (*Rom. 1:3, 2 Tim. 2:8*), according to the flesh, tempted and tried in all things as we are (*Heb. 4:15*), and partaking with us of the common infirmities of human nature, he was holy, harmless, and without sin (*Heb. 4:15, 7:26-28*).

39. It was fit that such a one should receive the keys of the resurrection and of life everlasting (*John 6:25-26*), and be exalted on high with divine power; for he had maintained the divine characteristics through all the trials of his mortal existence. And having ever "loved righteousness and hated iniquity" (*Heb. 1:8-9, Ps. 45:6-7*), He was exalted by His Father and his God to be our God, and the Father of the world to come (*Isa. 4:6*).

40. Jesus Christ, having committed no sin, deserved to suffer no evil that was avoidable. Taking upon himself the Priesthood to which God called him, and working a faithful ministry with the sole view to the salvation of mankind, without regard to any suffering he might bring upon himself, he suffered bitter persecution and a cruel death, all which he might have avoided, without sin against God or man, by doing less for the salvation of others. It was thus that he became a natural sacrifice for the sins of men.

41. But having loved righteousness and hated iniquity, through the severest temptations, and never swerved one moment, God raised him to an incorruptible, an immortal life, and gave him the power to raise up all others; a power which, as he had already resisted every temptation, he could not be moved to abuse. Thus was established that the incorruptible dominion of man over the creation of God, which the divine goodness had sought from the beginning, by the most direct means to establish.

42. He was not demanded of God as a victim to divine vengeance, but offered himself as the victim of man's malevolence. And having walked in the way of life everlasting, through death and the resurrection, he was capable of leading others the same road. Thus, by the appointment of God and the requisite intelligence, he was possessed of the keys of the resurrection and life everlasting.

43. He is a propitiation for the sins of all men, in this, that whereas all, both by inheritance were doomed to death, and by actual guilt had aggravated that doom, he brings the actual resurrection of the body to all (*1 Cor. 15:22*), and puts it in their power by obedience to a law which he makes known, to lay hold on everlasting life.

44. By means of this law the way of life is ever so guarded that none can lay hold on immortality, except those who have, through the experience of temptation, a settled and unconquerable hatred of sin, and an unchangeable love of righteousness, so that the keeping of the Law of God, instead of being a restraint on them, is their chief desire and greatest pleasure. No other can enter into life.

45. It is because Jesus Christ was a mortal man, subject to the same infirmities as other men, and tempted in all things like his brethren, that there was merit in his giving his life for the salvation of others. Had he been God Almighty, coequal and coeternal with the Father, of one Godhead with Him, and thus had power as God, to lay down and take up His life, death to Him, at most, would have been no more than is a few moments sleep to mortal man, entered upon without terror or dread; and the sufferings of his lowly life would have been only apparent, for God cannot suffer. To a man, it was an act of the profoundest faith in God to trust undoubtingly that, though dead, God would raise him up the third day, and of boundless benevolence to offer his life to save his persecutors.

46. Thus Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham, mortal, but sinless, offered himself a natural, but not a sacerdotal sacrifice, for the sins of men; that he might be the Saviour of all men, especially

of those that believe; of all, from inherited death. And of those who believe and obey the Gospel, in the likeness of God, and the life everlasting; not because God was angry and demanded a victim, but because no other means could bring man into a condition to partipate of true happiness.

47. Among the means appointed to draw men unto righteousness, inspire them with the same divine benevolence, and with due gratitude to him, was a partaking of this sacrifice, as a sacerdotal offering.

48. Hence, he said to his disciples, "Except ye eat the flesh of the Son of Man, and drink his blood, ye have no life in you." (*John 6:53*). And when the Eucharistic bread and wine are to be ate and drank, they are first consecrated the flesh and blood of Christ, and offered up, and then a feast made upon them, as a feast upon a sacrifice. Such is the actual sacrifice for the sins of men, made once; of which the Eucharistic offering, made ever, is a lively symbol.

Chapter 15

Marriage

I

1. A betrothal confers the general rights and obligations of marriage, but ought to be acted on as a marriage only when the authority to seal is not accessible. Then the marriage must be celebrated at the earliest opportunity.

Chapter 16

Healing

I

1. An error has got afloat, that if anyone has the gift of healing, he can heal whosoever he will, and that a failure to heal in any instance is evidence of the lack of that gift. With this, commonly prevails the further error that the chief object of healing and of all other miraculous gifts is to convince unbelievers.

2. The healing of the sick is a gift for the benefit of believers, and unbelief alone is sufficient to defeat its operation (*Matt. 8:58, Mark 6:5-6*). And those who have the gift are not sent to all the sick, but only such as the spirit will (*Luke 4:27*). The gift is spiritual, not personal.

3. When the sick receives the ministration of the Elders, no ostentatious display ought to be made. And if any unbelievers are present, they ought first to be removed, especially if they are numerous. Such was always the rule.

4. Not unfrequently, unbelievers say: If they could see the sick healed, or any other miraculous work, they should be convinced, and embrace the faith. But this is not true. All experience shows that the exercise of miraculous gifts induces persecution, rather than faith (*John 11:53:54, 5:15; 16; Matt. 9:34; Ex. 10:28; 1 Kings 18:38, 19:10*).

5. Some thousand healings have occurred in the United States

and Great Britain, in the midst of Gentile communities, where the infirmities and the healings were well known to them, and never questioned in the neighborhoods in which they occurred. And it is not known that they have all been the means of bringing one person into the faith.

6. The fact that the Saints, in their own families, generally call for the Elders, and very seldom for a physician, in case of sickness; and all agree that the ministration of the Elders is attended with the best effects, is conclusive; for they cannot deceive themselves, and can have no inducement to practice a self-delusion. The administration of the Elders does not forbid, though it generally supersedes all medicinal remedies.

Chapter 17

Absolution

1. No power is here conferred on man, as such, to forgive sin, only to pronounce God's forgiveness of the truly penitent.

Chapter 18

Ordination

I

1. The Scriptures, in all their parts, show very clearly that no one can lawfully exercise any Priestly office, except he is duly called and duly consecrated to that particular Priesthood. Though many Priests are spoken of, and nothing said of the manner in which they were inducted into the Priesthood. As often as that manner is mentioned, it is shown to be a calling by the word of God, and a setting apart by the hands of those who hold the same or superior power. This has been the uniform rule in every dispensation, whatever the nature or

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

duties of the Priesthood or calling. Kings were called by revelation, anointed, and ordained; and those not so called were deemed usurpers.

2. No instance is given in the oracles of God of men, for want of a valid Priesthood, selecting one among themselves, and elevating him to be their Priest, and thus conferring on him a true Priesthood. On the contrary, God has instituted a Priesthood by direct revelation, and the ministration of Angels, as often as the Priesthood, or the superior grade of it, was lost on earth.

Ordination by Angels

1. In the general infidelity of the times, the doctrine of Angelic ordinations strikes the ear as a discarded old superstition. Though the half-converted disciples of Joseph assented to that truth in his case, it was with such a savor of unwilling faith as would not believe that the like would ever again occur. So unwilling are men to believe that God works now, as he did in the ages past.

2. Jesus commenced his ministry after John the Baptist, the forerunner or porter, opened the door of that dispensation; being inducted into the Church by baptism, and the Priesthood by a call by the voice of God, and by the ministration of an Angel.

3. But this was not his final ordination. Of the transfiguration, little is said. But it is a blind view of the record which terminates the mystery, with the appearance of Moses and Elijah (*Matt. 27:3-4*). After the first admiration of their appearing was so far passed that Peter proposed building Tabernacles for them, a bright cloud overshadowed them, and a voice from out the cloud declared him his “beloved son,” and commanded the Apostles to hear him; that is, to be obedient unto him (*Matt. 27:5*).

4. Speaking of this, Peter says, we have not followed cunningly devised fables, but were eyewitnesses of the majesty of Jesus Christ; for he received from God, honor and glory; and there came a voice to him from the excellent glory, saying, “This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased (*2 Pet. i, 16-18*). On another occasion, speaking of the manner in which majesty was conferred on him, Peter said, “Him hath God exalted with his right hand, to be a Prince and a Saviour” (*Acts 5:29-31*). Thus showing, in express words, that he was both called by the voice, and sent by the hand of God.

5. Moses was called by the voice of God (*Ex. 3:4, 10*), and sent by the hand of the Angel who appeared to him when God spoke from the flame (*Acts 7:35*). Joseph was likewise called by the voice of God (*Doctrines of the Saints 1:21-26; DaC 1:4 RLDS, 1:17-23 CJCLdS*) and sent by the hand of Angels. (*Doctrines of the Saints Sections 1, 2a, 5a, 5b; DaC 1, 17, 104 RLDS, 1, 20, 107 CJCLdS*) And in the same manner was James called and sent (*Epistles of the Saints, 9 Joseph*).

6. In the calling of Joseph, there was a necessity that he be called by the direct revelation of the word of God to himself; for there was no Prophet or Priest of God on earth, by whom God should speak and minister in calling and ordaining him to the Prophetic and Apostolic office. Consequently, God called him by his own voice, and sent Peter, James, and John to ordain him to the Priesthood because they, having been duly called and set apart and filled an acceptable ministry on earth, had entered into life, capable of ministering in heaven and on earth, as God should send them.

7. The necessity was equally strong that the successor of Joseph should be ordained by the hand of an Angel. He could not be ordained by any of the surviving Priesthood, because none were equal to Joseph in authority, and the less is blessed of the greater. Moreover, the keys of David, given him and his house forever, by the oath of God, had to be bestowed on the heir of David on earth, before the Kingdom could prevail and exercise dominion. They could only be bestowed by him who held them.

Chapter 19

Adoption

I

No notes for this chapter.

Chapter 20

Calling of a King

Note I—Kingdom of God

1. As clearly as the Scriptures show that God established the Kingdom of Israel, so clearly do they show that he will establish a universal Kingdom in the last days; for Daniel, after prophetically tracing the great national events down to the division of the Roman Empire into the modern European nations, says, “In the days of these Kings shall the God of heaven set up a Kingdom, which shall never be destroyed; but it shall break in pieces all these Kingdoms, and it shall stand forever” (*Dan. 2:44*). “And the Kingdom, and dominion, and the greatness of the Kingdom, under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people of the Saints of the Most High, whose Kingdom is an everlasting Kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey him” (*Dan. 7:27*).

2. Speaking of the King who shall rule in this Kingdom, David says: “They shall fear thee as long as sun and moon endure, throughout all generations... He shall have dominion from sea to sea, and from the river to the ends of the earth” (*Ps. 123:5, 8*).

3. To this many Prophets have borne witness; that, in the latter days, God would gather Israel again upon their own land, and establish them as an undivided Kingdom, and sanctify them unto himself, and be their God forever (*Ezek. 34:22-24, 37:21, 27; Jer. 30:9, 23:5-6, 33:15-26; Hos. 3:5; Isa. 55:3-5; Amos 4:11; Zech. 7:8*).

Note II—A Prophet of the Seed of Joseph

1. The prophecies which went before of old demonstrate that, in the latter times, a Prophet, a Chief Shepherd of the flock of God, should arise, of the seed of Joseph. Jacob called his sons together to bless them, and to tell them what should befall them in the last days (*Gen. 44:1*); and told them, from Joseph “is the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel” (*Gen. 44:24*). And Moses, in blessing the tribes of Israel, blessed Joseph with the “good will of him that dwelt in the bush” (*Deut. 33:16*), which we know, by the call of Moses, was the calling to be the Chief Shepherd of the flock of God (*Ex. 3:10*).

2. The Stick, or Book of Joseph, which Ezekiel saw, was in the hands of Ephraim (one of the tribes of the loins of Joseph), when God required that it be placed with the Stick, or Book of Judah, that the Book might be one in the hand of the Prophet, to the end that Israel be no more divided. As this Stick, or Book, stands for the word of God, it evidently is in the hands of a Prophet of that tribe, at the time alluded to (*Ezek. 37:16-20*).

3. Most clearly was this fact stated to Joseph of old, when God said to him, “A Seer will I raise up, out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins” (*2 Nephi 2:17 [3:11]*).

4. These prophecies were fulfilled in the Prophet Joseph, whom God called by his own voice to the Apostolic and Prophetic office, in 1829, and ordained to that calling by the hands of Peter, James, and John, who held that Priesthood in their times of life, and were sent expressly to confer it on him (*Doctrines of the Saints Sections 1 and 5a & b; DaC 1 and 104 RLDS, 1 and 107 CJCLdS*).

5. He organized the Church of God in 1830, and worked a faithful ministry of fifteen years, as a Prophet of the Most High God; translating the Book of Mormon, sending the Gospel to every nation and people where the English language is spoken, bringing two hundred thousand souls into the faith, and gathering together in his city seventeen thousand people, besides as many more in the surrounding country.

6. In the course of his life, he was prosecuted in the Courts of his enemies on more than forty criminal charges, always prejudged and foredoomed. Yet so inoffensive was his life, that on every one, except

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

the charge of unlawful banking, he was acquitted.

7. He was persecuted by the people of Ohio; his property confiscated, his disciples robbed and banished, himself imprisoned, and his life sought by the State of Missouri; and died a martyr, at the hands of the people of Illinois, in the jail at Carthage (where he was unlawfully thrust), the 27th day of June, 1844 .

8. On the public pledge of the faith of the State of Illinois, made by Governor Thomas Ford in person, and by a vote of the militia and militia officers, that he should have legal protection and a legal trial, he surrendered himself into the hands of his accusers, and was murdered in the presence of the officers having him in custody, crying, "O Lord, my God," and no one lifted a hand in his defense.

9. Two or three hundred persons were engaged in this deed of blood, and many thousands in abetting it. The perpetrators were well known (*Ford's History of Illinois*, pp. 353, 354). But no effort was ever made to bring them to punishment. On the contrary, to secure the guilty from being brought to punishment in some more healthy state of the public conscience, they were indicted, arraigned, and acquitted by a jury, and thus a legal bar interposed to any future prosecution for the same offence (*Ford's History of Illinois*, p. 368).

10. Thus was this Prophet murdered (in defiance of law, to be sure) by the highest authority in the State; and by every guaranty which the law can give, were his murderers perpetually secured against punishment. The State of Illinois can give no additional sanction to the deed. She could not, by any other form of action, have made herself more guilty of his martyrdom. His blood is on the State.

11. With him in persecution and in death, as well as in his ministry, was his brother Hyrum. The malignity of their foes did not cease with their deaths. Though most respectable historians have borne ample testimony to their many virtues, and those who were guilty of their death did not pretend to any legal justification, Christians everywhere, with here and there a solitary exception, are continually pouring out a deluge of falsehood on them, as though they had been overtaken in felony and slain in vindication of law.

Note III—Another Proppher of the House of David

1. Many prophecies in the Scriptures speak of a Prophet to arise in the last days of the lineage of David, which, by Christians, are understood as of Christ; though they can by no possibility be applied to him.

2. The Prophet Isaiah predicts the coming forth of a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch from his roots; that is, an heir of the covered or lost stock of the house of David, having the spirit of the Lord, and the spirit of wisdom, understanding, counsel, might, knowledge, and the fear of the Lord; who shall judge the poor with righteousness, and reprove with equity for the meek; who shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips slay the wicked (*Isa. 11:1-2, 4*).

3. In this reestablishment of the house of David, the mity of the wild and tame beasts is to come to an end. The knowledge of the Lord is to fill the earth. The tongue of the Egyptian Sea is to be destroyed. Israel are to pass over the seven mouths of the Nile dry shod, and to possess their own land, and be united as one nation forever (*Isa. 11:6-15*). Not one of these things has been fulfilled in Jesus Christ. The conquest of Moab and Ammon, the construction of highway, the governing of foreign nations, the setting up an ensign to the nations, and the gathering in of the Gentiles (*Isa. 51:10*) mark this as a ministry on earth, like that which Moses entered upon.

4. The Angel which appeared to Joseph, and revealed to him the Book of Mormon, told him this was about to be fulfilled (*Times and Seasons, April 15, 1842, p. 753*); but if could not be fulfilled in the person of Joseph, because he was not of the house of David, but of the tribe of Ephraim.

5. The covenant of God with David establishes in his house the royal authority forever (*Ps. 139:29, 36; 2 Sam. 7:13*). Though it contemplates the casting down of that authority, in consequence of the departure of his posterity from righteousness, yet David is assured that God will keep his mercy for his house forever, and will not reject his house as he did that of Saul (*2 Sam. 7:15-16; Ps. 139:33, 84*); and, consequently, that at the end of all these chastisements the house of David will be restored. Accordingly, the various prophecies of the restoration of

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

Israel promise also the reestablishment of the house of David in the royal authority.

6. But more especially the Book of Mormon shows that such a Prophet, of the tribe of Judah, must immediately succeed Joseph in the Prophetic office. For by that it appears that God said to Joseph, while in Egypt: “The fruit of thy loins shall write, and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines, and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days” (*2 Nephi 2:19-22 [3:12]*). To accomplish this, Joseph's successor was necessarily the heir of David. No other could succeed him.

Chapter 21

Duty of the King

I

1. Whoever is called Patriarch, without a dominion, is called a King, if he has dominion. Peter calls David a Patriarch using the words King and Patriarch as synonyms (*Acts 2:29*).

2. Abraham, though he never reigned as King, but only ruled as the Father of his people, in a country subject to various surrounding Kings, was yet mourned as a King at his death (*Jasher 26:30-31*). Numerous Kings attended his burial, and the nations around mourned him. Many of his grandsons became Nobles and Rulers of cities and nations (*Gen. 25:16, 34:15-19, 21, 29, 30; 1 Chron. 1:43, 51-54*); and their posterity were finally established as Kings (*Gen. 36:31*).

3. The Kingly office has often been merely an appendage of the Prophetic. When not possessed of a dominion, it can exercise no civil prerogative, except by voluntary submission.

Chapter 22

Abstinence of the King

I

1. In the time of Moses, the same individual was Apostle, Prophet, and King. So far as prerogative was concerned, none was before him, till at the transfiguration, when Jesus Christ received an ordination under the hand of God. But the people, being in a lowly condition, Moses practiced great moderation, abstaining from rearing a numerous family, that he might give himself to the service of his brethren; and instead of providing armor for the nation, he induced them to arm themselves, making private property supply the place of well-stored arsenals.

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

2. The nation, having become wealthy in the days of David and Solomon, they not only provided large armaments, which were in some degree burdensome to the people, but took so many wives that many of them were left to barrenness, which was an offence to God (*Jacob 2:33-47 [2:24-25]*).

3. But they were not forbidden to have more than one wife. For the Law existed long before David. Yet, though David had a number of wives before the overthrow of Saul, God gave him Saul's widows to his bosom and was willing to give him more (*2 Sam. 7:8*).

Chapter 23

*Viceroy*s

I

1. Under the Prophet Joseph, at the beginning of his ministry, was Oliver Cowdery (*Doctrines of the Saints 2a:4; DaC 17:1b2 RLDS, 20:20:3*). Most of his time he was aided by two such assistants. (*Doctrines of the Saints 11a:3-5, 78j:3; DaC 99:5, 107:39 RLDS, 102:3-4, 124:125*). But the office has not been steadily kept up, and from one to three persons have held it at the same time. It does not seem necessary to a complete organization, but to relieve the Chief Shepherd from duties which otherwise might be too onerous.

2. A Viceroy would be entitled to rule in the absence of the King without a special authority, or in case the King was disabled, provided he was associated with him in the general administration; and he is the only officer who can be sent to take authority over the twelve Apostles.

3. In the duties of his office, he is in all things subject to the King's Commandment. Though the King may give him such discretion as he thinks fit, he cannot dispense with this duty of obedience. To do so would be a severance of the Kingdom.

4. This office, like that of the King, is Apostolic and carries with it the prerogative of administering sacraments and preaching the Gospel in all places. But the Viceroy is expressly forbidden to make Laws. This prerogative belongs only to the conjoint Apostolic, Prophetic,

and Kingly office.

5. There were no Viceroys associated with the Kings of Israel and Judah, except occasionally during their minority. But the Prophets who were above them were frequently assisted by such associates. Elisha followed Elijah, and assisted him in the Prophetic office, and succeeded him.

Chapter 24

King's Council

I

1. In the mere ministry of the Church, there is so little for this Council to do that it is hardly necessary to keep it up. Prophets, who held no Kingdom, have seldom been assisted by more than one or two Counsellors, and sometimes by none. Even Kings, reigning over a small dominion, have not generally found it necessary or convenient to keep up a full Council, according to the pattern here given.

2. The Counsellors do not, by virtue of their office, have any particular authority. They are the King's advisers. But in dividing the administration of the government, the King would confer on them certain limited powers, in their nature merely executive, which they would exercise, subject to his continual supervision.

Chapter 25

King's Court

I

No notes for this chapter.

Chapter 26

City Court

I

No notes for this chapter.

Chapter 27

Municipalities

I

On Verse 1

1. It is intended that there shall be a Synagogue at every village, and an Elder appointed to rule therein. All the Elders residing in the same village should assist him, according to his call. The Priests, Deacons, and Teachers should act under his direction for the general order, each in his appropriate duty. He is the Ruler of the Synagogue, not merely of the Elders in it.

I

On Verse 2

1. To a town, five Elders should always be appointed to rule, though there may be but two Synagogues; and one to each Synagogue, though there may be more than five Synagogues. If there are less than five Synagogues, one Elder should be appointed to each, and the rest of the five without any special charge.

2. One of these Elders should be designated the Chief, and should preside in their assemblies, but each would have one vote in the transaction

of business. Each Elder having charge of a Synagogue would have the same authority over other Elders, Priests, Deacons, and Teachers in that Synagogue, as the Elder in the Synagogue of a village. But the Chief Elder of the town has a general charge over them all.

III

On Verses 3-5

1. There is to be a Bishop to govern every city. He will be the Bishop of a province if there is but one city in it. If there is more than one city in a province, then at the chief city an Archbishop must be appointed to govern the province, and a Bishop also at each other city to govern each his city.

2. The Bishop is Chief of all the Elders in his city, and in all the towns and villages belonging to it; the Archbishop in his, and also Chief of the Bishops of the province.

3. In conducting the affairs of their governments, Archbishops, Bishops, and Elders will require the assistance of various officers, who should be selected from the Priesthood under their authority.

Chapter 28

Twelve Apostles

I

1. The Priesthood of an Apostle is the highest in the Church of God. But in that Priesthood there are different ranks, of which the Twelve is the lower, the highest being that of the Chief Shepherd, whether he is designated a Prophet, an Apostle, or a King.

2. The Prophet presides over the whole Church, and the whole Priesthood; and hence in this dispensation has usually been called First President; and his two associates, or Viceroys, have been called members of the First Presidency, though in other ages they have oftenest all been called Kings, Patriarchs, or Prophets.

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

3. The distinction in their duties is chiefly this: that the First President is a Lawgiver, who teaches by revelation and commandment among all people, under the immediate direction of God, and assisted by the Viceroy, proclaims and executes the Law over all Priesthood, and among the children of God, at the places appointed for their dwelling. Whereas the twelve Apostles have no authority over the local administration at the gathering places, but have the keys of opening the Gospel to all nations, the government of the scattered Churches, and the general direction of the missions.

Chapter 29

High Priests

I

1. This order is sometimes called the High Priesthood, after the order of the Son of God. In the Bible, it is generally named the High Priesthood, after the order of Melchizedek. They who hold it are called Sons of God.

Chapter 30

Seventies

I

1. The Seventies hold no different Priesthood from the Elders. They have only a different mission, for which reason they are differently organized. They are under the immediate direction of the Twelve for the work of their ministry. But this jurisdiction of the Twelve extends only to their missions and the internal affairs of the Quorum.

2. Elders, capable of travelling, and able in expounding the word of God, should be selected by the Twelve for the Seventies and set apart to that ministry by the laying on of hands.

3. After they have worked a faithful ministry, they may be relieved from their duties as travelling Elders, and remitted to the duty of ruling and judging, and ministering in the Synagogue.

4. Though the Elders have the special duty of presiding, ruling, and ministering, and the Seventy of preaching the Gospel among the nations. Yet, while on their missions, the authority to preside belongs to the Seventy, rather than an Elder. If one of the Seventy builds up a church, any Elder coming into it would be under his direction. And he has power to ordain and appoint an Elder to preside after him.

Chapter 31

Elders

I

1. Those holding this Priesthood are called Elders, because age and experience are among the chief qualifications. It is the same as Aldermen, Senators, or Seigniors. Age is not indispensable.

2. The calling of an Elder is very honorable. So honorable is the title of Elder, that Apostles, Prophets, and High Priests frequently adopt it. Bishops may be chosen from among the Elders.

3. Their duties are principally in conducting the general internal affairs of the Kingdom, and ministering in spiritual things, and in judgment among the Saints. But they may be sent on missions, under the direction of the Twelve, and may be placed for the time being under the direction of the Bishops where they may be sent.

Chapter 32

Priests

I

1. The duties of the Priests are exceedingly varied. Like the Elders, they are liable to be detached and sent on missions to preach the Gospel and baptize for the remission of sins.

2. They are the regular Sacrificators. No one below them in the Priesthood is authorized to slay a victim as a sacrifice. And though those above them really have the authority, the duty so entirely pertains to the Priest that one ought always to be sent for, if anyone is at hand, whenever a sacrifice is offered.

3. Women may be ordained to this Priesthood, but they will not be authorized to kill sacrifices. Their duties would mainly consist in singing and instrumental music. The conducting of matters of music and dancing, and most mere ceremonies, and the keeping of Temples and Synagogues, belongs to the Priest's office. For all their varied duties, where they are numerous, they ought to be classed, and appropriate officers appointed.

Chapter 33

Teachers

I

1. The whole subject of public instruction of the young belongs to the Quorums of Teachers. They ought to teach every Sabbath day, at all the Synagogues, without charge. But, in addition to that, the establishing and conducting of schools depends on them. They ought always to furnish qualified Teachers for all schools.

Chapter 34

Deacons

I

1. There is a quorum of Deacons to every city, including the towns and villages nearby. But wherever there is a prison, a Court, or any institution requiring several Deacons, one may be their Chief, and others officers, as good order requires

Chapter 35

Establishment of the Law

I

1. The pseudo philanthropy of the present time rejects the destruction of the wicked as one of the means of establishing righteousness. With some, philanthropy has got so far in advance of Godliness as to seek, pray for, and expect the salvation, everlasting life, and unalloyed happiness of those who delight in sin, and take no pleasure in righteousness; believing that, in some mysterious way, God can make those happy whose chief delight is in wickedness.

2. But the common sentiment in Christian countries is that irreligious and wicked men and nations ought not to be destroyed; and that the most corrupt and abject races and men have the same right to live and to exercise government as the most Godlike.

3. With Christian men, this sentiment is entertained, with diverse exceptions. They have little repugnance to the killing of those who keep the Commandments of God. They are quite satisfied that the destruction of the Canaanites was really by the Commandment of God, but as certain that He will never command the destruction of any other corrupt nation.

4. The destruction of the Canaanites by the Commandment of God

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

can only be justified on good and cogent reasons. It is not enough that they were creatures of God, made by Him, and that therefore He had the right to destroy them. They were living, conscious beings, having a right to the life to which they were born, till they diminished it by violating the laws of life, or forfeited the right by conduct as rendered their existence dangerous to better men.

5. The right to destroy the life of any man grows out of such conduct as renders his existence on the whole, a curse; and not in any capricious idea of absolute power. And the same rule applies to the extermination of races.

6. The old world was destroyed by the flood, in consequence of universal corruption. Not merely corruption of manners, but hereditary corruption of the flesh (*Jasher 4:16-18, Gen. 6:5*). Sodom and the cities of the plain were destroyed for a similar reason (*Gen. 18:20-21, 26, 32; 19:4-5, 9*).

7. In the long list of crimes recorded against Sodom, as the guilty cause of its utter destruction, the first is the custom of the whole population going out four times a year to a certain valley, with music and dancing; when every man seized whatsoever woman he would, and they all enjoyed the wives and daughters of their neighbors in their sight, and no man objected a word (*Jasher 18:13-15*); a custom which has its counterpart in the Free Love societies of the present day. The natural consequence of this want of chastity was that bestiality, which has given the name of Sodom to the most loathsome of all human crimes.

8. Of a different character was another of their cherished customs; that of confiscating the goods of such strangers as unfortunately fell into their hands, and distributing them among themselves, and pretending to receive each man's share as a gift (*Jasher 18:16-17*).

9. But the fountains of justice were equally corrupted, so that the chief business of the Judges was to go through the necessary forms to give legal validity to acts of fraud and violence (*Jasher 19*), much as many Judges and nearly all Attorneys occupy their time nowadays in Christian cities.

10. Thus, corruption and wickedness pervaded society in all conditions and prevailed in every act of men. There was no purity, no truth, as a foundation for reform. Every successive generation was raised up to incurable corruption and wickedness.

11. The end of such a people could be nothing but overwhelming

destruction and utter extermination. The only possible object in prolonging their decay was to contaminate the surrounding nations and bring them eventually to the same end. The destruction of Sodom was mercy to the human race.

12. The case of the nations of Canaan was like it. Corruptions similar to those of Sodom were national characteristics. They had doomed themselves to extermination, just as various races and nations have since done. To them, the judgment of God was but a matter of time. To other nations, it was a matter of defense from contagion.

13. But in the case of the Canaanites there was an especial mercy in the Law which preserved the female children alive and gave them for wives to the conquerors.

14. An important purpose, to be kept in view, in a wise administration of national affairs, is the increase of population. This increase does not depend on the number of the men, but of the women. For, with polygamy, it is apparent that a given number of women will produce the same number of children, whether the men are many or few.

15. According to the Commandment under which most of the land of Canaan was overrun, all the virgin females were kept as wives to the men of Israel. These were taken into Hebrew families and educated in their institutions. They became the wives of a brave and prevailing race of men, who would suffer no relapse into the customs of their country.

16. By the natural operation of the law of hybridity, the children of such crosses partake most of the blood of the prevailing race, and a few generations, under proper management, where one race continually rules with a uniform and rigid system, will obliterate all signs of the subjugated race, with scarcely any, perhaps no, diminution of the human race.

17. Thus, in the conquest of Canaan, if the whole work had been accomplished according to the Command of God, the next generation would have exhibited about the same number of children of Canaanite maternity, but they would have been Israelites, instead of Canaanites. As corruption generally begins with men, and but slowly extends to women, these women would have raised a righteous seed, who, educated as Israelites, would have been very little inferior to the pure bloods.

18. The activity and energy developed in these great undertakings, would have made the whole race superior to what the Israelites

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

were in the beginning. As it was, the land was not depopulated, but its population greatly increased, and the Israelite stock not in any degree deteriorated by the mixture.

19. At the present time, several nations and some large races have come to a point in corruption where they are incapable of keeping themselves up. Without invasions or the impinging of any external force against them, they are slowly disappearing from the earth, and making steady strides to a certain extermination

20. Among the converted or Christian Kanackers, the evil is past remedy. The vices introduced and sown broadcast among them by Christian residents and sailors have taken such deadly effect that the women are generally barren. The population is diminishing several thousand annually. The Sandwich Islands, which, when first visited by Christian Missionaries, contained a half million of these people, have not now sixty thousand.

21. Several nations of old Christian stock are going in the same way. If left to themselves, they will disappear from the earth. In their prolonged decay, they may contaminate many others. It would be a mercy could they be overrun by a righteous race, and the women children alone preserved, and made wives to men of moral and healthy habits.

22. The whole course of prophecy indicates that the nations of the earth will not be converted to Godliness; but that they will increase in wickedness and be destroyed. The day has not yet come, but is in the future, which "shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble," and shall be burnt up, leaving neither root nor branch; when they that fear the Lord shall tread down the wicked, as ashes beneath their feet (*Mal. 4:1-3*).

23. Paul assures us that the coming of Christ shall be "in flaming fire, taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the Gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ; who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord" (*2 Thess. 1:8-9*). Isaiah says, "The earth shall be made empty, and few men left" (*Isa. 24:1, 3, 6*). Those days are days of vengeance, when Christ shall tread the wine press of the wrath of God, and the blood shall flow unto the horses' bridles (*Rev. 14:20*). As those times are approaching, the judgment is pronounced on Babylon, "Reward her as she hath rewarded you, and double unto her double, according to her works" (*Rev. 18:6*). Then shall the Saints execute vengeance on the heathen (*Ps. 149:6-7*).

Chapter 36

Priesthood

I

On Verse 1: Priesthood of an Endless Life

1. The Priesthood of an Endless Life is commonly called the Melchizedek Priesthood, or the Priesthood after the order of Melchizedek, in honor of Melchizedek, who blessed Abraham, and received tithes of him. Before his time, it was called the Priesthood of the Sons of God, because those who hold this Priesthood are Sons of God.

II

On Verses 2-4: Apostle, Prophet, Seer, Revelator, and Translator

1. There is no word in language which properly expresses the varied duties of this Priesthood. It is the greatness of the Everlasting Priesthood, and it has all the gifts and all the keys conferred on man. It is so full of itself that it carries the Church of God with it and can both institute and act in place of every other Priesthood.

2. This Degree is only necessary for the establishment of the rest of God and bringing in of everlasting righteousness on earth. A less degree of Priesthood has frequently stood at the head of the people of God on earth.

3. Enoch was called to this Priesthood and, being faithful himself, but failing to redeem the earth, was translated (*Gen. 5:24*). And it seems that many who followed him were translated with him (*Jasher 3:27-38; Doctrines of the Saints 53b:1, DaC 85:5 RLDS, 881:CJCLdS*).

4. Moses was called to the same Priesthood, and down to the time of receiving the Law of the Tables was engaged in the great work of making Israel a holy nation, a peculiar treasure above all people, a Kingdom of Priests (*Ex. 29:5-6*). By this superior Priesthood, he was entitled to know the incommunicable name of God, which even Abraham did not know (*Ex. 6:3*).

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

5. As the Israelites turned from God to calf worship, they were cut off from the rest of God, and were only saved from an entire destruction by coming into an inferior dispensation, on the intercession of Moses (*Ex. 32:7-14, 31-35*).

6. Hence, on the removal of Moses from his earthly ministry, this holy Priesthood was taken away with him (*Doctrines of the Saints 5c:11-16; DaC 83:4 RLDS, 84:23-27 CJCLdS*), and only a portion of the honor of Moses was put on Joshua, who succeeded him in the government of Israel (*Num. 27:18- 20*).

7. Jesus Christ held this Priesthood, and was succeeded successively by Peter, James, and John. John was the last Revelator in that dispensation. It is apparent that their authority was not equal to that held by him, though they held the keys of mysteries and revelations. For after his time no attempt appears to have been made to restore the Kingdom to Israel. Indeed, they were not of the proper lineage to bring about the restoration, not inheriting the promises.

8. The present dispensation was the necessary sequence of that, as that was of the preceding. Not only had the prophecy gone before that the Shepherd and Stone of Israel should come of Joseph (*Gen. 49:24, Ante p. 172. Note ii*), but that the house of David should be reestablished on the throne of Israel. (*Ezek. 34:22-24, 37:21, 27; Jer. 22:5-6, 30:9, 33:15-26; Hos. 3:5; Isa. 55:3-5; Amos 9:11; Zech. 12:8*).

9. In the last dispensation, the work of the gathering of the faithful and establishing the Kingdom of God could only be accomplished by the heir of David (*Ante p. 175. Note iii*). This was not only secured to David by God's covenant with him, but it was sealed to the tribe of Judah by Jacob (*Gen 49:8-10*).

10. An objection is sometimes made to a dispensation of the Kingdom, and the Law of God in the last days, because of the saying, "in time ye shall have no King, nor ruler; for I will be your King and watch over you; and ye shall have no Laws, but my Laws, when I come, for I am your Lawgiver" (*Doctrines of the Saints 53b:27-31; 85:5 RLDS, 88:21-24 CJCLdS*). So far from showing that a dispensation of the Law of God will not be given, this text expressly shows that it will, and that none will have power to administer the Law, but such as are sent in the name of Christ; and that his Law shall so far prevail, that when the time of his coming arrives, his people will be subject to no Law but his.

11. Jacob began his blessing on Judah by saying, "Thou art he whom

thy brethren shall praise. Thy hand shall be in the neck of thine enemies. Thy father's children shall bow down before thee" (*Gen. 49:8*). His dominion over the heathen is signified by having his hand in their necks. Over his brethren, by their bowing down before him. And the reason of this superiority is in that superior adhesion to the covenants of God, which secured the praise of his brethren.

12. Lest Judah should mistake the import of this language, and commence immediately to rule his brethren, in derogation of the power which Joseph held by revelation (*Gen. 37:5-10*), he next distinguished him as a lion's whelp; that is, an heir of royalty, though strong as a lion, the true symbol of royalty (*Gen. 49:9*).

13. But fixing with greater exactness what was already stated, that he was speaking of what should befall Israel "in the last day" (*Gen. 49:1*), Jacob goes on to say, "The scepter shall not depart from Judah, nor a Lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and unto him shall the gathering of the people be"^a (*Gen. 49:10*).

14. This language has evident reference to the birth of a Lawgiver, of the line of Judah, and not to the loss of the scepter by the house of David. The style of speech aptly describes a birth, and its appropriate office is to inform Judah that though he was to hold the Kingly office, it was not till the last days.

15. With this interpretation agrees all sacred history. Within a few generations, Moses was raised up a Lawgiver, though of the tribe of Levi, and was succeeded in the leadership of Israel by Joshua, of the tribe of Ephraim (*Num. 8:8*).

16. Among the Rulers of Israel after him were Tola of the tribe of Issachar (*Jud. 10:1*), Elon of the tribe of Zebulun (*Jud. 7:11*), Samson of the tribe of Dan (*Jud. 13:2, 24, 15:20*), Eli of the tribe of Levi (*1 Sam. 2:27-28*), and when a King was called, it was Saul of the tribe of Ephraim (*1 Sam. 10:1*).

17. And though after Saul, David, of the tribe of Judah, became King, and the Kingdom remained in his family for many generations, they were none of them made Lawgivers. In David and in his house, the Lawgiver did not come forth of the thigh, nor between the feet of Judah. All the Kings of that line, not excepting David and Solomon, were subject to Prophets, whom God set up above them in power. The Prophets could set up and drag down Kings and command them

^{13a} In the Douay this verse reads, "The scepter shall not be taken away from Judah, nor a Lawgiver from his thigh, till he come that is to be sent; and he shall be the expectation of the nations."

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

in their outgoings and incomings (*1 San. 10:1, 15:1-3, 22-23, 28, 16:13; 2 Sam. 12:1, 7, 9, 10; 1 Kings 1:38-39, 12:22-24, 19:15-16, 21:20-22*).

18. On the conquest of Judea by the King of Babylon, the dynasty of David ceased, and was not restored at the end of the captivity, nor at any time previous to the coming of Christ. The Esdraic Temple was built under Persian Governors, selected without respect to their lineage. The Asmonean Kings were of the tribe of Levi (*1 Mac. 2:54*). Herod was of Gentile stock.

19. Consequently, if this prophecy of Jacob be understood as speaking of the overthrow of the regal power in Judah, it took place several centuries before the coming of Christ.

20. But aside from that difficulty in the Christian exegesis, the gathering of the people was not to Christ. During the whole period of his ministry, Israel was subject to Gentile rule. He had very few followers among the Jews, and none among the Gentiles. The Gospel did not go to the Gentiles till after His death. He had the Priesthood of a Lawgiver, but no people to rule, for none gathered to Him. He came to his own, and they received him not.

21. In the last days Joseph Smith, of the tribe of Ephraim, was called to the Prophetic office, the Shepherd and Stone of Israel, according to the prophecy of Jacob (*Gen. 49:24*); and after him James of the tribe of Judah and of the lineage of David, was called according to the prophecy of Jacob (*Gen. 49:10*), the prediction of Joseph in Egypt, (*2 Nephi 2:25-31 [3:14-16]*), and the covenant of God with David, (*2 Sam. 7:12, 15-16; Ps. 89:19-20, 25, 27-29, 36-37*), and stands in the office of Lawgiver, having translated most of the Law given to Moses, organized and established the Kingdom of God, and established the Law of God in it.

III

On Verse 5: Viceroy

1. As Viceroy, this Priesthood is capable of ruling in place of a Lawgiver in matters of administration and judgment. If there was an interregnum in the Priesthood of Lawgiver, the oldest Apostle of this Degree, associated in the administration, or if none was associated, then the oldest in fact would stand at the head till the place was filled.

2. Joshua succeeded Moses under this rule, having been ordained

to only a part of Moses' authority (*Num. 27:18-23, Josh. 1:1-2*). By that example, Sidney Rigdon had a just claim as against Brigham Young to stand at the head, after the martyrdom of the Prophet Joseph Smith Jr. and his Counsellor Hyrum Smith. The only reason his claim was not absolutely valid was that a successor was duly appointed and ordained.

3. Like nearly every man who sets up a false pretense to the Priesthood, he did not long rest upon this strong position; but, without waiting for the true successor to set up his claim, pretended to have obtained the most holy Priesthood by some new mode not known to the Law of God, and so fell.

IV

On Verse 6: Ambassador

1. The Apostles have the duty chiefly of preaching the Gospel in all places where it has not gone. When all the world is brought into the faith, they will be the chief representatives of the supreme authority, to be sent to all places to preside in Conferences, Councils, and General Assemblies, and to conduct the affairs of government in all great matters. As the representatives of the Lawgiver, they will exercise royal prerogatives in the great divisions of the earth.

2. The Degree of an Ambassador is more honorable than that of the Kings of the earth; for these Ambassadors speak by authority, and Kings, who do not obey them, will be cast down.

3. But high as is the Priesthood conferred on them, they have no right to stand in the place of the Lawgiver. They cannot fill the place of Prophet, Seer, Revelator, and Translator. They have not the keys of mysteries and revelations (*Doctrines of the Saints 20a:9-12, 2b:1-9, 15a:3-4, 8j:3, 7j:7; DaC 23:4, 43:1-2, 26:2, 107:39 RLDS, 24:7-9, 43:1-7, 27:3-4, 124:125 CJCLdS*).

4. It does not appear by the Scriptures that before the time of Jesus Christ, this Quorum existed. In Moses' time, twelve were appointed to go and look out the land of Canaan, but their office was but for a short period. There seems to have been no official work for this Priesthood till the Gospel was sent to the nations.

5. After the time of Jesus, the conducting of the affairs of the Saints remained in the hands of those who were of the Twelve during his time, and many have, therefore, imagined that the Twelve stood at the

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

supreme head of the Church. This is an error. Peter was raised out of the Quorum of the Twelve to the Presidency of the Church.

6. The intention to do so was announced previously to the transfiguration. Jesus said to Peter alone, "I will give unto thee the keys of the Kingdom of heaven; and whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth, shall be bound in heaven; and whatsoever thou shalt loose on earth, shall be loosed in heaven" (*Matt. 16:19*). To Peter alone, Jesus, after the resurrection, said: "Feed my lambs; feed my sheep" (*John 21:15-17*); signifying that he was to give the words of life, not only to believers, but to preachers.

7. And it is evident that Peter was, in fact, taken out of the Twelve. The apostacy of Judas made but a single vacancy in the Twelve, and that was filled by Matthias (*Acts 1:21-26*). Yet without the removal of any other of the Apostles, Paul was very soon called to the Apostleship, and Peter took the general supervision of all the affairs of the Church.

8. Hence, Peter, as the general head of the Church, addressed his epistles to the believers throughout the earth; whereas, Paul, as one of the Twelve, addressed his to those Churches in his jurisdiction.

9. John, also, after Peter's time, acted as Revelator to the Church, giving them the word of God to guide them in the ages to come; and also wrote a general epistle to guide the fathers of the faith, as well as new disciples. (*1 John 2:12-14*).

10. In the present dispensation, twelve Apostles were called and ordained to this ministry. (*Doctrines of the Saints 25:44-63, DaC 16:5-6 RLDS, 18:26-36 CJCLdS*). In 1837, a great falling away took place at Kirtland, and the Twelve assumed authority in governing the Church, in derogation of the right of Joseph the Prophet. But God rebuked them, saying, "Rebel not against my servant Joseph, for, verily I say unto you, I am with him, and my hand shall be over him. See to it that ye trouble not yourselves concerning the affairs of my Church in this place, but purify your hearts before me, and then go ye into all the world and preach my Gospel unto every creature; for unto you (the Twelve) and those (the First Presidency) who are appointed with you to be your counsellors and your leaders is the power of this Priesthood given, for the last days, and for the last times" (*Doctrines of the Saints 12b:15-22, DaC 105:6-7 RLDS, 112:114-20 CJCLdS*).

11. Notwithstanding this, at the death of Joseph, Brigham Young claimed, in behalf of the Twelve, to supersede the entire First Presidency and stand at the head of the Church; urging upon the Saints that such was the true order, and that the Twelve had not been suffered to fill

their proper place during the life time of Joseph^a; and in this claim was sustained by an immense meeting of the Saints, hurriedly assembled together at Nauvoo, the 8th of August, 1841.

12. One week later, Brigham put forth an epistle^a to the whole Church, vindicating this claim, and it was generally acceded to in the Church. A very few followed the Prophet James, and as the Twelve could not stand against the arguments presented by his followers, they finally changed their position, acknowledged their former error, and attempted to patch it up by electing Brigham Young First President, and H. C. Kimball and Willard Richards Counsellors, which they accomplished at Winter Quarters, Dec. 24th, 1847.

13. This did not help their case in the least; for the same Law which placed the Twelve under the direction of the First President, made it necessary that the successor of Joseph should be appointed by revelation of God, through him, (*Doctrines of the Saints 23a:18-23, 2b:19, 22a:6, 2b:3-5; DaC 34:4, 43:1-2, 27:2, 87:2 RLDS, 35:13-18, 43:1-7, 28:2, 90:3-5 CJCLdS*), and that he should be ordained by an Angel (*Doctrines of the Saints 2b:4-9 compared with 1-17, DaC 87:2 compared with 1-3 RLDS, 90:4-7 compared with 1-14 CJCLdS; Ante p. 165. Note. Ordination by Angels*). They only succeeded in bringing Brigham Young into the Prophetic office by a revelation of the will of

11a President Young then proceeded to speak and give his views of the present situation of the Church, now that the Prophet and Patriarch were taken from our midst by the wickedness of our enemies. For the first time since he became a member of the Church, a servant of God, a messenger to the nations in the nineteenth century; for the first time in the Kingdom of God, the twelve Apostles of the Lamb, chosen by revelation, in this last dispensation of the Gospel for the winding up scene, present themselves before the Saints to stand in their lot, according to appointment. While the Prophet lived, we all walked by sight; he is taken from us, and we must now walk by faith. After he had explained matters so satisfactorily that every Saint could see that Elijah's mantle had truly fallen upon the Twelve, he asked the Saints what they wanted. Do you want a guardian, a Prophet, a spokesman, or what do you want? If you want any of these officers, signify it by raising the right hand. Not a hand was raised.

12a AN EPISTLE OF THE TWELVE. TO THE CHURCH OF JESUS CHRIST OF LATTER DAY SAINTS, IN NAUVOO AND ALL THE WORLD—GREETING

BELOVED BRETIREN: You are now without a Prophet present with you in the flesh to guide you; but you are not without Apostles, who hold the keys of power to seal on earth that which shall be sealed in heaven, and to preside over all the affairs of the Church in all the world; being still under the direction of the same God, and being dictated by the same spirit, having the same manifestations of the Holy Ghost, to dictate all the affairs of the Church in all the world, to build up the Kingdom upon the foundation that the Prophet Joseph has laid, who still holds the keys of this last dispensation, and will hold them to all eternity, as a King and Priest to the Most High God, ministering in heaven, on earth, or among the spirits of the departed dead, as seemeth good to him who sent him. Let no man presume for a moment that his place will be filled by another; for, remember, he stands in his own place, and always will; and the twelve Apostles of this dispensation stand in their own place and always will, both in time and in eternity, to minister, preside, and regulate the affairs of the whole Church. —BRIGHAM YOUNG, President of the Twelve; Nauvoo, August 15th, 1844 *Times and Seasons*

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

man, and no ordination at all.

14. At the same time, James stood in this Priesthood; the heir of David, duly called by revelation of God to be a Lawgiver, an Apostle, and a Prophet of the Most High God, ordained by the highest instituted power in heaven or on earth.

15. Nine days before his martyrdom, Joseph received and wrote a revelation containing this calling and put it in the confidential archives of the Church. At the same time, he sent the appointment to James in a letter. At the very moment of Joseph's death, he was ordained according to the Law of God and has from that time filled the office. Only two of the Twelve, John E. Page and William Smith, acknowledged his calling, and the others being tried and condemned, their places were filled.

V

On Verse 7: Evangelist

1. The general duties of Evangelists are the same as those of the Twelve. But their mission is only to a single nation. Very few have been sent, and a Quorum has never been organized in this dispensation.

VI

On Verses 8-9: High Priest

1. All inferior Kings, Patriarchs, or heads of tribes, and Nobles, or heads of clans ought to be of this Priesthood. They who are faithful in the calling have the gift of prophecy. Hence, High Priests are frequently spoken of under the name of Prophets.

VII

On Verse 10: Elder

1. In degree of Priesthood, the Seventies are the same as Elders. They have a different mission, and are therefore classed separately,

and placed in different Quorums, with a different discipline.

VIII

On Verse 11: Priesthood of Life

1. The Priesthood of Life is commonly called the Aaronic Priesthood, after Aaron, who, with his family, in their generations, held that Priesthood to the exclusion of the rest of Israel, from the time of Moses until Jesus Christ.

2. This honor was bestowed upon the tribe of Levi, for having stood firm against the rest of Israel while Moses was in the Mount receiving the Ten Commandments and slaying with the sword those who engaged in idolatry. And they became Priests to the other tribes; whereas, but for the falling away, all Israel would have been Priests to the rest of the nations of the earth. When the Gospel went to other nations, the restriction of this Priesthood to one tribe ceased.

3. From the Biblical history, it would seem strange that Aaron, who made the calf, should have been placed at the head of this Priesthood. But, in truth, he was compelled, on pain of death, to make it (*Jasher* 82:13, 14). Aaron had, in fact, induced those worshipping the calf to put off their armor (*Ex.* 32:25), so that when Moses called for those who were on the Lord's side to take up the sword and slay the idolaters, the tribe of Levi alone were found armed, and made a great slaughter of the other tribes. Aaron, instead of being guilty of idolatry, took the most efficient means of making a full end of it (*Ex.* 32:26-28).

4. Aaron, therefore, by his personal conduct, was worthy to stand at the head of this Priesthood, according to his rank as the Chief, or Prince of the tribe of Levi. This right never extended beyond the Tabernacle, and the Temple at Jerusalem, and the ordinances and ceremonies connected therewith.

IX

On Verse 12: Priest

1. In the Bible, the Chief Priest of the Temple is called High Priest, and

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

those next to him Chief Priests; but such a translation does violence to the truth, because a Priest might be high in the Priesthood, and not Chief; but Chief is evidently above all.

X

On Verse 13: Courses

1. Until Temples are completed, the principal Courses will be Sacrificators and Singers. After that, other Courses will be necessary.

2. As women may be Priests, of the Course of Singers, so it is not unlawful that a woman should be Leader. And in the Synagogues, it may often be expedient to appoint a woman Leader of the Singers.

XI

On Verse 14: Teachers

1. This Priesthood, in all its Degrees, may be conferred on women, as well as men; and ought to be conferred on the learned, who aid in improving the public mind, though not professional Teachers.

Note I—Necessity of the Priesthood

1. Men never institute a Law without officers to be the keepers, expounders, and administrators of that Law. Should they do so, the endless questions of interpretation arising in practice would nullify the Law.

2. When God revealed his Law to men, He instituted a Priesthood and set it in order, to be the keepers, the expounders, and the administrators of His Law. Hence the saying, “No prophecy of Scripture is of any private interpretation” (*2 Pet. 1:20*).

3. Without such a Priesthood, qualified to truly expound the word of God, the Scriptures would be wrested by those who do not understand them, to their own destruction (*1 Cor. 2:16, 2 Pet. 3:16*). The instructions of the authorized Priesthood should be received as an interpretation of the Law, and as obligatory on the faithful (*Deut. 18:15, 18-19, 32:7; Acts 3:22-23; 1 Cor. 11:2; 2 Thess. 2:15, 3:6; 2 Tim. 1:13, 2:2, 3:14*).

4. If anyone had for a moment imagined that it would be consistent and wise in God to institute a Law among men, without also instituting a body of men to keep, expound, and administer that Law, the result of the experiment, which has been tried with the Bible, ought to brush away all such imaginings.

5. So poorly has the Bible been kept, that it is in dispute among the learned, whether numerous Books in it ought not to be expunged; and equally in dispute whether numerous Books, not contained in it, ought not to be inserted. The leading question of this nature is, as to the Books which, in Protestant Bibles, are called the Apocrypha. But great numbers of learned Christians entirely discard the Books of Ruth, Esther, Canticles, and Daniel, and not a few Jude and Revelations. On the other hand, many allow the Book of Jasher, and several later works which have been gathered up and published under the name of the Apocrypha of the New Testament.

6. Aside from these questions as to what Books are entitled to a place in the Christian Bibles, there are other questions equally grave as to what is contained in the Books. More than thirty thousand variations occur in the different exemplars of the Scriptures, without any means whatever of determining which is the right reading. Though many of these variations are of trifling moment, great numbers of

them go to the sense of the reading, and some have a direct bearing on the most difficult questions of doctrine. Several of the most important controversies in the Christian world turn upon passages of disputed validity and would be decided in a moment by erasing the alleged forgeries.

7. Surely these facts are enough to show that there ought to be an authorized keeper of the Law, having power to determine what is Law, and what are interpolations. But on the interpretation, it is enough to know that more than five hundred various Christian Churches have grown up, differing in faith and discipline, all professing to conform to the Bible, and each justifying its difference by its interpretation of the same word.

8. For the rest, if it be true “that the Law is not made for a righteous man, but for the lawless and disobedient; for the ungodly, and for sinners; for unholy, and profane; for murderers of fathers, and murderers of mothers; for manslayers; for whoremongers; for them that defile themselves with mankind; for manstealers; for liars; for perjured persons;” and for things contrary to sound doctrine (*1 Tim. 1:9-10*), then it is necessary that there be administrators of the Law of God with power to punish the disobedient and rebellious.

9. For such persons will not yield, except by compulsion, to a righteous Law. The inducement of good order and general peace and happiness is not sufficient to restrain them. They will not be governed by precepts, but only by the mandate which says, Thou shalt, and thou shalt not, and compels obedience by penalties, as well as induces it by rewards. To make a Law for such men, without officers to enforce it, would be vain folly. And the fact that God's Law is against such should admonish all that it is to be enforced by rewards and punishments, as well as inculcated by precept.

Note II—Loss of the Priesthood

1. It clearly appears from the old Scriptures, as well as the recent revelations, that no one can act in the name of God; that is, no man can act in the Priesthood, but he that is called by revelation of God, and ordained by the hands of those holding the Priesthood (*Ante i, 2, pp. 20-21*).

2. Thus, the call of Joshua was revealed to Moses by the word of God, and he was ordained under Moses' hand (*Num. 27:18-23, Deut. 34:9*). Aaron also was called by direct revelation (*Ex. 28:1*), and was consecrated by Moses, by most august ceremonies. Paul, speaking on this subject, says: "No man taketh this honor unto himself, but he that is called of God, as was Aaron" (*Heb. 5:4*). So all-pervading did he regard this rule, that he goes on to show that Jesus Christ himself did not assume the Priesthood, but was elevated to it in conformity with this rule.

3. The Apostles practiced by this rule and held that only by it could a qualified Priesthood be obtained. Paul, in exhorting Timothy, says: "Neglect not the gift that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the Presbytery^a" (*1 Tim. 4:14*). Thus, the gifts necessary to a faithful and successful ministry are supposed to be conferred with the Priesthood, in the manner determined by the Law of God.

4. This being the rule in God's Law, it is a matter of unquestionable fact, established by all history, that all Christendom is destitute of the Priesthood. There is not a single one of all the Christian Churches which makes the slightest pretension to having a Priesthood, so-called, and ordained.

5. The Roman Catholics and several of the Eastern Churches do claim a regular succession of ordinations, from the Apostles down to the present time, and possibly some of them may maintain their claims by history, to that extent; but the calling of their Priesthood has for ages been anything else but by the word of God. In the Levantine countries, the calling of the Priesthood was, from the time of Constantine till the prevalence of Mohammedanism, for the most

^{3a} In the Douay, this verse reads, "Neglect not the grace which is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with the imposition of the hands of the Priesthood."

part in the hands of the civil power.

6. During the long struggle between Mohammedanism and Christianity, it passed through numerous vicissitudes, frequently following the fate of war. Since the Turkish power was firmly seated, the Priesthood is generally purchased with money (*Goodrich's History of All Religions*, pp. 165, 169).

7. In the Roman Catholic Church, the control of the Priesthood has been kept as much as possible in the hands of the Pope and Bishops. But these do not make the slightest pretense that candidates for the Priesthood are selected by revelation. Moreover, it has often occurred that in order to prevent a schism of a national Church, and losing his power over it altogether, the Pope has been obliged to yield the selection of Bishops to the civil power, reserving to himself only the right of investiture; so that Bishops, chosen by the fiat of the King, and not by the will of the Pope, and much less by the voice of God, made Priests whomsoever they would, or such as the State which gave them power desired them to consecrate.

8. As for the Popes, on whose regular succession the Romanists principally rely to sustain their claim to the Priesthood, in succession from the Apostles, they are not ordained at all. That is, they are never ordained Popes or Bishops of Rome. But anyone who has been ordained Bishop, no matter to what See, on being elected Bishop of Rome, enters upon the Papal office without any further ordination. Popes, therefore, are ordained to no Priesthood, but that of a Bishop. A succession of ordinations to the Episcopal office is problematical; and as for a call, they are generally elected by a Conclave, in which all manner of diplomacy and national intrigue have influence; and the election has, on several occasions, been determined by war.

9. If all the old Christian Churches are unable to exhibit a Priesthood called of God, Protestants and other modern Churches can show neither a regular call, nor a succession of ordinations, from the time of the Apostles. They have no Priesthood beyond what men, by their mere motion, without authority from God, can confer.

10. The Episcopal Church, from which a majority of the Protestant Churches derived their existence and their Priesthood, is an offshoot of the Roman Catholic Church. Before examining its claims as the true Church of God, it is well to bring to mind that God has revealed but one faith, established but one system of religion; that true religion cannot be derived from false, and that a true Priesthood can be derived from none but those who possess it.

11. The Roman Catholic Church either was or was not the Church of God. If it were the Church of God, all who separated and dissented from it, separated and dissented from the true Church. They are false.

12. If it was not the Church of God, then, as all Protestants derived whatever they have of Priesthood from it, they derived their Priesthood from something other than the Church of God, and have no authorized Priesthood.

13. So, it makes little difference with the pretensions of Protestants, whether the Roman Church was or was not true. They equally fall to the ground, whatever may be true of that. But they have given it its character as idolatrous and incurably corrupt.

14. In one of the authorized homilies of the Episcopal Church, it is alleged, "that laity and Clergy, learned and unlearned, men and women and children, of all ages, sects and degrees, of whole Christendom, have been at once buried in the most abominable idolatry, and that for the space of eight hundred years or more." And John Wesley, a Deacon of the Episcopal Church, but the Father of the Methodists, says, "The real cause why the extraordinary gifts of the Holy Spirit were no longer to be found in the Christian Church, was because the Christians were turned Heathens again, and had only a dead form left" (*Sermon 94*).

15. Such being the character of the Roman Catholic Church, when some of the Bishops and Priests protested against her authority or her corruptions, and set up separate Churches, what Priesthood had they? The Heathen, the Idolatrous Priesthood to which they were ordained in Rome? They could scarcely derive a true Christian Priesthood through those eight hundred years of most abominable idolatry, which overwhelmed all Christendom.

16. On behalf of the Episcopacy of England, it is often claimed that they have a separate succession of Bishops and Clergy, derived from Saint Paul, and are not dependent on the Popes of Rome for their Priesthood. But after this declaration, that all Christendom, Clergy and laity, men, women, and children, were idolaters for eight hundred years, it is of little consequence from whence they commence deriving their Priesthood. They bring it through that idolatry, for they make no pretense of a new dispensation of the Priesthood at the time of the Reformation.

17. Nor, if it is admitted that the first Bishops in England were ordained by Paul, can any show of evidence be produced of a succession of

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

ordinations from them, through the period of Papal control in England. Many, and for ought we know, all the Bishops received their ordinations in Rome.

18. But at the time of the separation, most of the Bishops adhered to Rome, and were cast out, and new Bishops put in their places by the civil power, and of those who remained, it cannot be shown that a single one was ever ordained at all, by anyone who had himself been ordained. Moreover, the doctrine long prevailed in England that the Episcopal authority was rightly derived from the civil power, as it has in fact been derived ever since the separation; and the form of ordination was for a long time so defective as not to amount to an ordination at all.

19. In fact, therefore, the Episcopal Church have not Bishops, who can show a succession derived from as far back as the end of these eight hundred years of idolatry, say nothing of going through it to the Apostle Paul. And, as the Priests are ordained by the Bishops, and not in succession by each other, they derive their power from the same source.

20. Thus, tracing the history of Episcopal and Priestly succession in the Episcopal Church, back to the time of Henry VIII, King of England, and it is derived, in fact, from laymen set up by the State; and by their own highest pretensions, is only derived from an idolatrous fountain.

21. Lutherans only derive their Priesthood from Martin Luther, who was ordained a Priest of the Roman Catholic Church, and possibly from some of his associates who had no different authority. They were not ordained Priests in the Lutheran Church, but Priests in the Roman Catholic Church, which gave them power to preach and establish the doctrine and discipline of that Church, not to overthrow it. If the Roman Catholic Church was the Church of God, it cast them out as schismatics and heretics and delivered them to anathema. If it were not the Church of God, it could not give them the Priesthood of God.

22. The Methodists have an anomalous form of Episcopacy, of a most singular description. John Wesley, a Deacon of the Episcopal Church in England, ordained a great number of men to preach, who were not Priests in any Church, for he did not allow them to administer sacraments (*Buck's Th. Dic., Methodists, iv, New Connection*). After these had built up societies at home and in foreign countries, he ordained some kind of anomalous superiors for foreign countries, among them Thomas Coke for America.

23. Coke claimed, by virtue of this ordination, under the hands of Wesley, who was only a Deacon, that he was Bishop, and the Methodist Church so acknowledged him (*Discipline, ch. i, sec. 1*). And from this source alone is derived the Episcopacy of the Methodist Episcopal Church.

24. Wesley disclaims having ordained Bishops. If his disclaimer is true, Coke was a miserable impostor, and the act of the Conference acknowledging the validity of his Episcopal ordination, a swindle. If, on the other hand, Wesley's disclaimer was hypocritical, and he did really ordain Coke Bishop, he became just such a Bishop as any other Deacon of that Church can make over any other Church.

25. Perhaps no more singular feature is developed in this matter than the fact that the founder of the Methodists lived and died an Episcopalian. And as an Episcopalian, but without any authority from that Church, conferred the Methodist Priesthood on all the first preachers of that faith.

26. The condition of the Baptists is, in this respect, no better; for though they sometimes deny being Protestants, and claim a separate derivation from theirs, approaching the Apostolic ages, there is not the slightest evidence on which to justify such claims. In different ages, there have been transitory schisms in the mountain regions of Europe, from the Roman Catholic Church. But these different schisms did not derive their Priesthood from each other in succession, but each in its time commenced with schismatic Romanist Priests. And they were not Baptist Churches, but schismatics, who separated from Rome, some on one question, and some on another; but all agreeing with her in the main.

27. The real derivation of the Baptists of America is from Roger Williams, who had only an Episcopalian ordination and a lay baptism. The attempt to patch up this bald beginning by sending to England a few members of the Providence Church, to be baptized and return and baptize others, only carries the difficulty back a few generations earlier, to the time when the English Baptists had a similar beginning.

28. So unfounded are all pretenses of an Apostolic succession in Protestant Churches, that many learned Protestants have fairly acknowledged that they had no Divinely instituted Priesthood, and undertaken to justify building up Churches without it; satisfied either with a Priesthood instituted by themselves, or with none at all.

29. Paul prophesied of them when he said, "The time will come

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears; and they shall turn away their ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables” (2 *Tim.* 4:3-4).

30. Such a Priesthood could not possess the gifts which are received by prophecy, and the laying on of hands of the Priesthood (1 *Tim.* 4:14, 2 *Tim.* 1:6). They would hold office in defiance of the rule that “no man taketh this honor to himself, but he that is called of God, as was Aaron” (*Heb.* 5:4). John, and Charles Wesley, seem to have had some idea that a religious society like the Methodists, with such a man made Priesthood, was something less than the Church of God; for they describe it as “no other than a company of men, having the form, and seeking the power of godliness” (*Buck's Th. Dic., Methodists, iii, Government and Discipline*).

31. That a Priesthood, so made, is no Priesthood, all Churches do practically confess. For they will not allow the laity to ordain Clergymen; nor the inferior Clergy to ordain the superior; nor a Clergyman of another sect, to ordain a Clergyman for them.

32. Equally do they all practically confess that a Priesthood is necessary in the Church, for each in some way have contrived to elevate men to that calling, and to devolve upon them certain prerogatives, which the laity are not allowed to exercise. Certain sacraments and ordinances they practice as a part of their religion, which they do not allow to be valid, unless administered by a Priest. By these means, they practically say that the foundation on which they have built is not sound.

33. But with all the pains these Churches have taken to put on the form of godliness, though without the power (2 *Tim.* 3:5), they have missed of the form also. God has set in the Church Apostles, Prophets, Evangelists, Pastors and Teachers, (1 *Cor.* 7:28, *Eph.* 4:11), and declared these several Orders and Degrees necessary for the work of the Ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ, and for the perfecting of the Saints; until they all come in the unity of the faith, and the knowledge of the Son of God, unto perfect men, of the same measure and fulness as Christ (*Eph.* 4:12-13).

34. Now, among all the Christian Churches, there is none which has this form; and as this is the only godly form, none has so much as the form of godliness in the matter of their Priesthood. Not one pretends to have in the Church Apostles, Prophets, and Evangelists.

35. Roman Catholics have, first, the Pope, then Patriarchs, Archbishops, Bishops, and Priests, and some inferior orders, who merely assist the Priests in sacraments and ceremonies.

36. The Greek, and most of the Eastern Churches, have the same order, except that with some the Patriarch and with some the Bishop is the highest.

37. Episcopalians have the same order, beginning with Archbishops, and in the United States with Bishops; and with this the Episcopal Methodists substantially agree; their Bishops answering to the Archbishops, and the Presiding Elders to the Bishops of the Episcopacy; but with this difference, that among Methodists no one is settled as Pastor of any congregation, but with a joint pastorate, they are distributed around from time to time.

38. Among other Churches, nothing is seen that makes any approach to the Priesthood of the Christian Church, in its various grades, offices, and authorities. In numerous Churches, under the pretense of Christian liberty, a republican system of Priesthood and government has been instituted, where all men hold their power, not by the voice of God, but by the suffrages of the laity.

39. Others, like Baptists and Congregationalists, with, perhaps, but one Order or Degree in the Priesthood, have a merely Democratic form of government; where he who should be a Teacher sent from God is made Pastor by the single act of the congregation over which he presides, and may be cast out of the Priesthood by them; as though the sheep could choose and judge the Shepherd, instead of being chosen and judged by him.

40. Apostles and Prophets looked for and prophesied of this falling away. Daniel, in his vision of the horn which had eyes and a mouth (*Dan. 7:20*), shows that he shall wear out the Saints of the Most High, and think to change times and Laws, and they shall be given into his hand; but, that, afterward, the judgment shall sit, and take away his dominion (*Dan. 7:25-26*). To the same import, Paul wrote to the Church at Thessalonica, warning them of so great a falling away, that the Man of Sin should exalt himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped (*2 Thess. 2:3-4*).

41. John the Revelator prophesied the loss of the Priesthood and the apostasy of the Church by some of those magnificently eloquent symbols so often used to inform the faithful, without imparting knowledge to unbelievers.

42. The Church is represented as a woman, clothed with the sun, the fountain of natural light, because the Church is clothed in the light of God's revealed word; and having the moon under her feet, because not guided by reflected light, or mere human wisdom. In respect to the Apostolic missions, the chief means of establishing and extending her dominion, she is represented with a crown of twelve stars (*Rev. 7:1*).

43. This woman is about to be delivered of a child, who shall rule the nations; a power which pertains to the highest order of Priesthood; and a great red dragon stands ready to devour this child as soon as it is born; but the child was caught up to heaven, and thus preserved; that is, in plain, unsymbolic language, that Priesthood which shall rule the nations with a rod of iron, or an iron scepter, was removed from earth, and taken up to God (*Rev. 7:2-3, 5*).

44. The woman flees from the dragon into the wilderness, where, instead of being nourished from the presence of the Redeemer, with the waters of life, as she ought, being his wife, she is nourished from the face of the serpent (*Rev. 7:14*), while the dragon went to make war with the rest of the children born of the woman; that is, the rest of the Priesthood, which God had raised up in the Church (*Rev. 7:17*).

45. In this persecution, the Saints were quite overcome, and all power over all kindreds, tongues and nations, passed into the hands of a ruler, represented as a terrible beast, which had already received the power of the dragon, and all who have not already had their names written in the Book of Life, go after and worship this beast; so that under his reign, no more become Saints; no new Priests could be raised up to fill the places of the dying, and a single generation made an end of the true Priesthood (*Rev. 8:7*).

46. It is difficult to read these symbolical prophesies, without seeing that the Pagan Roman Empire was the dragon; that the Emperor Constantine was the serpent which nourished the woman, and, therefore, substantially the serpent and dragon were the same power; and, that the beast was Papal Rome, the same thing, with a changed form, and a new name; Papal having grown out of, and received its power from Pagan Rome.

47. It is curious, therefore, that the next which is seen of his woman, she is mounted on a scarlet colored beast (corresponding with the dragon in color), full of names of blasphemy; no longer clothed with the sun, or the light of God's word, but with purple, and scarlet, and gold, and precious stones, and pearls, which Constantine and his

successors bestowed on her, when he nourished her with the spoils of Heathen Temples, and the riches of his Empire (*Rev. 17:3-4*).

48. She now, in this new character, carries a cup full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication, and has the name written upon her forehead: "Mystery, Babylon the Great, the Mother of Harlots, and Abominations of the Earth" (*Rev. 17:4-5*). She is now called a whore (*Rev. 17:1*) because, having been (in the symbolical sense) the married wife of Christ, this woman (now destitute of all Priesthood or authority from God) has given herself to the embraces of Gentile Kings, and receives her support from the countenance of ungodly and usurping Emperors.

49. This being the Protestant view of this prophecy so far, how blind are they, not to see that, having sprung from her, they are the harlots, her daughters; being distinguished from her by the fact that, as they were never married to Christ, their prostitution in an unlawful union with the Kings of the earth, makes them, not whores, but harlots. Most aptly do these symbols apply to those Churches which were separated from Rome as a matter of State policy, produced of whoredoms, and incestuously prostituted to the corruptions, vices, and tyrannies of the States which produced them.

50. Thus, the Priesthood disappeared from the earth and was reserved by the power of God in heaven, against the day when he should reveal it anew on earth and commit a new and final dispensation of the Kingdom unto man. And all the religious sects have, in one way or another, become the witnesses that they have no true Priesthood of God.

Note III—Restoration of the Priesthood

1. The restoration of the Priesthood, of the Gospel, and of the Law of God in the last days is the subject of numerous prophecies. All the prophecies of the Kingdom of God, to be established in the last days, involve the idea of instituting a Priesthood, with plenary power to make disciples, to administer all the sacraments necessary to their sanctification and perfection, and to take the dominion and administer justice and judgment (*Dan. 2:44-45, 7:13-14, 18, 22, 27; Mic. 4:1-2; Isa. 2:2-3, 42:1-4; Jer. 23:5, 23:15-26; Oba. 1:21; Matt. 6:10; Rev. 11:15, 14:6-7, 18:4, 19:15*).

2. Without going over the mass of these, a single one, by John the Revelator, concerning the restoration of the Gospel, will be sufficient: "I saw another Angel fly in the midst of heaven, having the everlasting Gospel to preach unto them that dwell on the earth, and to every nation, and kindred, and tongue, and people, saying, with a loud voice, 'fear God, and give glory to him; for the hour of his judgment is come'" (*Rev. 14:6-7*).

3. As John was in this vision shown one of the things which should happen thereafter (*Rev. 4:1*), the grave question arises, why was an Angel to be sent with the Gospel to be preached to men that dwell on the earth? For no reason, but that men on the earth were destitute of the Gospel. If there was a knowledge of the Gospel, and a godly ministry to preach its truths, and administer its sacraments on earth, there could be no occasion for sending an Angel with it.

4. And as this Angel was sent with the Gospel, to be preached "to every nation, kindred, tongue and people," it follows that every nation, kindred, tongue and people were destitute of it; otherwise, the Angel would not have been sent with the Gospel, to be preached to them.

5. This text thus stands as a distinct announcement that God would, in the latter days, restore the Gospel to the earth, which would then be destitute of it. But the idea has become so prevalent among Protestants that the Gospel may have a separate existence without the Priesthood, that it is worthy of passing notice, that simply revealing the doctrine of the Gospel would not bring the Gospel to men.

6. If a book containing the whole doctrine of the Gospel were placed in the possession of a Pagan people, and they should read and believe

it, they could not be said to possess the Gospel. Neither could they become Saints by that fact alone. For God has appointed a door into His Church, by which only can anyone enter, to wit, baptism. So that even Jesus Himself could not fulfill all righteousness, except by being baptized (*Matt. 3:15; John 3:5, 10:1-3*).

7. Or, to be more explicit, the Gospel does not consist in doctrine only, but also in Sacraments, and in the power from God to administer those sacraments. Consequently, this angel seen by John is sent of God to restore to men on earth the doctrine of the Gospel, with the knowledge of its Sacraments, and the power or Priesthood to administer those Sacraments.

8. Let no one imagine for one moment that this angel is to preach the Gospel. Such is not the prophecy. John saw the angel flying through the midst of heaven, not through the earth or air, but having the Gospel to preach to men on earth. The angel was a Minister of the will and work of God in heaven, not on earth.

9. Nor would it be meet or proper to send an angel actually to preach, but only to commit a dispensation of the Gospel to men to preach. Even Christ took not on Him the nature of angels, but the seed of Abraham, made in all things like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful High Priest (*Heb. 2:16-17*), because thus He could be touched with a feeling of our infirmities, being in all things tempted and tried as we are (*Heb. 4:15*).

10. The office of the Angel is accomplished in committing a dispensation to the chosen of God, and preparing him for the work by giving him a proper knowledge of the Gospel, and the authority to administer in all the appointments of God. And this work was accomplished in the calling of Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery, and in the Priesthood and revelations committed to them, for the beginning of the ministry.

11. As this proposition is fundamental, it deserves to be treated with more than a passing notice. That they did receive a dispensation of the Gospel, does not rest merely on their assertion that they received the Priesthood of life under the hand of John the Baptist, and afterwards the Priesthood of an endless life under the hands of Peter, James, and John (*1844 DaC 1, 2, 3*), nor on the testimony of the eleven witnesses of the Book of Mormon. Nor does it rest on any similar testimony, or any testimony which the voice of man can possibly impeach.

12. They instituted the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, which, alone, of all the Churches on earth, is possessed of the Gospel of

the Son of God. How should men hear the Gospel without a preacher? and how shall they preach, except they be sent (*Rom. 10:14-15*)? And no man taketh this honor, but he that is called of God, as was Aaron (*Heb. 5:4*); who was selected by the mouth of a Prophet. He who is not so called cannot preach the Gospel, because “the things of God knoweth no man, but the spirit of God. Now, we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God, which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Spirit teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. But the natural man receiveth not the things of the spirit of God; for they are foolishness unto him; neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned” (*1 Cor. 2:11-14*).

13. As in the Church instituted by them alone, of all the Churches on earth, the doctrine of the Gospel as it came from God is preached and believed, the conclusion is inevitable that this alone is the true Church of God. As the Priesthood derived in succession from Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery do understand the things of God and proclaim them according to God's word, unquestionably they are sent of God. That the Gospel preached by this Priesthood, and believed in this Church, is that revealed by Jesus Christ, is made apparent in its proper places throughout this Book of the Law, and the arguments and testimonies need not to be repeated here. That no other Churches give heed to it, their creeds and confessions of faith sufficiently show.

14. God established two Priesthoods in the Church, consisting of diverse Orders and Degrees. None of the sects have such, and none pretend to it because, not being sent of God, they cannot work by his pattern. They are even ignorant of the distinction between the two Priesthoods and know not whether to claim their Priesthood as one or the other, or something different from either.

15. Jesus Christ, when he sent the Apostles to preach the Gospel to all the world, gave promise that certain signs should follow those that believed the word preached (*Mark 16:15-18*). As all Christendom avow that those signs do not follow the preaching of their Gospel, they are selfcondemned, as not preaching and believing the true Gospel. As these signs do follow the preaching of the Gospel and the belief of it among those whom Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery sent in the name of God, it is equally satisfactory evidence that they have received a dispensation of the Priesthood from the angel whom John saw flying through the midst of heaven.

16. The publication of the Book of Mormon is the first epoch in the public attention to the dispensation of the fullness of times. Aside from literary defects and editorial and mechanical blunders, it is the most extraordinary book of this productive and progressive age. It traces, for a period of one thousand years, the history of a semicivilized population, extending over half the American continent, with such minuteness that the student in modern geography finds no difficulty in locating their nations and cities, and most of the events in their history.

17. Their cities, temples, and structures used in religion and war, form the same prominent feature in their history which such works usually do in the history of a people in a low state of civilization, and in some instances are minutely described. Such a work should have commanded the attention of antiquarians and historians in all the world. Prejudice has shut the eyes of the learned to this vast fund of knowledge.

18. A few years later, the American government sent the distinguished traveler and learned savant, John L. Stevens, as Ambassador to Central America, accompanied by the artist Mr. Catherwood, with permission to inquire into and examine the antiquities and aboriginal monuments of that country. These learned gentlemen, after a sojourn of less than two years, returned and published, as the result of their labors, a minute account of cities, temples, altars, fortresses, kingly palaces and national monuments, of gorgeous grandeur, scattered in vast and rich profusion over all that sunny region; desolated and without inhabitant, over which the ancient forest had grown in gigantic majesty, which the prying curiosity of man had not penetrated for countless ages. These cities, these towers, these temples, these palaces, were the same that the Book of Mormon had before mentioned. The same rivers water them, and the same mountains surround them, which the believing student had read of ten years before, in the writings of the Seer of Palmyra.

19. Even the pictures painted upon the walls of palaces, temples, and dwellings are a faithful illustration of the history contained in the Book of Mormon, and as plainly record the great events there written out, as the pictures and statuary in the Capitol at Washington do the written history of the United States. The correspondence between the monumental and pictorial history, as discovered by Stevens and Catherwood on the one hand, and the written history as translated by Joseph Smith on the other, was perfect.

20. Yet learned men, antiquarians and historians, still close their eyes to its consequence. Concede for once what is claimed by all but the disciples of Joseph Smith, that the Book of Mormon is an imposture, no matter by what means got up, how did its authors discover the secrets of past history, and make their writing correspond with the since discovered monuments? The power to do it is essentially a divine power, quite as much so as that of prophecy.

21. This fact alone, sustained as it is by an overwhelming mass of evidence, is enough to vindicate the sacred character of the Book of Mormon, the Apostolic character, and true witness of Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery, and to vindicate the Church by them instituted as the institution of heaven, and the new dispensation as a dispensation of life from the Almighty.

22. If the Book of Mormon was an imposition, it could scarcely fail to contain modern figures, modern forms of speech, allusions to modern facts and modern discoveries in the arts and sciences, and ten thousand other evidences of its modern origin. So certain was this, that the sincere unbelievers in its divine authority made this the ground of their attack upon it, and based their unbelief on the assumption of the existence of such evidences of a modern origin.

23. In searching for such evidence, it was discovered that the Book of Mormon mentions the use of steel several centuries prior to the Christian era, and history was appealed to, to show that the manufacture of steel was a modern art, invented since the Roman Republic. Against this, it appears from the Bible that steel was used in the time of King David (*2 Sam. 22:35, Ps. 18:34*).

24. It is now a well known fact that the art of making steel of an excellent quality is one of the ancient arts of the Hindus, practiced by them from remote and unknown ages, by a process different from that in use among the western nations. Their art and that of the Hebrews are doubtless the same. It is only the European process which is modern. So this argument falls to the ground.

25. An imperfect compass was in use among the nations, whose history is written in the Book of Mormon. Such is now proved to have been in use among the Chinese, from the earliest antiquity. The Book of Mormon shows the existence of herds of horses and cattle in America in early periods, whereas the present stocks are supposed to have all originated with the European stocks, brought over since the time of Columbus.

26. The lama and the buffalo are beasts of burden and draft, which might with propriety be called by those names. The buffalo is as truly an ox as the European bovine. And the evidence that the wild horses all sprang from European stocks is anything but satisfactory. Though it is certain that the Mexicans of the time of Cortez did not use horses, the Mexicans of this time insist that certain breeds of horses now running wild are of American origin and were not introduced by Europeans. Their great unlikeness to horses of western Europe justifies the Mexican opinion.

27. Dr. Leidy, of Philadelphia, has proved, in a very interesting work, published by the Smithsonian Institution, that there existed in America in ancient times two species of ox of great size and value, which have disappeared so recently that several specimens of their bones and horn cores are in existence. These were the oxen spoken of in the Book of Mormon and have become extinct for want of attention. Domesticated for ages, they perished when they lost all attention from man, not being adapted to a wild state in this climate. Thus answers the unbeliever to this cavil.

28. The call of a successor to the Prophet Joseph in exact fulfillment of prophecy, and the continuation of the work of the dispensation in the very order in which he had begun it, though the largest share of the disciples of Joseph went off on another plan, is not one of the least evidences that it was God's work. And the revelation to the Prophet James, by the divine word of the plates at Voree^a, is probably the best proved, to this generation, of any miracle since the world began. No man, either Apostate, Christian, or Infidel, has ever attempted to answer the evidence of it, though it was a subject of rather general notice in the newspapers at the time, and has been before the public for more than ten years.

29. Indeed, in more than a quarter of a century, which has elapsed since the restoration of the Priesthood and the opening of the dispensation, no attempt has been made to meet and answer the evidence that it was of divine authority. Numerous false tales have been put afloat, for the purpose of bringing the institution and the Priesthood into disrepute; none to meet the question of its divine authority on the merits.

28a See Revelation and Testimony, starting on the next page

REVELATION

The Angel of the Lord came unto me, James, on the first day of September, in the year eighteen hundred and forty-five, and the light shined about him above the brightness of the sun, and he showed unto me the plates of the sealed record, and he gave into my hands the Urim and Thummim. And out of the light came the voice of the Lord, saying: My servant James, in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thee, because I have tried thee, and found thee faithful. Behold, my Servant James, I am about to bless thee with a great blessing, which shall be to those who love me, an immutable testimony; to those who know me not, a stumbling block; but to those who have known me, and have turned their hearts from me, a rock of offence.

Go to the place which the Angel of the presence shall show thee, and there shalt thou dig for the record of my people, in whose possession thou dwellest. Take with thee faithful witnesses; for in evil will the unfaithful speak of thee; but the faithful and true shall know that they are liars and shall not stumble for their words.

And while I was yet in the spirit, the Angel of the Lord took me away to the hill in the east of Walworth, against White River, in Voree, and there he shewed unto me the record buried under an oak tree as large as the body of a large man; it was enclosed in an earthen casement, and buried in the ground as deep as to a man's waist, and I beheld it as a man can see a light stone in clear water; for I saw it by Urim and Thummim.

TESTIMONY

On the thirteenth day of September, 1845, we, Aaron Smith, Jirah B. Wheelan, James M. Van Nostrand, and Edward Whitcomb, assembled at the call of James J. Strang, who is by us and many others approved as a Prophet and Seer of God. He proceeded to inform us that it had been revealed to him in a vision that an account of an ancient people was buried in a hill south of White River bridge, near the east line of Walworth County; and leading us to an oak tree, about one foot in diameter, told us that we would find it enclosed in a case of rude earthen ware under that tree, at the depth of about three feet; requested us to dig it up, and charged us to no examine the ground that we should know we were not imposed upon, and that it had not been buried there since the tree grew. The tree was surrounded by a sward of deeply rooted grass, such as is usually found in the openings; and upon the most critical examination, we could not discover any indication that it had ever been cut through or disturbed.

We then dug up the tree, and continued to dig to the depth of about three feet, where we found a case of slightly baked clay, containing three plates of brass.

The case was found embedded in indurated clay, so closely fitting it that it broke in taking out; and the earth below the soil was so hard as to be dug with difficulty, even with a pickaxe. Over the case was found a flat stone, about one foot wide each way, and three inches thick, which appeared to have undergone the action of fire, and fell in pieces after a few minutes' exposure to the air. The digging extended in the clay about eighteen inches, there being two kinds of earth of different color and appearance above it. We examined as we dug all the way with the utmost care, and we say, with the utmost confidence, that no part of the earth through which we dug exhibited any sign or indication that it had been moved or disturbed at any time previous. The roots of the tree struck down on every side very closely, extending below the case, and closely interwoven with roots from other trees. None of them had been broken or cut away. No clay is found in the country like that of which the case is made,

In fine, we found an alphabetic and pictorial record, carefully cased

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

up, buried deep in the earth, covered with a fiat stone, with an oak tree one foot in diameter, growing over it, with every evidence that the senses can give that it has lain there as long as that tree has been growing. Strang took no part in the digging, but kept entirely away, from before the first blow was struck till after the plates were taken out of the case; and the sole inducement to our digging was our faith in his statement as a Prophet of the Lord, that a record would thus and there be found.

AARON SMITH,
J. M. VAN NOSTRAND,
JIRA B. WHEELAN,
EDWARD WHITCOMB.

Read the translation of this record in sections four: The Voree Plates, on page 311.

Note VI—Objections Answered

1. Among the works published against the Priesthood of Joseph Smith, and his associates, and their successors, and the authority of the Book of Mormon as one of the Sacred Records, the leading work from which all others are more or less derived, is E. D. Howe's "History of Mormonism." This work first appeared in 1834, under the title of "Mormonism Unveiled."

2. Of this book, thirty-seven pages are made up of the certificates and affidavits of nearly one hundred persons, to prove that Joseph and his associates were vagrants, money diggers, and superstitious, ignorant and vicious persons, and that they got up the Book of Mormon as a speculation.

3. First among these is an affidavit of Peter Ingersoll, dated Palmyra, Wayne County, N. Y., Dec. 2d, 1833, certified by Thomas P. Baldwin, Judge of Wayne County Court, to have been sworn before him, "according to law," the 9th day of December, 1833. A few pages subsequent are the certificates of six witnesses that Ingersoll is worthy of credit; a rather suspicious circumstance, considering that his veracity had not been questioned.

4. This same Peter Ingersoll is now a resident of Lapeer County, Michigan, and solemnly denies that he ever signed or made oath to the affidavit, or any other affidavit on the subject. As Thomas P. Baldwin certifies that Ingersoll did make oath to the statement, according to law, whereas, in fact, the law did not authorize him to administer any such oath, or any extrajudicial oath whatever, his certificate is, to say the least, not to be received against Ingersoll's solemn statement that he never swore to the affidavit. The certificate is certainly false in one point; for as there is no law for administering such an oath, it could not have been done according to law.

5. But as the name of Ingersoll is certainly forged, that of Judge Baldwin probably is. The title of his office is erroneously written to his signature, a mistake he would not be likely to make himself, though E. D. Howe, of Painesville, Ohio, might, not being acquainted with New York jurisprudence. In 1833, there was not in the State of New York such an office as Judge of the County Court. Circuit Courts, Oyer and Terminer, Common Pleas, and General Sessions were held

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

for every county, but there was no "County Court." Every official act requiring the signature of a Judge was signed by him as Judge of someone of these particular Courts, not as Judge of some imaginary Court having no existence.

6. Upon an examination of all these certificates, it will be perceived that not one of them is authenticated in legal form. Some are not signed at all; they are often contradictory one to another, and much of them are on hearsay. Not one is certified under the seal of any Court. When it is considered that religious animosities are the bitterest of all human hatred, and that these were got up on the ground where Joseph commenced his ministry, among those most bitterly opposed to him, if the certificates were really genuine, the wonder would not be that, though a righteous man, so much was said against him, but so little.

7. Bunyan, Luther, Calvin, Knox, Wesley, Whitfield, if so judged, on the exclusive testimony of their enemies, would come off worse, and Jesus and his Apostles far worse. But at this time, while most of the witnesses, whose testimony is recorded against him, are yet living, scattered through half the States, and able to answer for themselves, the Saints know and continually assert that most of these certificates are forgeries, never sworn, signed or seen by those whose names are signed to them; and they perpetually challenge the world to the investigation, assured that the cause which must be supported by forgery is rotten.

8. No one need start up in surprise and say, men would not dare publish forged certificates and affidavits. It is not a crime, by the law of any State in the Union. The affidavits, being extrajudicial and of no legal force, the laws will not take cognizance of the forgery, if they are forged, nor of the perjury, if they are false. But E. D. Howe, the author of the book, is an Ohio lawyer, and in getting up the book attempted to give these evidences a legal form, and he has made such certificates over the names of Justices and a Judge, as those officers would not use in the State of New York, unless ignorant of their own official designations.

9. Moreover, though the object of these certificates is to impeach the credibility of the witnesses to the Book of Mormon, and the character of the Prophet himself, they are anything but unanimous and prove little against them but being superstitious. On this, the accusers have no advantage of the accused; for Stafford, one of the witnesses, certifies that he furnished them a sheep to sacrifice to an evil spirit to appease his wrath, so that he would not spirit away hidden treasures they were

digging for, and was to have a share of the enchanted treasures when found.

10. Not one word of this mass of testimony is worthy one moment's credit, both because it is unquestionably forged, because, if genuine, it is too ignorant to be worthy of notice, and because often contradictory. It has received attention from those only whose minds were made up, and on the assumption that ignorance, superstition, and falsehood was sufficient to refute what they had already condemned as ignorance, superstition, and falsehood.

11. The leading purpose of these testimonies was to overthrow the evidence that the Prophet Joseph possessed the plates, from which he professed to have translated the Book of Mormon. They have never been reviewed by his followers; yet our enemies, being the judges, they fail of their purpose. For it is now admitted, even by Mr. Ferris, late Secretary of Utah, the ablest writer against the divine mission of the Prophet Joseph, that he did "exhume one or more of those curious glyphs, which now figure so largely in the list of American antiquities," consisting "of metallic plates, covered with hieroglyphical characters," – "written from top to bottom, like the Chinese, or from side to side indifferently, like the Egyptian and Demotic Libyan" (*Utah and the Mormons*, p. 54). And Thomas Ford, late Governor of Illinois, though he does not admit the actual existence of the plates, allows as a probable theory that the witnesses of the Book of Mormon thought they saw them; and, consequently, are not false and corrupt, but superstitious and deceived witnesses (*Ford's History of Illinois*, p. 257).

12. But the grand assault on the Prophetic character of Joseph Smith is that known as the Spaulding story. This is to the effect that the Rev. Solomon Spaulding, of Conneaut, Ohio, in 1810, wrote a book entitled, "Manuscript Found,"³ giving a fictitious account of the emigration of some Jews to America, and their wars, settlements and national affairs, so as to account for the tumuli and other antiquities about Conneaut; which manuscript afterwards fell into the hands of Sidney Rigdon and Joseph Smith, and was by them reconstructed into the Book of Mormon.

13. The evidence offered to prove this, is, the certificates of seven witnesses, made in 1833, that they read and heard read the Spaulding

12a Editor's Note: The complete original "Manuscript Found," by Solomon Spaulding, was edited by Kent P. Jackson and published by Religious Studies Center, Brigham Young University in 1996, thus forever ending any controversy or discussion on the comparison of "Manuscript Found" and the Book of Mormon. These are clearly two separate works with little to nothing in common.

manuscript, in 1810 and 1811, and that, on the introduction of the Book of Mormon there, subsequent to 1830, when it was first published, they recognized it as the “Manuscript Found,” of Solomon Spaulding, with which they had been acquainted twenty-two years before.

14. The inference from these facts is, that the Book of Mormon, instead of being translated from plates, was copied from the Spaulding manuscript. Now, Conneaut is less than fifty miles from Kirtland, the gathering place to which the Saints began assembling in 1831. If the Book of Mormon was such an imposture, could the authors of the imposture, men who at least had the talent to succeed, have been guilty of the folly of gathering their disciples so near the scene of their imposture? It is incredible. A blunderer would have got out of the way of so certain exposure. Men who make such blunders are never successful impostors. The leaders had no need to go to Kirtland before all the great west, that they should thus set down at the very gate of exposure and inevitable ruin.

15. So great is the improbability that an impostor would do any such thing that it could only be believed on the most overwhelming evidence. No motive can be imagined sufficient to induce anyone to plagiarize a book, palm it off as an inspiration, build up a Church upon the imposture, and then transplant that Church bodily several hundred miles, and locate it only one day's travel, on one of the greatest, thoroughfares of the continent, from where the imposture was as certain of detection as the sun to rise. Nor could this going to Kirtland possibly be attributed to accident, or necessity. Smith and Rigdon pressed it on their followers.

16. The testimony of the witnesses ought to be read and judged, with a view to this exceeding improbability; and the genuineness of their certificates ought to be looked after with the suspicion engendered by the examination of the former set, accumulated by the same author.

17. Solomon Spaulding was educated at Plainfield Academy and Dartmouth College. and had studied Law and Divinity, and preached several years (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, p. 279). His style must have been good. From his enterprise, his tastes and habits, and especially his fondness for reading and writing, it was probably highly cultivated. The style of the Book of Mormon is exceedingly barbarous, probably more ungrammatical, and worse English, than any other book in the language which ever went through a second edition, carrying upon the face of almost every page those peculiar Yankeeisms which a man of

education never speaks, much less writes; and proves that whoever rendered it in English, whether author or translator, was very ignorant of the language. It may be said not to be translated, strictly, into English, but into a barbarous Yankee tongue, familiar to the uneducated of the last generation, but now nearly forgotten.

18. Yet these very marks of great ignorance of the English language, in either author or translator, are the marks by which the witnesses pretend to identify the work. Henry Lake certifies to telling Spaulding that the frequent use of the words “and it came to pass,” sounded ridiculous. Unquestionably, it does, and for that reason Solomon Spaulding could not have so written. He could not have written in that style, to imitate the Bible, as some have said, for that language occurs many times as often as in the Bible and could only have originated in a very barbarous language, having an exceedingly limited vocabulary.

19. The witnesses also remember that the names of Nephi, Lehi, and others found in the Book of Mormon occurred frequently in the Spaulding manuscript. Twenty-two years, the time elapsing between hearing the Spaulding manuscript read and reading the Book of Mormon, is a long time to remember the mere fictitious names interwoven in a romance and the place where they are interwoven in dreams of fancy. The names might be remembered, without being in Spaulding's manuscript; for they originated some thousand years earlier (*Jud. 15:9-14, 1 Chron 5:19, 2 Mac. 1:39*), and were in familiar use in the days of Samson and Nehemiah, though few readers of these names now remember where they have read them.

20. One of the witnesses, Henry Lake, tells of an inconsistency in the tragic account of Laban, contained in Spaulding's manuscript, and also in the Book of Mormon, which he pointed out to Spaulding, and he promised to correct (*Howe's History of Mormonism, p. 282*); certainly a very strong circumstance, except for the material fact that the inconsistency is not pointed out, and does not exist.

21. Another witness, John N. Miller, whose memory is so tenacious as to recognize “many passages in the Book of Mormon as verbatim from Spaulding, and others in fact,” and to “find in it the writings of Solomon Spaulding from beginning to end,” recognized it by “some humorous passages,” which Spaulding frequently read to company (*Howe's History of Mormonism, p. 283*). As there is not a humorous passage in the Book of Mormon, his testimony, if indeed he ever gave it, will go for nothing.

22. Another witness, Oliver Smith, remembers that Spaulding's manuscript gave an account of the arts, sciences, and civilization of the first settlers of America (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, p. 235). But the Book of Mormon contains none of these things. There is not only no history of these things in the Book of Mormon, but they are so slightly alluded to in any way that it is impossible to know what arts and sciences existed among the people whose history is there recorded; and the opinion prevails that they were in a state of semi-barbarism, because their history consists of little but emigrations, settlements, religion, and wars.

23. They generally agree that the religious part of the Book of Mormon is not Spaulding's, and that his object was to account for the antiquities found so abundantly about Conneaut, by writing a romance which should be a plausible history of their origin. Now, the Book of Mormon does not in any way account for the origin of those works. It does not place one of its scenes in that region, nor give account of the construction of any similar structures, nor does it appear by it that any person mentioned in the Book of Mormon ever saw or heard of the great Lakes of North America, or ever approached the Lake region, or the region of its peculiar class of antiquities, except as a fugitive, near the closing scenes of the book. And if the religious part of the book was taken out, most of it would be lacking, including every leading fact in the history of all those men whose names these veracious witnesses so well remember.

24. Had testimony like this been given in open Court, upon a regular examination and cross-examination of witnesses, no judicious mind would have deemed the case made out. But when it was picked up by a lawyer, in expert examinations of witnesses opposed with religious zeal to the cause he is attacking, it amounts to nothing at all. The plan once set on foot, it is a matter of surprise that so bald a case is made out.

25. Unable to get certificates signed to his own satisfaction, Howe has added an unsigned certificate of one witness, Artemas Cunningham (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, p 286), and numerous unsupported statements of his own, of what various other persons said and would have said if he could have found them, and asks the world on such expert, unsworn, unsupported, contradictory, incredible and impertinent testimony and hearsay to believe the Book of Mormon was plagiarized from Spaulding's romance. Against the credibility of any part of the testimony that the Book of Mormon was plagiarized

from the “Manuscript Found,” is the overwhelming fact that, in 1832, Orson Hyde introduced the Book of Mormon at Conneaut (*New Salem, Ohio*), and there preached and built up a numerous Church among Spaulding’s old neighbors, many of whom were familiar with his “Manuscript Found.” They could not be deceived and could have no possible inducement to establish themselves and their children and friends in a delusion.

26. But there was still another difficulty to encounter; that is, to show by what possibility Joseph Smith could have become possessed of Spaulding’s manuscript. If it were unquestionably shown that he held it, it would be a question of no consequence how he came by it. But while the testimony that the Book of Mormon was plagiarized was defective, it was at least necessary to show that Spaulding’s manuscript might by possibility have fallen into Smith’s hands.

27. So important did Howe deem this portion of his undertaking, that he traced up the family of Spaulding from Conneaut, through Pittsburgh and Amity, in Pennsylvania, Onondaga and Otsego counties, in New York, and from there to the State of Massachusetts, where he found Spaulding’s widow, and learned that she had left a trunk of Spaulding’s manuscripts in Otsego county, New York (*Howe’s History of Mormonism*, pp. 287, 288).

28. The light began to break. Here was a chance to prove the imposture by bringing forward the very book, written by Spaulding in 1811, which Joseph was pretending to translate in 1829. The trunk was opened, and in it was found “a romance, purporting to have been translated from the Latin, found on twenty-four rolls of parchment in a cave, on the banks of Conneaut Creek” (*Howe’s History of Mormonism*, p. 288).

29. What further was done, Howe does not see fit to tell. He says, that this was the wrong manuscript; suggests that Spaulding had altered the plan of his book, thrown this by and written it over again, and that it was the rewritten manuscript which Smith had plagiarized; says he showed this manuscript to several witnesses, who had already certified to the identity of the Book of Mormon, with the Spaulding manuscript, who excused themselves of a lie by saying, that Spaulding “told them he had altered his plan of writing” (*Howe’s History of Mormonism*, p. 288). That such an alteration was actually made is possible; for though Howe omits all mention of it, the testimony of the widow (then Matilda Davison) and daughter of Spaulding (Mrs. McKins try) published in the Quincy Whig, shows clearly that the genuine, duly entitled “Manuscript Found” was delivered personally

to Hulburt, Howe's agent, in 1834, at Monson, Massachusetts.

30. Failing thus to identify the works, he returns to the important task of showing that by possibility Smith could have possessed himself of the "Manuscript Found." And on this point, he asserts this, no more: that the widow thinks the manuscript was once taken to the printing office of Patterson and Lambdin, at Pittsburgh (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, p. 287); that Lambdin is dead, and, therefore, cannot testify, and Patterson does not know anything whatever on the subject (*id.*, p. 289).

31. This is absolutely all that he pretends to have made out. Here starts conjecture; that as Rigdon came to Pittsburgh, in 1823 or 1824; is said to have been intimate with Lambdin, studied the Bible, went into the Western Reserve, Ohio, and commenced preaching there the Campbellite doctrine, then new, and contained in the Book of Mormon, as well as the Bible, about the same time that the veracious Palmyra witnesses have Smith engaged in money digging, tavern lounging, and vagrancy, Lambdin must have surreptitiously copied Spaulding's manuscript. Rigdon must have stolen Lambdin's copy, rewrote it to suit his purpose, and, in some of his long clerical visits to Pittsburgh, struck off three hundred and fifty miles, through the wild byways of the Alleghany mountains and the Susquehanna River, to where the boy vagrant Joe was digging money, and employed him to found a new religion (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, pp. 289, 290).

32. This is the whole case, as made out by Howe in his *Mormonism Unveiled*, in 1834. This work, under the title of "History of Mormonism," has gone through numerous editions since, but all end here. Time has not added one word. The friend and assistant of Howe, Philastus Hulburt, spent a full year in tracing up the Spaulding manuscript, and accumulating testimonies, guesses, and forgeries, of which the latter make the largest share. What does it make out? Unanswered, is there enough of it to raise a suspicion? If suspicion was already awakened, is there anything to confirm it? Does not the meagreness of the case, and the suspicious character of the testimonies, damn the accusers?

33. Though this tale was swallowed by those who were ready to believe anything against the Prophet, either with or without evidence, there were those who saw the necessity of obtaining something in the shape of testimony. Resort was had to Mrs. Davison, late widow of the late Solomon Spaulding, to see if, in her waning years, her memory had not brightened.

34. Austin, of Monson, and Storrs, of Hollister, Massachusetts, visited the widow of Spaulding, and after obtaining what information they could, drew up a letter, to which Austin signed her name, agreeing in some minor features with Howe's History, but stating that Spaulding did exhibit "his manuscript to Patterson, who was much pleased with it, and borrowed it for perusal," and after retaining "it a long time, informed Mr. Spaulding, that, if he would make out a title page and preface, he would publish it;" and also that the manuscript was carefully preserved by her till Hulburt (Howe's agent) called upon her for it, in Monson, Massachusetts, in 1834; contrary to Howe, who makes her say she "has no distinct knowledge of its contents," "and is quite uncertain whether it was ever brought back from Patterson and Lambdin's printing office" (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, pp. 287, 288).

35. This letter alleges that "Sidney Rigdon was at that time (which she makes some time previous to 1815) connected with the printing office of Patterson and Lambdin;" and that the manuscript was returned to Mr. Spaulding, when he removed to Washington county, where he died, in 1816, and that she took it with her, and it has been frequently read by her daughter, Mrs. McKinstry, of Monson, Massachusetts, and other friends, till 1834, when Philastus Hulburt (Howe's assistant) came, introduced by her old neighbors, Henry Lake, Aaron Wright, and others, to get it for the purpose of comparison with the Book of Mormon. This letter was published in the Episcopal Recorder, of Sept. 12, 1840, the Philadelphia Saturday Courier, of Nov. 16, 1842, and the newspapers generally.

36. This so far contradicts Howe's version, in the attempt to make a stronger case, that numerous persons called on the widow and daughter of Spaulding, in Monson, to make personal inquiries. Among them, Mr. John Haven, of Hollister, Middlesex county, Massachusetts, published in the Quincy Whig a letter stating that the widow says she never signed the letter published over her name, and never saw it till after its publication, and had no agency in the origin of it, except answering some questions asked by D. R. Austin, who afterwards wrote the letter, without her authority.

37. But she states the important fact that she delivered the original manuscript to Philastus Hulburt, the associate of Howe, on an agreement of his to publish it, and give her half the profits; and that she "subsequently received a letter, stating that it did not read as they expected, and they should not publish it."

38. In Howe's History of Mormonism, the fact that the real Spaulding

manuscript was in the author's hands was covered by a very thin veil. It is difficult to read the published letter in the name of Spaulding's widow without perceiving that fact, though it is not positively stated. But here it comes out clear and distinct.

39. Howe, when he published the *History of the Mormons*, had the Spaulding manuscript entire and unmutilated before him. He had employed an agent to travel more than one thousand miles in tracing it up; got possession of it, and compared it line by line with the Book of Mormon. Had there been one page which agreed, he would have copied it in his "Mormonism Unveiled," as the unanswerable evidence that Joseph Smith was an impostor, and the Book of Mormon a plagiarism. "It did not read as they expected." The Conneaut witnesses were dishonest or mistaken. This is the bitter end of the Spaulding story.

40. But it may not be amiss to set down some additional facts, showing that the whole body of those who had a hand in making and propagating it were willing to resort to falsehood. In the letter extensively published over the name of Spaulding's widow, she is made to say, "Sidney Rigdon (one of the founders of the sect), who has figured so largely in the *History of the Mormons*, was, at that time, 1812, '13 and '14, connected with the printing office of Mr. Patterson, as is well known in that region."

41. Now, Spaulding went to Pittsburgh in 1812 and remained but two years (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, pp. 282, 287). And Rigdon did not go to Pittsburgh till 1823 or 1824 (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, p. 289). So that at least nine years before Rigdon ever visited Pittsburgh, the manuscript was returned to Spaulding; for the widow, in the same letter, certifies that "the manuscript was returned to the author, who soon after removed to Amity, Washington county, Pennsylvania, where he died in 1816. The manuscript then fell into" her "hands, and was preserved carefully. It has frequently been examined by" her "daughter, Mrs. McKinstry, of Monson, Massachusetts, and by other friends."

42. Moreover, if Rigdon had been connected with Patterson's printing office, that fact could have been proved by Patterson himself. And it was a very important fact for Howe, in making his case. Howe did apply to Patterson for information and learned that Rigdon arrived at Pittsburgh in 1823 or 1824, but did not learn that he was ever in the printing office for one moment. And it otherwise appears that the firm was dissolved, and the business closed long before that time.

The only inference is that, in endeavoring to supply a known vacuum in the evidence, Austin and Storrs set down this falsehood in the letter, to which they set her name, without any authority whatever.

43. To set this question fully at rest, John E. Page, while in Apostolic charge of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints, in Pittsburgh, in 1843, published a book on this Spaulding story, in which he furnishes numerous affidavits, certificates and testimonials that Rigdon was but fifteen years old when Spaulding went to Pittsburgh, and but seventeen when he left there, and was all that time at work on his father's farm, and that he remained there employed only at farm labor till 1819, five years after Spaulding left Pittsburgh, and three after his death. And that the Spaulding manuscript was in the continual keeping of Spaulding, Mrs. Spaulding and their daughter, from when it left Patterson's office, in 1812, 1813, or 1814, when Rigdon was a farm boy in the back country, of fifteen to seventeen years, till 1834, when it was put into the hands of Hulburt, the agent of Howe, to be published as an expose of the plagiarism of the Book of Mormon.

44. This work of Page's, issued on the very scene of action, all its statements supported by the testimony of witnesses then living at and in the vicinity of Pittsburgh, distributed by thousands, and challenging investigation, no man ever attempted to answer. Not a position or an assertion in it was ever attacked. Not a man can be found on earth who, after reading it, pretends to believe the Spaulding story. Not a man can be found in Pittsburgh who pretends that Rigdon was ever in Patterson and Lambdin's printing office or ever saw Lambdin.

45. Not only is there this entire failure to trace the Spaulding manuscript to Rigdon, but there has never been the first step made towards tracing it from Rigdon to Smith. In the investigation which so grave a question has called out, both Rigdon and Smith have been traced, step by step, from their cradles till after the publication of the Book of Mormon; and not an iota of evidence has been produced that they were ever within three hundred miles of each other; or that either of them had any kind of fame or notoriety by which the other could by possibility have heard of his existence, until after Joseph translated the Book of Mormon.

46. While the matter was yet fresh in the public mind, Rigdon, through the newspapers, denied having ever seen or heard of Spaulding, or his manuscript; denied having any connection with, or knowledge of, Patterson and Lambdin's printing office, or any acquaintance with Lambdin; and challenged investigation at Pittsburgh, where plenty

of witnesses could be found to contradict him, if his statements were not true.

47. Patterson remained there, an influential citizen and a respectable member of a Christian Church. In 1842, Rev. S. Williams, of Pittsburgh, undertook the task of supplying the lacking evidence and published a work called "Mormonism Exposed," in which he failed to produce a single witness that Rigdon had any connection with the printing office or Lambdin.

48. Though eight years before, when "Howe's History of Mormonism" was published, Patterson had no recollection of any such manuscript (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, p. 289), he now certifies that some gentleman from the east did bring there a singular manuscript, chiefly in the style of the Old English Bible, of which he read a few pages. But unfortunately for our accusers, he certifies that the manuscript was committed, not to Lambdin, but to Silas Engles, a man of most excellent character, who had charge of the entire concerns of the office; was a good scholar, and an excellent printer, to whose decision was entrusted even the question of the morality and scholarship of works offered for publication; and that Engles, after a few weeks, returned the manuscript to its author.

49. The sum of the facts, therefore, is this: **1st.** The testimony offered to prove that the Book of Mormon has any similarity to Spaulding's "Manuscript Found" is of the most doubtful character; quite as likely to be forged as genuine; and, if genuine, more likely to be false than true. **2d.** The original, unutilized "Manuscript Found" was in the hands of E. D. Howe, of Painesville, Ohio, in 1834, when he first published his History of Mormonism, and was by him suppressed, because there was no resemblance between it and the Book of Mormon. **3d.** There is no evidence that Lambdin ever saw or heard of the Spaulding manuscript. Patterson's testimony shows it improbable that he saw it; impossible that he copied it. **4th.** If Lambdin had it, it is so improbable that Rigdon ever saw or heard of it, as to be next to a certainty that he did not. **5th.** If Rigdon had it, it is impossible that he ever transferred it to Joseph Smith, or ever heard of him, until after the translation of the Book of Mormon.

50. Complete as is this failure, every subsequent writer has, for want of any other means of attack, fallen back on this. But it is marvelous, how men in high standing have filled up with their own assertions every defect in the chain of evidence, and lopped off every contradiction and inconsistency; reserving to themselves as much of the lie as had

the semblance of truth, and adding what was necessary to perfect the falsehood.

GUNNISON'S HISTORY OF THE MORMONS

51. Gunnison, in his *History of the Mormons* (p. 94), says that when the “Manuscript Found” was put in the hands of Lambdin, the printer, “Sidney Rigdon was employed to edit it for the press.” No writer, no witness had ever asserted this; but it was necessary to make out the case, and he volunteered the falsehood, not knowing the fact, that at that time Rigdon was only a farmer's boy of fifteen, and that it was Engles instead of Lambdin who had the manuscript.

52. In the attempt, however, to show that the boy Joe had such a reputation as a money digger, at Palmyra, New York, that Rigdon, at Pittsburgh, four hundred miles away, heard of him, and entrusted to him the scheme of founding a new religion, Gunnison breaks down and admits it incredible (*Gunnison's History of the Mormons*, p. 94).

53. Gunnison then asserts that from 1817 to 1820, the trunk supposed to contain the manuscript was at the house of the widow Spaulding's “brother, in Onondaga Hollow, [Onondaga county, New York,] near the residence of the Smiths; [Palmyra, Wayne county, New York,] Wayne and Onondaga counties being separated by a narrow township of land” (*Gunnison's History of the Mormons*, p. 95).

54. Now, it is a fact that the whole breadth of Cayuga county lies between Onondaga on the east and Wayne on the west, that Onondaga Hollow is in the east part of Onondaga county, and Palmyra, the residence of the Smiths, in the west part of Wayne, making the residence of Smith some eighty miles from Onondaga Hollow. As Smith was but twelve years old at that time, the inference of Gunnison that he smelled out a manuscript eighty miles off and stole and laid it by to use in founding a new religion, at some future day, is not very forcible. He would need a revelation, at least, to guide him in finding it.

55. But Gunnison's premises are fatal in still another point He locates Spaulding's manuscript at Onondaga Hollow, from 1817 to 1820 (*History of the Mormons*, p. 95), during all which time the Smith family, according to Howe, lived at Royalton, Vermont (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, p. 11), two hundred and eighty miles from Onondaga Hollow. If Howe's authority is not good for the residence of the Smiths, it is not for the

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

Spaulding story. If it is, Gunnison's conclusions are worse than worthless.

56. Though Howe's History of Mormonism, which Gunnison principally followed, almost shows Spaulding's manuscript in Howe's hands, the letter of Spaulding's widow, published in the newspapers generally, from 1839 to 1842, showed that she had it in her possession from her husband's death till Hulburt, the agent of Howe, came after it, in 1834, and that her daughter, and other friends in Monson, were in the habit of reading it, down till that time, and leaves the reader with the impression that she delivered it to Hulburt, for Howe's use; and the testimony of both the widow and daughter, published in the Quincy Whig, and extensively republished, most positively asserts that it was so delivered to Hulburt, on an agreement to publish it, and that they received a letter from those having it in charge that they should not publish it, because it did not read as they expected; Gunnison ventures the assertion that, ever since the Book of Mormon appeared, the "Manuscript Found has been the manuscript lost;" and apparently oppressed with his own theory, that Smith at the age of twelve had been inspired with the knowledge of its existence in an old trunk eighty miles away, and stolen it; still guesses that by accident or design it got into Smith's hands in some way (*Gunnison's History of the Mormons*, p. 95).

57. The testimony of both the widow and daughter that the manuscript of Spaulding was only about one quarter as large as the printed Book of Mormon, and, therefore, contained but about one twentieth the reading matter, neither Howe, Gunnison, nor any other writer has noticed.

58. But Gunnison claims that, notwithstanding the barbarous style of language in which the Book of Mormon is rendered, it is really a work of genius of the highest order (*Gunnison's History of the Mormons*, pp. 95, 96). One eighteenth, he says, is copied from the Bible. If the whole of Spaulding's manuscript was copied into it, it would make but one twentieth, and something like nine tenths would remain the work of Smith. A little singular it is that the unlettered Joe and the learned Solomon Spaulding should have the same masterly and commanding genius and write in the same barbarous style.

FORD'S HISTORY OF ILLINOIS

59. Governor Ford, in his History of Illinois, jumps over all the difficulties, and without pretending to any information beyond what

Howe's History contains, makes the sweeping and unsupported assertion that "Rigdon had become possessed of a religious romance, written by a Presbyterian Clergyman, in Ohio, then dead, which suggested the idea of starting a new religion. It was agreed that Joe Smith should be put forward as Prophet, and the two devised the story that golden plates had been found, containing a record inscribed on them in unknown characters, which, when deciphered by the power of inspiration, gave the history of the ten lost tribes of Israel" (*Ford's History of Illinois*, p. 252)."

60. Not a new witness is introduced, not a new fact is ascertained. No attempt is made to trace either Smith or Rigdon one step of the way over the three hundred miles of country between them. No attempt is made to show how Rigdon in Pittsburgh heard of the boy Joe, whose fame for money digging extended throughout a quarter of the township of Manchester^a, in central New York, or how he learned of the preacher Rigdon, who, as a Baptist preacher, was known for nearly twenty miles out of Pittsburgh, in southwestern Pennsylvania. None of these little particulars troubles the Governor in his attempt to blacken the fame of the Prophet, the easier to vindicate the crime of conniving at his murder.

61. Conjectures, of which he could not possibly know anything, which other men had for twenty years ransacked half the continent to find some evidence of, he simply asserts as though they were unquestionable facts.

62. Like most men who bear false witness, he has made his falsehood patent. The Book of Mormon does not contain "the history of the ten lost tribes," as he asserts, as anyone will see by reading the book, and whoever will assert such a falsehood, when the truth is so easily known, whether from carelessness or corruption, is not a safe historian, on disputed questions, of which he has no personal knowledge.

ILLUSTRATED HISTORY OF THE MORMONS

63. The anonymous author of the Illustrated History of the Mormons, though more just than most writers on that side, falls into the common and unsupported falsehood by saying that Rigdon was a "compositor," that is, a typesetter (p. 45), but without one word of evidence to justify the assertion.

^{60a} Manchester, Ontario county, adjoins Palmyra, Wayne county, and was, part of the time, the place of Smith's residence.

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

64. The same author falls in with the general fame of the Spaulding story, without investigating it, and says, "Joseph Smith and Sidney Rigdon seem to have acted in concert in its concoction, from materials thus prepared for them" (*Illustrated History of the Mormons*, p. 49). This book was written in England, though published by Derby and Miller, Auburn, New York, and as it is not characterized with the usual virulence, possibly the author had only heard the general statement of the Spaulding story, without those details which utterly overthrow it.

65. In the same manner, he is led to say that "anachronisms are frequent" in the Book of Mormon (*Illustrated History of Mormonism*, p. 49), though not a single one is pointed out, for the best reason in the world, none exists. This fact does not rest on testimony but can be tested at any time by an examination of the book.

HOWE'S GREAT WEST

66. Henry Howe published, at Cincinnati, in 1854, a "History of the Great West," in which he revives the Spaulding story, with the theory that Rigdon first heard of Joseph Smith as a vagabond money digger, subsequent to 1827, when Rigdon was a Campbellite preacher, in Mentor, Ohio, and Smith resided near Palmyra, New York.

67. No evidence is offered that Rigdon had the Spaulding manuscript or that he had ever heard of Smith. The only attempt to show either of these things possible is the statement that Rigdon was frequently absent" (*Great West*, p. 337).

68. As Rigdon did not go to Mentor till after Smith was engaged on the Book of Mormon, the suggestion that he there heard of him, and on the faith of his vagabond character, entrusted him with the commission of sole founder of a new religion, of which Rigdon was to come in as junior partner, after the first rugged paths were trod, comes too late.

69. And against the suggestion that Rigdon heard of him at all, till the publication of the Book of Mormon, in the newspapers, is the fact that Mentor, Ohio, is two hundred and thirty miles from Palmyra or Manchester, New York. And in the twenty-two years search which has been made for some evidence of a possible collusion between Smith and Rigdon, previous to the publication of the Book of Mormon, not a witness has been produced who could show that any person residing

twenty miles from Smith ever heard of him till the announcement, through the newspapers, of the publication of that book.

70. That Rigdon, as a Campbellite preacher at Mentor, was occasionally absent from home, is too probable to require any proof; but that that fact, equally true of every Christian minister, convicts him of stealing manuscripts to found a new religion on, or of dealing with vagrant money diggers, hundreds of miles away, is a new rule of evidence, to which all other Christian ministers will object.

71. The town of Mentor is only five miles from the town of Kirtland, and Rigdon was the minister of the Campbellite Churches in both towns, and after receiving the faith of the Latter Day Saints, remained at Kirtland till 1837; and till 1848 was prominently connected with all the public discussions of that faith. Had he at any time previous to the publication of the Book of Mormon made a journey from Mentor to Palmyra, and stopped with Joseph long enough to commit to him the charge of founding a new religion, and the reconstruction of the Spaulding manuscript into an oracle of God, why has no one of the Campbellites about Mentor and Kirtland any knowledge of his going to Palmyra, or of his being absent on some unknown journey, long enough to have accomplished that work?

72. For twenty-two years, since the Spaulding story was first promulgated, as far as Joseph Smith and the Book of Mormon have been preached, all Christendom has looked earnestly and with painful anxiety for some such proof, and have looked in vain. Had he made a single journey from Mentor, in which he could not be traced step by step, and his employment proved day by day, so as to show the impossibility of his having visited the Seer of Palmyra, that absence would have been announced, and proclaimed the triumph of his accusers.

73. It is obvious that Henry Howe had not investigated the matter at all, but only followed common fame, guessing his way through difficulties, which were apparent on the face of E. D. Howe's History of Mormonism. His theory of the plagiarism of the Book of Mormon is built on the exploded work of E. D. Howe, altered, but not improved, by his own guessing.

FERRIS' UTAH AND THE MORMONS

74. Of all the writers who have given currency to the Spaulding story,

the most able and at the same time the most unscrupulous and corrupt is Benjamin G. Ferris, late Secretary of Utah, author of a book entitled "Utah and the Mormons." Ferris not only repeats the old exploded lie that Rigdon was a printer but says that at the time Spaulding's manuscript was in Patterson and Lambdin's printing office, Rigdon "was in the employment of Patterson, and became so much interested in the 'Manuscript Found' as to copy it, 'as he himself has frequently stated'" (*Utah and the Mormons*, p. 52).

75. Such unblushing falsehood it would be difficult elsewhere to find. At the date of Ferris' publication, the Spaulding story had been twenty years published. Every effort in the power of man had been made to show the "Manuscript Found" in Rigdon's possession, or where he might possibly have seen it, and so far in vain. Rigdon had presided over a Church of three thousand Latter Day Saints in Pittsburgh. And in the anxiety to destroy his influence, the Rev. Mr. Williams, pastor of a Church in Pittsburgh, aided by the whole clergy, had published a work for the purpose of fastening this plagiarism on Rigdon. And not a witness could be found to say that Rigdon was a printer, not a witness that he was ever in Patterson and Lambdin's office, not a witness that he was ever in Pittsburgh while that printing office existed, and not a witness that he ever saw or heard of either Spaulding or his manuscript, previous to the publication of "Mormonism Unveiled" in 1834.

76. But that is not the darkest feature in this allegation of Mr. Ferris. In saying that Rigdon "became so much interested in the 'Manuscript Found' as to copy it, 'as he himself has frequently stated,'" including the last six words in quotations, as though he had copied them from some other writer, Ferris is guilty both of a known falsehood and an unblushing forgery (*Utah and the Mormons*, p. 52).

77. No man on earth had ever so written. Ferris did not copy his quoted words from any other writer, and it is patent on the pages of his book that he had read and was familiar with those works, on this question, in which Rigdon and his friends have continually denied that Rigdon ever saw or heard of Spaulding, or his manuscript, earlier than 1834, and challenged the world to produce one word of proof against him.

78. Pursuing this course of falsehood, even when truth would seem to serve his purpose just as well, Ferris accounts for the meagerness of the evidence against Smith and Rigdon by asserting the death of Patterson in 1826, four years before the publication of the Book of Mormon (*Utah and the Mormons*, p. 52).

79. Yet the Rev. S. Williams published, in the city of Pittsburgh, the residence of Patterson, in the year 1842, a pamphlet entitled, "Mormonism Exposed," containing a certificate concerning this same Spaulding manuscript, signed by this same Robert Patterson, and dated April 2d, 1842. And John E. Page, then residing in Pittsburgh, in Apostolic charge of the Latter Day Saints, and abundantly able and disposed to expose Williams, if he introduced any false testimonies, published a pamphlet in reply, and admits Patterson's certificate into his work without question. Patterson was living, and a prominent citizen of Pittsburgh, sixteen years after Ferris writes him dead. And no writer, no man, before Ferris, said he was dead. Ferris is the original author of the falsehood. And this fact does not rest on the assumption of any man. If he had any authority, he had but to produce it. There is none.

80. But with his unscrupulous corruption, Ferris was too shrewd not to see that the theory which says that Rigdon heard of Smith's fame as a money digger, three or four hundred miles away, and looked him up as a suitable person to employ, to found a new religion, was ridiculous; that some new invention was necessary; or, when passion was over, every sane man would reject the wicked impeachment.

81. Drawing upon his imagination alone, and asserting each point as though it was an unquestioned fact in history, Ferris says: "In the course of his wanderings, Smith met with Rigdon. These two men together conceived the idea of starting a system of religious imposture commensurate with the popular credulity.

82. "Conjointly they possessed, in mercantile phrase, the requisite capital for such an adventure. Smith had cunning, plausible volubility, Seer stones, mysterious antiquities, and, withal, the prestige of success; Rigdon was versed in the lights and shadows of religious verbiage; had some literary pretensions; was a printer; and, above all, had a copy of Spaulding's book.

83. "Which started the bright idea of the golden Bible, is not known; though, in all likelihood, the credit is due to Smith, as he ever after maintained the ascendancy in the new hierarchy. After the plan had assumed a definite form in the minds of the originators, it was easy for Joseph, in his perambulations, to trace out and secure the original manuscript of Spaulding, to guard the intended scheme from exposure" (*Utah and the Mormons*, pp. 55-56).

84. Thus, without spending one moment in inquiry, without even troubling himself to pick up such facts as were in his reach, much less

inquiring for evidence, which twenty years of the most industrious research had failed to find, Ferris sits down in his armed chair, and on a half-page of foolscap, demonstrates by his unsupported assertion, not only that Rigdon had a copy of the Spaulding manuscript, but that Smith, while hazing around with peep stones, and mineral rods, strayed off from Palmyra, three or four hundred miles, to Pittsburgh, to look up Rigdon as a partner; as tradition says, the head of a severed snake will look up his eliminated tail, which some mischievous boy has cut off and hidden in the most secret place; but that Smith absolutely traced up the original manuscript, and got possession of that also.

85. Surely, the millions of Christians who had anxiously waited twenty years for some scrap of evidence that either Smith or Rigdon ever heard of the Spaulding manuscript previous to 1834 ought to be thankful to Ferris for alleging all they wish to prove, and saving the necessity of evidence. Henceforth, no one need trouble himself to prove that Rigdon obtained a copy of the manuscript, for anyone can prove by Ferris' falsehood that Smith had the original, without obligation to the copy.

86. Why two men, obscure as Smith and Rigdon, each entertaining the ambition to found a new religion, should curb their zeal, till blindly burrowing like the mole, through the three hundred miles of intervening country, they embraced each other; why the entire task of accomplishing the work should be put upon the most inefficient of the two; why their two minds were so perfectly agreed, that, while one secured a copy, the other secured the original of Spaulding's manuscript, Mr. Ferris must tell; nobody else can.

87. But, why no other writer ever asserted this, why Ferris does not offer one word of proof in support of it, is very plain. Anybody can tell that. It is because there is not a word of truth in it.

88. As if to test the gullibility of his readers, and prove how far the Christian world would be satisfied with falsehoods which a schoolboy could detect, so they militated against the divine mission of Joseph Smith, Ferris takes pains to prove that Smith "came into the northern part of Pennsylvania, near the Susquehanna River, in which part his father-in-law resided." And then, to show that Smith might by possibility have found Rigdon there, he adds, "Sidney Rigdon, it will also be recollected, resided in the State of Pennsylvania" (*Utah and the Mormons*, p. 61).

89. True, Rigdon did once reside in Pennsylvania, but it was the other side of the Alleghany mountains, and by the nearest road, meandering around the mountains and through their gorges, more

than four hundred miles distant, and he had removed still further off into the State of Ohio, before Smith went into Pennsylvania at all (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, p. 289).

90. Pursuing his investigations with unblushing knavery and consummate skill, Ferris rakes over every document he can find, whether forged or genuine, supplying every apparent lack by his own fruitful invention, and laying especial stress upon every ebullition of passion of any of the disciples of Joseph Smith, during a period of a quarter of a century, to impeach the moral characters of the witnesses of the Book of Mormon; and sums up, that by their enemies they were held "very much below par;" and that among themselves a petulant editor, on some disagreement, called Martin Harris a lackey; and that when Oliver Cowdery and David Whitmer had some business connection with the set of men who expelled the Saints from Missouri, Rigdon accused them with being "connected with a gang of thieves, counterfeiters, liars and blacklegs, of the deepest die" (*Utah and the Mormons*, pp. 68-69).

91. This is the same set of men who, in 1838, expelled the Latter Day Saints from Missouri, and in 1854 invaded Kansas, for the purpose of expelling the free State men; David R. Atchison, late member and President of the United States Senate, being the leader in both forays. And though Atchison's men in either case stopped at no crime, it is certain that many men of the highest standing in the United States have had much more connection with them than Cowdery and Whitmer were accused of, in those hours of peril in which they were unfortunately separated from their brethren.

92. A fact worth all the rest is, that in all those changes which separated the early ministers of this persecuted faith, even when Joseph and many of his faithful brethren were in prison, and the dead bodies of others lying around unburied, and Cowdery and Whitmer in the camp of their persecutors, they still gave the same unvarying testimony of the divine authority of the dispensation and the Book of Mormon; both relating circumstantially, on oath, in a Missouri court, faced and browbeaten by a Missouri mob, the fact of the exhibition of the plates to them according to their testimony in the Book of Mormon.

93. And Cowdery, under the same circumstances, knowing that he was cast out and hated by his brethren as a traitor, who had joined their enemies and imperiled their lives, testified, on his solemn oath, that Joseph and himself did receive the Priesthood on two different occasions, by the voice of God, and the hands of Angels; relating

circumstantially the time and manner of it; knowing well, when he did so, that the Missourians would turn against him more bitterly than his brethren had, and that the best hope which remained for him, was to flee secretly for his life.

94. Though most of the witnesses of the Book of Mormon were, one time and another, separated from the Church, not one of them ever drew back from his testimony, or departed from the faith; and notwithstanding the violent hatred engendered by internal discord among brethren, which grew up against some of them at the time of their separation, they have all lived down scandal and reproach, and by their irreproachable lives have established an unimpeachable reputation for integrity and truth, both among Saints and Gentiles.

95. The reputation of Joseph, as a money digger and a peep stone Seer, originated in falsehood, and has been kept up for the purpose of ridiculing his calling to the Prophetic office. The truth about it is that as a day laborer, he was employed at wages to dig, not for enchanted treasures, but for money, which tradition said some Spaniards had buried in the bank of the Susquehanna River (*Gunnison's History of the Mormons*, p. 92. *Pratt's Ancient American Records*).

96. The various jokes about money digging, which from this fact passed between him and his early associates, were industriously gathered up by Philastus Hulburt, duly embellished and made a part of Howe's "History of Mormonism;" and the affidavits there accumulated, if they prove anything, prove only ignorance, superstition, and the most venial offences, of which the witnesses bring in themselves for the largest share, and leave the reader with the impression that if what they say of Smith is really true, he was rather guilty of an occasional practical joke on their superstition, than of any participation in it.

97. Nothing is more evident, notwithstanding the pains taken to conceal it, than that many of them believed Joseph had the plates, from which he professed to be translating; and one of the witnesses, Willard Chase, testifies that, notwithstanding Joseph's anxiety to make his possession of the plates a secret, as many as twelve men did get to see them (*Howe's History of Mormonism*, p. 245). And many of the witnesses who testify that he was not a man of truth show, nevertheless, that they and others did credit him in matters which, to say the least of it, were a severe tax on one's credulity.

98. The true test of any man's character for truth is his power to produce conviction in the minds of those who know him. This power Joseph had in an eminent degree. So much is admitted by his accusers.

One of their chief accusations was that his neighbors, during his Prophetic career, believed on his word alone, things hardly believable at all. Never was an attempt to impeach witnesses less successful than this, of the witnesses of the Book of Mormon. None of the old Prophets had better testimonies than Joseph and James.

Chapter 37

Place of your Dwellings

I

On Verse 1

1. Israel, in all ages, when they have been a people, have been gathered in large communities. While they wandered, they were in tribes and families, consisting of large bodies of men. Whenever they settled down, it was in cities, towns, and villages. This was their order from the time of Abraham, till the taking of Jerusalem by the Romans.

2. The Hebrews, of every lineage, wherever they have a separate existence, follow this Law. The Arabs, descendants of Abraham by Hagar, have never departed from it; and the Tartar tribes, his children in the line of Keturah, keep it till the present time. The American Indians, descended from the Patriarch Joseph, keep up the custom in almost every place.

3. In Europe, the same custom prevails in many States and nations. With the German and Sclavonian nations, this order is nearly universal. Of the Russian provinces, less is known, but it is thought that the same custom is nearly universal there. It is also found to a great extent in Asia and Africa. It everywhere presents itself as a primeval custom, partially lost in the corruptions of the age.

4. Man was not designed for solitude and loneliness. Neither sound moral sentiment, the pure affections of the heart, nor distinguished intelligence and usefulness are likely to grow up in solitude. Men, by living separate from each other, learn to hate.

5. Though there may be frequent disagreements among the members of congregated communities, yet, on the whole, their attachments are necessarily exceedingly strong. Constant association develops the affections of the heart. Ideas are communicated from individual to individual, by which they are made partakers of each other's knowledge. Emulation produces superior excellence. Institutions for public instruction are easily kept up. Knowledge is easily brought within the reach of all.

6. In a community thus constituted, no ordinary power can exercise

tyranny and oppression. In a rural village, every man must know the rights and possessions of his neighbor. If either is invaded, all will feel their insecurity, and a burst of indignation from the whole community would nip oppression in the bud.

7. The congregated numbers who cultivate the soil of a considerable district would be able to interpose a strong barrier to the progress of lawless bands, such as have robbed the Saints heretofore, and to defend themselves against any violence short of open warfare.

8. For the purpose of adding as much as possible to their security, all their dwellings and buildings of every kind should be erected with reference to joint defense. Every house should be a fortress, and part of a system of fortification.

II

On Verses 2-3

1. The gathering of the Saints to places chosen of God would be of little account if they might scatter abroad, every man at his own pleasure. The Commandment of God is to come out from among the wicked, that ye be not partakers of their sins, and receive not of their plagues (*Rev. 18:4*). The command implies danger that good men may be led away from righteousness, by the prevailing wickedness, as many have been.

2. But as it is sometimes necessary, on one's private business, and sometimes for the public service, for some to go among them for the time, this mode is provided, subject to needful restraints of obtaining permission.

Chapter 38

Groves, Forests, and Waters

I

1. Greece has become a desolation, her fields a desert, and her rivers dried up, by the destruction of the forests. Much of Palestine has suffered in

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

the same manner. The Libyan deserts are slowly but surely advancing on the fertile alluvion of the Nile because there are no forests there.

2. In higher latitudes, forests are equally necessary as a protection against cold, especially against winter storms. Prairie and timber regions afford a most striking contrast in winter comforts, in favor of the latter.

3. But, aside from these advantages, there is a peculiar beneficence in providing abundant public parks and watering places. They are the harbingers of health and happiness. And the common fisheries of the waters, and pasturage of public groves, and unappropriated forests, will be a great relief to such poor people as are to be found at times in the best governed States. The poor you have always with you.

Chapter 39

Apparel and Ornament

I

On Verse 1

1. This Command forbids all those extravagancies in dress which occasionally become fashionable, regardless of health and convenience. But it does not forbid ornamenting and enriching the clothing in any manner which is seemly and convenient.

2. The constant change of the style of dress, under the name of new fashions, is exceedingly inconvenient; requiring great waste in making over or throwing by clothing, or the use of inferior material, which, at a slight diminution of cost, will last only the period of short-lived fashion.

3. Every form of dress which pinches and compresses the body or limbs, so as to prevent a full natural growth, is grossly inconvenient and unseemly. The narrow shoes and boots, preferred by most men and women, are liable to this objection; and it is a depraved taste which admires them. More objectionable, because violating more fatally the laws of life, are the small waisted garments, generally worn by women, and occasionally by men, for many years back.

4. Besides these styles of dress, objectionable because they injure health, shorten life, and produce hereditary disease and weakness, there is a numerous class of fashions and styles to be discarded for less reasons; such as enormous bell crowned hats, sleeves broad enough to cover the whole person, long narrow skirted coats, resembling a tail rather than a garment, skirts swinging below the knees, or enlarged with hoops to enormous proportions, or padded out to the uncouth style of a camel's hump.

5. A most serious objection to following the fashions of Gentiles is their tendency to divide the rich against the poor, and the poor against the rich. With fashions changing every season, only the most wealthy are able to wear really rich clothing and keep up with the fashions. They are tempted to affect distinction by making the changes so frequent that few can keep up with them. Where custom forbids appearing in public a second time with the same dress, the burden is truly enormous. Poorer people, especially those who, though doing much business, are in debt, are frequently ruined in endeavoring to keep within the circle of fashion.

II

On Verse 3

1. Apparel for solemn assemblies and public occasions is a matter of divine appointment. That for common uses is not positively of divine appointment, though restrained and regulated by Commandment. Within proper limitations, everyone can exercise his own taste in common apparel; and it is even allowed when sojourning among Gentiles to imitate, to some moderate extent, their foolish and ridiculous styles, to avoid impertinent observations, so they are not hurtful to health.

III

On Verse 4

1. These ornaments will distinguish Priesthood, Order, Degree, and Office. It is a high offence to put on false insignia, and a humiliating punishment to be compelled to take the proper insignia off for unworthy conduct.

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

2. Gold is the proper color for the Priesthood of an Endless Life, and silver for the Priesthood of Life; but other material may be used, having reference to color and incorruptibility.

3. It is not allowable for anyone to wear or have other ornaments so much resembling those which distinguish the Priesthood that they may be mistaken for Priestly insignia, nor to wear the insignia of any Priesthood but his own, nor to wear the insignia when he is interdicted from the exercise of Priestly functions. These ornaments should be worn in worship and public assemblies, and may at other times.

Chapter 40

Feasts

I

On Verses 1-2

1. The direct and positive obligation of the Sabbath is to make it a day of rest, and to have a holy convocation; that is, an assembly for religious worship.

2. The obligation to make it a day of rest is upon every house, and upon all that dwell therein; and it is the duty of all to assemble in Temples and Synagogues to worship God, and to execute his Law.

3. Each of these duties is, in some degree, modified by the necessity of doing some small amount of work which could not be anticipated and provided against during the preceding days of the week, and an occasional necessity for some to remain at home to care for those who are unable to attend at the house of worship. These exceptions will not excuse persons absenting themselves from public worship, on the score of ill health, who are able to give some slight attention to business, nor to remain at home to take care of those whom they can leave on other days, nor will they excuse working on the Sabbath because it is very profitable, when by resting they would not absolutely abandon property to destruction.

4. There are some kinds of business really necessary among men, which cannot be conducted without an occasional departure from the strict rule of the Sabbath. Such labors, being really necessary,

are not forbidden, but should be pursued with sincere regard to the sanctity of the Sabbath.

5. The Priesthood, in their administrations, according to the letter of the Commandment, profane the Sabbath as oft as it occurs; but to its intent they keep it (*Matt 7:5*). Sailors are obliged to work more or less on the Sabbath. It is enough for them to keep it as far as the necessities of their business will admit. Some kinds of business require incessant labor for more than six days. In such employments, everyone should sanctify as a Sabbath an entire day, either beginning or ending during the Sabbath, by means of which the Sabbath of a part would begin when that of the rest ended, and thus all enjoy Sabbath blessings without preventing the work.

6. Recreations are not forbidden on the Sabbath and are appropriate to it, but attending a holy convocation is a duty. Those, therefore, who do not faithfully attend it with sincerity of heart ought to be excluded from all recreations as profane persons, contemners of the Sabbath.

7. The Sabbath is for beasts of burden, as well as for man. They are subject unto man, and ought to rest with him. It is not unlawful, however, to drive them for the purpose of carrying infants, infirm, and aged to the sanctuary, so their load is not burdensome, and the distance such as men usually walk to attend the convocation. But anything which really amounts to labor, it is unlawful to put upon them.

II

On Verses 14-15

1. The feast of first fruits is held once a year, but may, if found desirable, be held oftener, being governed by the times of the principal harvests. It is not necessary that it be held at the same time in all places, but in every place according to the harvests of that country.

2. First fruits are required of all who dwell upon the inheritance of the Saints. Of the Saints, the head of every house is required also to offer a victim, according to his substance. If the stranger offers a victim, it is acceptable. For refusing a victim, or offering an insignificant one, or curtailing the amount of first fruits, the frown of God and the disdain of the righteous is deemed a sufficient punishment.

III

On Verses 16-17

1. It is required, at all times of the year, before you eat of your harvest, to offer first fruits before the Lord at such places as shall be appointed to receive them. This offering may be as small as you please, so it is entire; for it is only a memorial of first fruits.

2. But at the time of the feast of first fruits, all are required to offer according to their abundance; and of those things which are not put to use till the feast of first fruits, no memorial need be offered, but the offering for the feast.

3. Those living very remote from the place appointed for receiving first fruits, who have a real necessity for using of a crop without the delay necessary in making the offering, may conscientiously set out the first fruits, and they shall be holy to the Lord as if offered at the proper place, and eat of the crop. But if they then fail of bringing forward that which is thus sanctified and duly offering it, they will be guilty and must make an atonement as for refusing first fruits. Withholding first fruits is a grievous offence.

Chapter 41

Inheritances

I

1. Inheritances usually consist of a town lot of about one acre, and a farm of from one hundred and fifty to two hundred acres.

Chapter 42

Descent of Inheritances

I

On Verse 1

1. The son of the father's flesh, born of a free woman, before any other of such a mother, is firstborn by the Law. If there is no son of a free woman, the son of a concubine is firstborn by the Law. In either of these cases, if the mother lived with the father as his wife, under a betrothal or a defective marriage, at the time her first son was born, he will not forfeit his right as firstborn thereby.

2. If there is no son by a wife, the oldest son by any strange woman will inherit as firstborn; but if he has no son of his own flesh, then the son first adopted, if he has made no distinction among them, or the one he has exalted above all others, if he has so exalted any one, shall inherit as firstborn.

II

On Verse 2

1. If a son accepts a separate inheritance, he cannot inherit from his father as firstborn, though he is every way worthy, nor can he have a portion as a son, because he is thus already made equal with him. He gains by this a full inheritance, instead of a portion; but his younger brother, who inherits as firstborn, will take precedence before him in the family.

III

On Verse 3

1. An heiress is one whose father has an inheritance, but no son.

Notes: 1856 (A. R. VI.)

If there are several of them, such as wish to inherit from their father must retain his name, and name it on their husbands; otherwise, they will lose their portions.

2. If one who has received an inheritance wishes to return after his father's death and claim a portion, he must give up his own inheritance, and he cannot return without the consent of all the heirs. If one who has already received a portion of his father's inheritance marries an heiress, his portion will return to the head of the house.

IV

On Verse 4

1. An only son, or a son in a small family, ought not to marry an heiress, because, as he cannot perpetuate both houses, he thus becomes the possible means of extinguishing one or the other. Having once assumed the name of his wife's father, he cannot return to his father's house, even to save it from extinction.

V

On Verse 5

1. In case the inheritance is merely given to him who is needy, without reference to the name of its former possessor, he takes in his own name, and the house of the former is lost.

VI

On Verse 6

1. When the possessor has not improved and given value to his inheritance, if he abandons it for one year, it may be given to another. But if he has made valuable improvements, it will not be given to another until he evinces a design of total abandonment.

VII

On Verses 7-8

1. In such a case, the custom is to grant the inheritance to some worthy man, requiring him to pay him who gave it up a sum sufficient to improve another in a similar manner. But this will not be done when the change is without counsel.

VIII

On Verse 9

1. While the land is abundant and waiting to be occupied, it is desirable that most of the sons thus go up to new lands, and establish themselves on inheritances, instead of remaining to receive a portion of their fathers. But, when duly qualified, it is preferable that the firstborn remain to inherit, because otherwise a younger brother will take precedence of him.

IX

On Verse 10

1. The distinction should ever be kept up between an inheritance and a portion. The inheritance is one and indivisible. All that inherit receive their portions in it, unless they choose to occupy it jointly. The division of an inheritance into portions is not desirable when the whole house can agree in occupying it jointly. It is desirable to double up the portions, but they cannot go to strangers.

Chapter 43

Social Order

I

1. This Law does not justify slavery. The servitude is voluntary. Every servant can depart from oppression at his will.

Chapter 44

Household Relations

I

On Verses 1-2

1. Though going after strange women is a great sin, the iniquity ought to be visited on the parents, rather than the children of fornication. The child by a strange woman is an heir, and if his father refuses to acknowledge him, may be affiliated.

2. But the effect of indulgence in such sins is general corruption of the physical systems of the whole people. If persisted in, it would result in the extermination of any people. The unrestrained, indiscriminate intercourse of the sexes, generally practiced, and to some extent justified in Christian countries, diminishes by a full moiety the natural increase of the race, and greatly aggravates the diseases and all the miseries of life. Yet these evils everywhere accompany Monogamy.

II

On Verse 2

1. The unrestrained, indiscriminate intercourse of the sexes, generally

practiced and to some extent justified, in Christian countries, diminishes by a full moiety the natural increase of the race, and greatly aggravates the diseases and all the miseries of life. Yet these evils everywhere accompany Monogamy.

III

On Verse 3

1. A man is equally forbidden to marry his father's wife, as his mother; and his son's wife, as his daughter; and whom he may not marry, to lie with her is abominable incest. In either case, the offence ought to be punished with dismemberment or death. But when there is a possibility that the accused is a victim of false witness, he ought to be spared these extreme penalties.

2. Several instances are mentioned in the scriptures where men married their sisters, without any word of disapproval. But the words brother and sister are frequently used to signify any near of kin, and include cousins as well as brothers and sisters, in the modern sense. In some of these cases, the relationship was by adoption, and not by blood, and therefore no obstruction to marriage. In no case does it appear that a servant of God married his sister by blood.

IV

On Verse 4

1. The period of life when marriage is proper varies much in different climates, and more or less in races, families, and individuals. As a general rule in medium latitudes, sixteen years of age for males, and fourteen for females, has been determined on. But in equatorial regions, a much earlier age is proper.

2. Many modern writers justify marriages with dwarfs, hunchbacks, and other deformed persons. A corrupt sentimental feeling has been engendered in favor of such marriages, supported with the maxim that the marriage is not to the casket, but the soul within it. The person is not the casket, it is the soul. The clothes only are the casket. All that lives is soul, and it is that which is married. To marry such is to

perpetuate their monstrosity.

3. The children of insane parentage are eminently subject to that infirmity. The children of hating or even of indifferent parents are cold-hearted and ill-tempered on the whole, have inferior intellects, and are more subject to idiocy. Most idiots are begotten in anger.

4. It is singular that in times when so much pains is taken to improve the breeds and raise the best stocks of animals, there is so general an indifference about the breed of men. Such an entire disregard of the difference in stocks, and of all the means of improving them.

5. Men are exceedingly careful of the sires of their pigs, lambs, calves, colts, and mules that they be of the best physical form, but will give their daughters in marriage to miserably misformed men, to be the sires of their grandchildren.

6. The same means which will improve a breed of cattle, will improve a race of men; and it is worthy of note that intellectual and moral as well as material qualities run with the race^a. Consequently, any race may be improved by crossing the best stocks upon the best, having respect to intellectual and moral as well as material development, and giving the progeny superior culture. Against such advantages, wealth is a shadow.

7. In the struggle of human passions, it would not be safe to take the same remedy against a debased race as is taken in the animal world. The temptation to partiality and injustice is too great. But there are certain springs of human action, which, when brought into healthy exercise, will work a more effectual cure.

8. If a man possessed of every excellence may marry a number of wives, and raise a multitude of children; if a woman of superior endowments may choose the father of her children among the best of men, without disgrace to herself, or stain upon them, the superior will not consort with the degraded.

9. Under a system which forbids woman to propose marriage, she is left to take up with such as offer, whether worthy or not, or go barren. And as more men than women prefer solitary lives. In the main, they are obliged to mate with men inferior to themselves. The

6a Editor's Note: From the 1828 Webster's Dictionary, RACE, noun... 1. The lineage of a family, or continued series of descendants from a parent who is called the stock. A race is the series of descendants indefinitely. Thus all mankind are called the race of Adam; the Israelites are of the race of Abraham and Jacob. Thus we speak of a race of kings, the race of Clovis or Charlemagne; a race of nobles, etc. Hence the long race of Alban fathers come. 2. A generation; a family of descendants.

uncertainty of ever receiving another offer induces many a woman to mate herself with a man whom it requires an effort not to despise.

10. Relieve woman of this embarrassment, by such a system that men who are suitable to be the fathers of the next generation, may have several wives; restore the sentiment that a multitude of children are a crown of glory to an old man; and every comely, virtuous and intellectual woman will refuse marriage till she can mate with one equal or superior to herself; leaving men of ill temper, immoral habits, ignorance, sensuality and corrupt flesh to connect with vile women, or go childless to their graves. There is, on earth, no redemption for man short of this.

V

On Verse 5

1. Every man having a wife, and seeking another, ought to consult the wishes of the former. But she cannot impose an absolute veto. If her objection is in any degree well-founded, it ought to prevail; but if it is merely captious or capricious, the Judges would not sustain it. It is better not to press an objection which her husband is not satisfied with, unless it is really a strong one, founded in a legal obstacle, or a positive unfitness. But any objection from a good wife should weigh greatly with her husband.

VI

On Verses 6-8

1. At the age of twenty years, a daughter has a right to give herself in marriage, without her father's consent. He ought not to withhold to give her at an earlier age to a worthy man, whom she loves, because not the man of his choice; and at that age she ought to seek his consent, though not concluded by his refusal.

VII

On Verse 9

1. It is a father's duty to seek to get his sons well married, soon after they are sixteen years old. He may restrain them from improper marriages till they are twenty-three. But to refuse to allow a son to take one wife, who was not liable to any just and well-founded objections, down till he was twenty-three years old, would be so gross an abuse of parental authority as to justly call for the interposition of the Judges.

2. The power of the parents over the marriages of their children is a conservative power. They ought not to make their matches; only to aid them in proper, and restrain them of improper unions. As this power ceases early in life and is ever subject to the supervision of the Judges, to prevent its use for malicious and selfish purposes, it cannot work any very serious grievances.

VII

On Verse 10

1. A covenant or promise to marry is a betrothal. It is not in the nature of a commercial contract, and the breach of it cannot be compensated in money. In most cases, if a man is disposed to rid himself of the engagement, it is better to release him. But it is a matter of the heart, which every woman must judge for herself. If she insists, and he cannot show good cause against her, he should be punished according to the magnitude of the offence, and put under interdict against marrying at all, until the offence is purged.

2. But if a man will lie with a woman, and beget seed upon her, he is under obligation to his child and to society to marry her. He cannot object that she is unworthy, for any less cause than will justify putting away. At worst, she is as fit to be his companion as the mother of his children.

VII

On Verse 15: A woman chosen of God as a Prince and a Ruler

1. Such a woman would stand at the head of her house, precisely as a man stands at the head of his, having her own distinct inheritance, and retaining her own name, and naming it upon her children. Her children would inherit from her, but not her husband or any other of his children. He would have little to do with her, except to be the father of her children, and would possess his own separate inheritance. Miriam and Deborah are examples.

Polygamy

1. Polygamy has existed from the earliest ages (*Gen. 4:19*). It is often mentioned in the sacred oracles, and never spoken against. The absence of prohibition will not, as a general rule, amount to a justification. But as this institution began in the lifetime of Adam, and, with a single exception, has continued with most nations through all time, until this present; as it was practiced by a large number of the Patriarchs and Prophets, and favored servants of God. The fact that it is not spoken against raises a very strong presumption that God looks upon it with favor.

2. It is not however left to rest on presumption, or any doubtful construction. Its sanctity is a matter of distinct divine testimony. Nor is it true, as many have said, that Polygamy is permitted in the Old Testament but prohibited in the New. It is required by the Old, and not forbidden by the New Testament; and though the Book of Mormon interdicts it in the case of the Nephites (*Jacob 1:15-20 [1:15-19], 2:25-43 [2:20-33]*), the interdict is expressly stated to be in consequence of general corruptions which prevented the well working of the institution, and not that it was itself noxious; and makes the express reservation that in a future day God will institute Polygamy anew, as the means of raising up a holy seed.

3. In the Commandments which God gave to Moses, concerning the conquest of Midian, they were required to exterminate all the males, but to preserve the women and children alive (*Num. 31:15-18, 40, 46-47*). Now the Commandment requires all, men and women, to be fruitful and multiply (*Gen. 1:28, 9:1-7; Lev. 26:9*). By means of war, many men in Israel perished, leaving an excess of women. Here was an addition of sixteen thousand women, whom the men of Israel had to take for wives, beyond the excess of women in Israel. Without Polygamy, it was impossible to find husbands for so many.

4. The whole course of the Law given by Moses assumes the existence of Polygamy as a legal institution, and provides for the relative rights of the wives and their children, forbidding diminishing the substance of one wife, when he takes another (*Ex. 21:10*), or preferring the son of a favorite wife by giving him the double portion that pertains to the firstborn, when he is not firstborn (*Deut.21:15*).

5. In practice, God has in many ways sanctioned Polygamy by bestowing great blessings on the parties to such marriages and upon their posterity. Abraham had two wives: Sarah and Hagar. Though Hagar was only a servant and never being exalted to the dignity of her husband, is called a concubine, that is, a servant wife, her son Ishmael was highly blessed and received great and glorious promises as an heir to Abraham (*Gen. 16:12, 17:20. 21:13-18*).

6. Jacob had four wives; two taking rank with him, and two servant women who are therefore called concubines. By the Law of Monogamy, which prevails in most Christian countries, Leah alone was his lawful wife. Yet God regarded the sons of Rachel, Zilpha and Bilhah as legitimate sons, and made them all Patriarchs and heirs to Jacob's authority and his favor with God. Joseph, Rachel's son, who, according to the Christian of modern days, was a bastard, God established as the firstborn, and chief of the Patriarchs.

7. In these cases, polygamy has every mark of God's approbation, both by its being pursued uncondemned by men whose daily walk was guided by the word of God, and by their receiving peculiar and especial blessings which they could not otherwise have attained to.

8. But there was a Law in the days of the Patriarchs, reiterated by Moses and enforced in Israel in later ages, which required that when a man died, leaving a wife and no sons, his next brother should take the wife and raise up seed to his deceased brother. This requisition was upon him equally, whether married or not. But if unmarried, it became necessary that he should marry a wife to raise up seed to himself, lest in preserving his brother's name he should blot out his own (*Gen. 38:7-10, Deut. 25:5-6, Ruth 4:5-10*).

9. In these cases, polygamy became a positive duty, enforced by direct Commandment, as well as by the great principles of the Law of God. As often as a man obtained an inheritance and died without posterity, it became a duty that one of his kindred have two wives: one to perpetuate his own name, and the other to perpetuate that of his kinsman.

10. If it is objected that this Law grew out of the Law of Inheritances, the rule will not be changed thereby; for it did not begin with the peculiar policy of Israel as a nation, and the Law of Inheritances, with which it is connected, is perpetual.

11. Nor will it avail to say that in these cases he is not the real husband of the wife of his deceased brother, but only a proxy for the deceased; for it is equally Polygamy during life. But if it be yielded that marriage

concerns the everlasting life, quite as much as this mortal, then it follows that everyone who is truly married to several successive wives, will, in the immortal life, be a polygamist.

12. As the reason of the Law in these cases was the necessity of heirs to possess the inheritance, and to keep up the name of him who first received it; there are equal reasons in favor of polygamy in every case when he who has an inheritance is childless, and his wife barren. And if there is a well-grounded fear that the posterity may not survive to future generations, the same reasons have more or less force.

13. Gideon, who seems to have had the favor of God before all the Judges from Joshua to Samuel, had seventy sons, the children of many wives (*Jud. 8:30*). In the fragments which have survived to us of the history of those times, it is impossible to know to what extent polygamy prevailed. Of most men named, we do not know whether they had any wife. But it is remarkable that of all the great and good men of whose families we know anything, a very large majority had more than one wife.

14. In the case of David, God approbates polygamy on a large scale, in the most distinct and emphatic manner. David, before he came to the Kingdom, had married Michal, the daughter of Saul (*1 Sam. 18:27, 2 Sam. 3:13*); Abigail, the widow of Nabal (*1 Sam. 25:42*); and Ahinoam of Jezreel (*1 Sam. 30:5, 2 Sam. 2:2*).

15. Yet with these three wives, on the death of Saul, God gave his wives to David, to take them to his bosom (*2 Sam. 12:8*). How many wives Saul had does not clearly appear, but whatever the number was, God gave them to a man who had three already and declared his willingness to give him more. And David, fully assured of God's approbation, when he came from Hebron to Jerusalem, took more wives and concubines (*2 Sam. 5:13*). In all this, David is nowhere condemned; but in the matter of Uriah's wife, he is punished with great severity, (*2 Sam. 11:4, 8; 12:10-11*), because in the mind of God, taking another man's wife was adultery and robbery, but polygamy was lawful. God commanded Hosea to marry two wives (*Hosea 1:2, 3:1-5*).

16. In the face of such facts, it is doing violence to the word of God to say that polygamy was only suffered. It is hardly possible that God should give any further evidence of his approval of it. And there is nothing in all the scriptures to make a different rule, or to alter the force of the argument in favor of this. The clear intention is to approve of it

17. The oft-repeated assertion that polygamy is abolished in the New

Testament has no truth in it. There is not a text found in the book which justifies the assertion. Some have said that the language, "They twain shall be one flesh," forbade the idea of more than one wife. But when it is considered that they are not one flesh in their own persons, but in the persons of their children, who are flesh of the flesh of both father and mother, it will appear that those words are just as applicable to Polygamic as Monogamic families; the true sense of the words being that a man begets children on his wife, and no other woman. In fact, his child, begotten on any other woman, is the flesh of they twain; but God has not joined them, and they sin in joining.

18. The injunction that a Bishop shall be the husband of one wife (*1 Tim. 3: 2*) has been frequently offered as evidence that God disapproved of polygamy. This is absurd. The rule is not that he shall be the husband of but one, but that he shall be the husband of one.

19. But if we were to so construe the language as to forbid a Bishop having more than one wife, the limitation of the interdict to Bishops would clearly imply that other men might lawfully have more than one wife. Unless the general rule was that men might have more than one wife, there could be no occasion to say Bishops should not.

20. Indeed, such seems to be the understanding of this text by the most enlightened of those Christians who understand that it limits a Bishop to one wife. For the Christian Missionaries who have instituted Christianity among the Pagan nations of India, receive members into their Churches who have more than one living wife, and allow them to continue to cohabit with them; such members being admitted to all the privileges of the Church, but not allowed to hold^a any office.

21. It is also an unquestioned fact in history that existed in the Apostolic

20a Now what shall be done in respect to such persons (polygamists) when they give credible evidence of personal piety and seek admission into the Christian Church? No case of this kind occurred in my own missionary experience. But some cases have occurred in India, and this difficulty will occur in numerous instances in the progress of the Gospel. The subject will also have the consideration and decision of the highest authority, ecclesiastical and judicial, in India and England. My opinion is that the general practice in missions, in respect to such cases, will be as follows: When any man who has more than one wife to whom he has been legally married wishes to be admitted into the Christian Church, he will be required to make a free and full statement of his domestic relations. He will be permitted to retain his marital connection with all his wives and his parental relation to all his children, subject to the discipline of the Church for the proper government of his household. Whether he may or may not cohabit with his different wives will be left, I believe, entirely to him and to them, to act according to their views of duty.

—[INDIA, ANCIENT AND MODERN. Geographical, Historical, Political, Social, and Religious; with a Particular Account of the State and Prospects of Christianity. By DAVID o. ALLEN, D. D., Missionary of the American Board for twenty-five years in India, etc.; pp. 553-4.]

Church^a. The celibacy of the Clergy and the Monogamy of the laity exist on the same foundation: the authority of the Roman Catholic Church.

22. And it is worthy of observation that polygam was nowhere abolished upon the authority of the divine Law, but either by Canon or by Statute. Indeed, it was not really abolished at all. Legitimate marriages of the Clergy were abolished, but they were allowed to keep unmarried female companions, and, in many countries, those who had them had an extra allowance from the Church for their support.

23. And, notwithstanding the general prohibition of Polygamy, it exists in fact, though not in Law, in all Christian countries. Kings whose marriages are governed by State reasons generally use the privilege of taking one or more wives, to whom they are not married strictly according to Law, who are, nevertheless, in no sense under the imputation of unchastity, and numerous citizens followed their example.

24. Not only have Christian writers of the highest rank justified these departures from the rule of monogamy, but many of them have defended polygam as the preferable and more moral institution. Luther, Melancthon, and the chief authors of the Protestant Reformation gave polygam their express sanction in favor of the Landgrave of Hesse^a, and numerous Protestants defended it as scriptural.

25. And if polygam does not exist in most Protestant countries now as a legal institution, that fact is attributable to statute, and not to the discipline of the Churches. Very few, if any of them, have one word in their disciplines which discountenances polygam in any way whatever.

26. And that their testimony is not against polygam as a godly institution, but only against violating the law of the State, appears in this: the New Testament allows of divorce only for adultery (*Matt. 19:8-9*). Yet when a Christian man has obtained a divorce for some

21a The Calcutta Missionary Conference (representing Episcopalians, Presbyterians, Baptists, and Congregationalists), consisting of the Missionaries of the various Societies which have Missionaries in that vicinity, after frequent consultations and much consideration on the subject of polygam, as it exists in India, were unanimous in the following conclusion: If a convert before becoming and Christian has married more wives than one, in accordance with the practice of the Jewish and Primitive Christian Churches, he shall be permitted to keep them all; but such a person is not eligible to any office in the Church.

—[INDIA, AKOIKNT AKD MODARN, cta.; p. 601.]

24a This wife was ill-tempered and a drunkard, and he laid his case before the Theologians of Wittenburg. By an official determination, they allowed him to take another, though he could not divorce her, but asked him to keep the second marriage secret. Two of Luther's letters of an earlier date allow Polygam to be scriptural (Michelet's Life of Luther).

other cause, which is no cause by the Law of God, and marries a second wife, the first being by the Law of God just as much his wife as she ever was, they receive him into their communion, just as before.

27. In peaceable times, polygamy would naturally limit itself to a very few cases, because most men desire marriage. But as in all settled communities, a considerable number more of women than men desire to marry, there is always a necessity of polygamy, that they may obtain husbands.

28. The excess of women seeking marriage gives to men an undue advantage in obtaining companions for life. Every man who desires a wife can get one, but many women must fail. As a consequence, many women are led to make very unequal matches, in despair of a better opportunity. And others, whose greatest joy it would have been to surround themselves with a numerous posterity, waste their solitary lives on pet birds and kittens, rather than bear children to corrupt and degraded sires; who, had polygamy existed to a very limited extent, would have been the mothers of eminent sons.

29. Many of the most eminent statesmen and scholars of modern times have died childless, or left only bastard children of degraded women and slaves, who, had polygamy been reputable, would, like the Patriarchs, have transmitted their virtues and their greatness to a numerous posterity.

30. And as the lowest order of intellect is most prolific, unless some means is adopted of increasing the progeny of intellectual men, and securing that progeny from mothers of eminent talents, superior virtues, and healthy persons, the effort to elevate the masses will be counteracted by the vast disproportion in the posterity of elevated and degraded.

31. That means is polygamy, which will elevate the human race by making it possible for every virtuous woman, capable of bearing healthy, intelligent children, and exercising such self-control that she can spend her days in love and kindness, with others like herself, to bear children to men possessed of every moral and intellectual excellence; and leaving jealous, envious, and petulant women, who cannot endure that a sister shall be beloved by the same husband, to pair themselves off with those of like disposition, or with such as have inferior intellects, or bodies wasted upon strange women, or are infirm from hereditary corruptions.

32. Polygamy elevates man, by giving him more blessings in well

doing, a higher reward for a faithful and virtuous life, a more numerous posterity to perpetuate his fame, and inherit his honors, and virtuous, and intellectual society as the reward only of a well-regulated life, and the devotion of superior intellect to the public service. It elevates women, by making her man's companion, instead of a piece of furniture in the house as some, or a domestic drudge, as others are; by bringing marriage and suitable companionship in the reach of all; and making so many opportunities of a happy settlement in life that an amiable and virtuous young woman cannot fail of finding an affectionate and worthy husband.

33. Under the Law of monogamy, it is evident that matches are made with trifling regard to fitness. Women can have next to no choice. But men have little inducement to discriminate, and less to see to the proper ordering of their households so as to make good wives of suitable women. If a woman, otherwise unexceptionable, is petulant and subject to violent outbursts of temper, her husband, expecting to have no other wife, may indulge her, rather than assume the unpleasant task of applying a correction. In the end, his house becomes a bedlam, and his children are reared in the midst of a tempest. It is no wonder that his prayer is that they be few, nor that many such seek quiet dalliance with unchaste women, or, with blasted hopes, waste their intellects over intoxicating potations.

34. Such a one, believing that a multitude of children were a crown of glory to an old man, and looking to the reward of a long and virtuous life, in a numerous posterity, all established in the affections of the people he served, would feel the necessity of curbing in himself, and in all his house, that ill-temper which would render such a reward impossible.

35. It is common to hear polygamy spoken against, as, at best, licensed lust. With many, indeed with all who make carnal indulgence the chief end, marriage is no less. But such are always opposed to Polygamy. If such a man seeks variety, Polygamy is too expensive. If he does not, one woman is sufficient, and will at the same time serve either as mistress of his house, or domestic drudge.

36. It is only men who seek congenial companionship in life, and children in their own images to live after them, who are willing to charge themselves with the care of several wives, and the government of great households; subjecting themselves to that rigid mental discipline which is necessary to keep proper order, and cultivate all the social virtues in such a family. The blindest can see that the carnal mind

can find easier and cheaper modes of indulgence in unbridled lust.

37. The fact that houses of prostitution are unknown in countries where polygamy prevails, while they exist everywhere in monogamic countries, and cannot be suppressed, ought to put to shame those who object to polygamy on the score of chastity. And, the further fact, that where polygamy prevails, adultery is exceedingly rare. And in monogamic countries, so common as to scarcely call for a passing remark, should cause such objectors to seal their lips.

38. But however, men may declaim against polygamy in this life, all who attain to the life everlasting will, in the presence of God, dwell with it forever. For Polygamic Abraham, and Jacob, whose seed we are by the adoption of faith, if we attain to that estate, and Gideon, David, and Solomon, will be there, and their wives, the mothers of Patriarchs, Princes, and Prophets, with them; who were joined to them in the mortal, and will not be sundered from them in the everlasting life.

Chapter 45

Highways

I

No notes for this chapter.

Chapter 46

Tithings

I

On Verse 1

1. Tithing of crops is payable as often as crops are harvested, whether in whole, or in part. And no one has a right to the crop until the tithing is paid, or set out for that purpose; and to use it as his own would be the same offence as stealing. When set out, he is bound to take care of it till it is duly delivered.

2. The tithing of crops is payable in the same condition in which they are harvested. Cereal grains need not to be thrashed, nor corn to be husked. In general, it is required of those who raise the crops to deliver the tithing at the place of collection. Those who have no teams are excused from removing heavy articles.

3. Tithing of horses and cattle is payable, the tenth animal, at three years old. Of sheep and hogs, at one year old. Of fowls, generally, at six months old. It matters not whether it is superior or inferior, the tenth, or the choice of the flock, the year which produces the tenth is the tithing.

4. If animals are sold or marketed before that age, the tithing must be commuted, and then one-fifth is added to the value (*Lev. 27:31*). But, if any change is made to give a poorer one for tithing, both it and that received in exchange are taken (*Lev. 27:33*). These forfeitures are

not for the purpose of increasing the tithing, but to prevent fraud.

II

On Verses 2-7

1. Tithing of butter, cheese, eggs, and numerous mixed productions of agriculture and industry is payable from time to time, as they are brought to a suitable condition for use.

2. No general rule can be laid down for the payment of tithing on the products of industry, beyond that which requires a tenth. When it can be paid in labor, it is easy to determine the amount, and it ought to be paid every tenth working day, or the tithing for a quarter year at one time, early in the quarter. A tenth of all is due in some form.

II

1. Tithing should be settled quarterly at the Solstices and Equinoxes, and the settlement recorded. Remittances of tithing are made to the needy liberally, but they are not allowed to withhold, because in want, till remitted.

Chapter 47

Payment of Debts

I

1. The object of the Law is not so much to collect debts of the poor; for if honest, they will pay willingly as fast as they are able; and if dishonest, ought not to be trusted. But of the rich, whom others trust of necessity, and do not always find honest; also, to redress frauds and trespasses.

The Voree Plates

The Record of Rajah Manchou of Vorito.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints

1845, 1873
(Public Domain)

Edited and Printed by

The Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship

2026
(CC BY-ND 4.0)

Testimony of the Four Witnesses

On the thirteenth day of September, 1845, we, Aaron Smith, Jirah B. Wheelan, James M. Van Nostrand, and Edward Whitcomb, assembled at the call of James J. Strang, who is by us and many others approved as a Prophet and Seer of God. He proceeded to inform us that it had been revealed to him in a vision that an account of an ancient people was buried in a hill south of White River bridge, near the east line of Walworth County; and leading us to an oak tree about one foot in diameter, told us that we would find it enclosed in a case of rude earthen ware under that tree at the depth of about three feet; requested us to dig it up, and charged us to so examine the ground that we should know we were not imposed upon, and that it had not been buried there since the tree grew. The tree was surrounded by a sward of deeply rooted grass, such as is usually found in the openings, and upon the most critical examination we could not discover any indication that it had ever been cut through or disturbed.

We then dug up the tree, and continued to dig to the depth of about three feet, where we found a case of slightly baked clay containing three plates of brass. On one side of one is a landscape view of the south end of Gardner's prairie and the range of hills where they were dug. On another is a man with a crown on his head and a scepter in his hand, above is an eye before an upright line, below the sun and moon surrounded with twelve stars, at the bottom are twelve large stars from three of which pillars arise, and closely interspersed with them are seventy very small stars. The other four sides are very closely covered with what appear to be alphabetic characters, but in a language of which we have no knowledge.

The case was found imbedded in indurated clay so closely fitting it that it broke in taking out, and the earth below the soil was so hard as to be dug with difficulty even with a pickax. Over the case was found a flat stone about one foot wide each way and three inches thick, which appeared to have undergone the action of fire, and fell in pieces after a few minutes exposure to the air. The digging extended in the clay about eighteen inches, there being two kinds of earth of different color and appearance above it.

We examined as we dug all the way with the utmost care, and we say, with utmost confidence, that no part of the earth through which

THE VOREE PLATES

we dug exhibited any sign or indication that it had been moved or disturbed at any time previous. The roots of the tree stuck down on every side very closely, extending below the case, and closely interwoven with roots from other trees. None of them had been broken or cut away. No clay is found in the country like that of which the case is made.

In fine, we found an alphabetic and pictorial record, carefully cased up, buried deep in the earth, covered with a flat stone, with an oak tree one foot in diameter growing over it, with every evidence that the sense can give that it has lain there as long as that tree has been growing. Strang took no part in the digging, but kept entirely away from before the first blow was struck till after the plates were taken out of the case; and the sole inducement to our digging was our faith in his statement as a Prophet of the Lord that a record would thus and there be found.

Aaron Smith,
Jirah B. Wheelan,
J.M. Van Nostrand,
Edward Whitcomb.

THE RECORD OF RAJAH MANCHOU OF VORITO
COMMONLY CALLED
THE VOREE PLATES

Chapter 1

1 My people are no more. The mighty are fallen, and the young slain in battle. Their bones bleached on the plain by the noonday shadow. The houses are leveled to the dust, and in the moat are the walls. They shall be inhabited.

2 I have in the burial served them, and their bones in the Death-shade, towards the sun's rising, are covered. They sleep with the mighty dead, and they rest with their fathers. They have fallen in transgression and are not, but the elect and faithful there shall dwell.

3 The word hath revealed it. God hath sworn to give an inheritance to his people where transgressors perished. The word of God came to me while I mourned in the Death-shade, saying, I will avenge me on the destroyer. He shall be driven out. Other strangers shall inhabit thy land. I an ensign there will set up. The escaped of my people there shall dwell when the flock disown the Shepherd and build not on the Rock.

4 The forerunner men shall kill, but a mighty prophet there shall dwell. I will be his strength, and he shall bring forth thy record. Record my words and bury it in the Hill of Promise.

Possible additional text from the Voree Plates. Published by H.V. Reed, in January 1873.

5 It shall come to pass in the latter days, that my people shall hear my voice, and the truth shall speak from the earth, and my people shall hear, and shall come and build the Temple of the Lord. My prophet, unto whom I send my word, shall lead them, and guide them in the ways of peace and salvation. In Voree, the name of the Mighty One shall be heard, and the nations shall obey my law, and hear the words of my servant, whom I shall raise up unto them in the latter days.

The Diamond

*Being the Law of Prophetic Succession, and a Defence of the
Calling of James J. Strang as Successor to Joseph Smith Jr.*

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints

1848

(Public Domain)

Edited and Printed by

The Church of Jesus Christ in Christian Fellowship

2026

(CC BY-ND 4.0)

THE DIAMOND

Chapter 1

The Institution of the First Presidency and the Law of Succession.

Extracted from the Book of Doctrine and Covenants

1. The power and authority of the higher or Melchisedek priesthood is to hold the keys of all the spiritual blessings of the Church (*DoS 5b:49; DaC 104:9 RLDS, 107:18 CJCLdS*).

2. Wherefore it must needs be that one be appointed of the High Priesthood, to preside over the priesthood, and he shall be called President of the High Priesthood of the Church, or, in other words, the presiding High Priest over the High Priesthood of the Church from the same comes the administering of ordinances and blessings upon the Church by the laying on of the hands (*DoS 5a:1-9; DaC 104:31 RLDS, 107:59-67 CJCLdS*).

3. And again, the duty of the President of the office of the High Priesthood is to preside over the whole Church, and to be like unto Moses. Behold here is wisdom yea, to be a seer, a revelator, a translator, and a prophet—having all the gifts of God which he bestows upon the head of the Church (*DoS 5a:32-33; DaC 104:42 RLDS, 107:91-92 CJCLdS*).

4. I give unto you, my servant Joseph, to be a Presiding Elder over all my Church, to be a translator, a revelator, a seer, and prophet (*DoS 78j:3; DaC 107:39 RLDS, 124:125 CJCLdS*).

5. Thou (Joseph) shall be called a seer, a translator, a prophet, an apostle of Jesus Christ, an Elder of the Church through the will of God the Father, and the grace of your Lord Jesus Christ (*Doctrines of the Saints 7a:2-5; DaC 19:1 RLDS, 21:1-3 CJCLdS*).

6. The President of the Church who is also the President of the council, is appointed by revelation (*DoS 11a:10; DaC 99:6a RLDS, 102:9 CJCLdS*).

7. The President may inquire and obtain the mind of the Lord by revelation (*DoS 11a:20; DaC 99:10 RLDS, 102:23 CJCLdS*).

8. I have sent forth the fullness of my Gospel by the hand of my servant Joseph; and I have given unto him the keys of the mystery of those things which have been sealed, even things which were from

THE DIAMOND

the foundation of the world, and the things which shall come from this time until the time of my coming, if he abide in me, and if not, another will I plant in his stead (*DoS 23a:22-23; DaC 34:4e-f RLDS, 35:17-18 CJCLdS*).

9. But, behold, verily I say unto thee no one shall be appointed to receive commandments and revelations in this Church excepting my servant, Joseph Smith, Jr., for he receiveth them even as Moses. And thou (Oliver Cowdery) shall not command him who is at thy head, and at the head of the Church; for I have given him the keys of the mysteries and the revelation which are sealed, until I shall appoint unto them another in his stead (*DoS 22a6-10; DaC 27:2 RLDS, 28:2-7 CJCLdS*).

10. Verily I say unto you, the keys of this kingdom shall never be taken from you while thou art in this world, neither in the world to come; nevertheless through you shall the oracles be given to another, even unto the Church (*DoS 55:3-4 DaC 87:2a RLDS, 90:3-4 CJCLdS*).

11. And this ye shall know assuredly that there is none other appointed unto you to receive commandments and revelations until he be taken, if he abide in me (*DoS 2b:3 DaC 43:1b RLDS, 43:3 CJCLdS*).

12. But verily, verily, I say unto you, that none else shall be appointed unto this gift except it be through him, for if it be taken from him he shall not have power except to appoint another in his stead; and this shall be a law unto you, that ye receive not the teachings of any that shall come before you as revelations or commandments; and this I give unto you that you may not be deceived, that you may know they are not of me. For verily I say unto you that he that is ordained of me shall come in at the gate, and be ordained as I have told you before (*DoSs 2b:4-8 DaC 43:2 RLDS, 43:4-7 CJCLdS*).

13. Wherefore marvel not, for the hour cometh that I will drink of the fruit of the vine with you on the earth—also with John, the son of Zacharias—which John (an angel) I have sent unto you, my servants, Joseph Smith, Jr., and Oliver Cowdery, to ordain you unto this first priesthood which you have received, that you might be called and ordained even as Aaron; and also with Peter and James and John (angels), whom I have sent unto you, by whom I have ordained you and confirmed you to be apostles and especial witnesses of my name, and bear the keys of your ministry; and of the same things which I revealed unto them; unto whom I have committed the keys of my kingdom, and a dispensation of the Gospel for the last times, and for the fullness of times, in the which I will gather together in one all

things, both which are in heaven and which are on earth (*DoS A2:1-9; DaC 26:2-3 RLDS, 27:4-12 CJCLdS*).

14. The Twelve are a traveling presiding high council, to officiate in the name of the Lord, under the direction of the Presidency of the Church, agreeable to the institution of heaven (*DoS 5b:24; DaC 104:12 RLDS, 107:33 CJCLdS*).

15. The Twelve being sent out holding the keys to open the door of the proclamation of the Gospel of Jesus Christ; and first unto the Gentiles, then to the Jews (*DoS 5b:25; DaC 104:13, or 107:35 CJCLdS*).

16. Now I say unto you, and what I say unto you I say unto all the Twelve, arise and gird up your loins, take up your cross, follow me, and feed my sheep. Exalt not yourselves: rebel not against my servant Joseph, for verily I say unto you I am with him, and my hand shall be over him; and the keys which I have given unto him, and also to youward, shall not be taken from him till I come (*DoS 12b:15-17; DaC 105:6 RLDS, 112:14-15 CJCLdS*).

17. Verily I say unto you, my servant Thomas, thou art the man whom I have chosen to hold the keys of my kingdom (as pertaining to the Twelve) abroad among all nations, that thou mayst be my servant to unlock the door of the kingdom in all places where my servant Joseph, and my servant Sidney, and my servant Hyrum, cannot come; for on them have I laid the burden of all the churches for a little season; wherefore, whithersoever they (the First Presidency) shall send you (the Twelve) go ye, and I will be with you and in whatsoever place ye shall proclaim my name an effectual door shall be opened unto you that they may receive my words; whosoever receiveth my word receiveth those (the First Presidency) whom I have sent, whom I have made counselors for my name's sake unto you (the Twelve) (*DoS 12b:18-22; DaC 105:7 RLDS, 112:16-20 CJCLdS*).

18. Therefore, see to it that ye (the Twelve) trouble not yourselves concerning the affairs of my Church in this place (the seat of the First Presidency), saith the Lord; but purify your hearts before me, and then go ye into all the world and preach my Gospel unto every creature who have not received it, and he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, and he that believeth not and is not baptized shall be damned (*DoS 12b:30-31; DaC 105:11 RLDS, 112:27-29 CJCLdS*).

Chapter 2

The Appointment of a Successor and a Place of Refuge.

Letter of Joseph Smith Jr. to James J. Strang

Nauvoo, Ill., June 18th, 1844.

My Dear Son:

Your epistle of May 24th, proposing the planting a Stake of Zion in Wisconsin, and the gathering of the Saints there, was duly received, and I, with most of the brethren whose advice I called in, were of opinion that you was deceived by a spirit not of this world, great but not good. Brother Hyrum, however, thought otherwise, and favored the project, not doubting it was of God. I, however, determined to return you an unfavorable answer for the present. But, Oh! the littleness of man in his best earthly state! Not so the will of the Almighty. God hath ruled it otherwise, and a message from the throne of grace directed me as it hath inspired you, and the faith which thou hast in the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel, hath been repaid to thee a thousand fold, and thou shalt be like unto him; but the flock shall find rest with thee, and God shall reveal to thee his will concerning them.

I have long felt that my present work was almost done, and that I should soon be called to rule a mighty host, but something whispers me it will be in the land of spirits, where the wicked cease from troubling and the bands of the prisoner fall off. My heart yearns for my little ones, but I know God will be a father to them, and I can claim face to face the fulfillment of promises from him who is a covenant-keeping God, and who sweareth and performeth and faileth not to the uttermost.

The wolves are upon the scent, and I am waiting to be offered up, if such be the will of God, knowing that though my visage be more marred than that of any, it will be unscarred and fair when archangels shall place on my brow the double crown of martyr and king in a heavenly world.

In the midst of darkness and boding danger, the spirit of Elijah came upon me, and I went away to inquire of God how the Church should be saved. I was upon the hill of the Temple. The calm father of waters rolled below, changeless and eternal. I beheld a light in the

heavens above, and streams of bright light illuminated the firmament, varied and beautiful as the rainbow, gentle, yet rapid as the fierce lightning.

The Almighty came from his throne of rest. He clothed himself with light as with a garment. He appeared, and moon and stars went out. The earth dissolved in space. I trod on air and was borne on wings of Cherubim's. The sweetest strains of heavenly music thrilled in my ear, but the notes were low and sad as though they sounded the requiem of martyred Prophets.

I bowed my head to the earth and asked only wisdom and strength for the Church. The voice of God answered, My servant Joseph, thou hast been faithful over many things and thy reward is glorious; the crown and sceptre are thine, and they wait thee. But thou hast sinned in some things, and thy punishment is very bitter. The whirlwind goeth before, and its clouds are dark, but rest followeth, and to its days there shall be no end. Study the words of the vision for it tarrieth not.

And now behold my servant James J. Strang hath come to thee from far for truth when he knew it not, and hath not rejected it, but had faith in thee, the Shepherd and Stone of Israel, and to him shall the gathering of the people be, for he shall plant a stake of Zion in Wisconsin, and I will establish it; and there shall my people have peace and rest and shall not be moved, for it shall be established on the prairie on White River, in the lands of Racine and Walworth; and behold my servants James and Aaron shall plant it, for I have given them wisdom, and Daniel shall stand in his lot on the hill beside the river, looking down on the prairie, and shall instruct my people, and shall plead with them face to face.

Behold my servant James shall lengthen the cords and strengthen the stakes of Zion, and my servant Aaron shall be his counselor, for he hath wisdom in the Gospel, and understandeth the doctrines, and erreth not therein.

And I will have a house built unto me there of stone, and there will I show myself to my people by many mighty works, and the name of the city shall be called Voree, which is, being interpreted, garden of peace, for there shall my people have peace and rest and wax fat and pleasant in the presence of their enemies.

But I will again stretch out my arm over the river of waters, and on the banks thereof shall the house of my choice be. But now the city of Voree shall be a stronghold of safety to my people, and they

THE DIAMOND

that are faithful and obey me I will there give them great prosperity, and such as they have not had before; and unto Voree shall be the gathering of my people, and there shall the oppressed flee for safety, and none shall hurt or molest them.

And by this shall they know that I have spoken it; the people there and the owners of the land shall show kindness to them, for great calamities are coming on the Church, and such as have not been, and if they scatter, the ungodly of the world shall swallow them up, but if they gather to my city of Voree there will I keep them under the shadow of my wings, and the cities from whence my people have been driven shall be purged with a high hand, for I will do it, and my people shall be again restored to their possession; but dark clouds are gathering, for the Church is not yet wholly purged.

And now I command my servants, the Apostles and Priests and Elders of the Church of the Saints, that they communicate and proclaim this, my word, to all the Saints of God in all the world, that they may be gathered unto and round about the city of Voree and be saved from their enemies, for I will have a people to serve me.

And I command my servant Moses Smith, that he go unto the Saints with whom he is acquainted, and unto many people, and command them in my name to go unto my city of Voree, and gain inheritances therein, and he shall have an inheritance therein, for he hath left all for my sake; and I will add unto him many fold if he is faithful, for he knows the land and can testify to them that it is very good.

So spake the Almighty God of heaven. Thy duty is made plain, and if thou lackest wisdom, ask of God, in whose hands I trust thee, and he shall give thee unsparingly, for if evil befall me thou shalt lead the flock to pleasant pastures. God sustain thee.

JOSEPH SMITH.

JAMES J. STRANG

This letter was received at Burlington by regular course of mail, coming through the distributing office at Chicago, and bears the Nauvoo postmark of June 19, the day following its date. It arrived at Burlington July 9th, and was immediately taken from the office by C. P. Barnes, Esq., a distinguished lawyer at that place, who, in consequence of the rumors of persecution and civil war against the Mormons, and a general anxiety to hear the latest news, immediately carried it to Mr. Strang, with the request to be informed of any news of public interest which it might contain. It therefore became public the same evening.

As much pains have been taken to belie this document and to derogate from its authority, it is proper to add that from the day of its reception to this (April, 1848), it has always been kept open to public inspection, and not an iota of evidence has yet been produced derogatory to its authenticity. The Brighamites and other apostates have reported far and near that it had a black postmark, and that such were not used in the office at Nauvoo. This report is a falsehood. The postmark is red. They also started a story that no proper entry of the mailing of such a letter could be found in the register of "mails sent" from Nauvoo. But Mr. Strang caused the register to be examined, and under date of June 19th, 1844, the proper entry was found of such a letter to the distributing P.O. at Chicago, and the register at Burlington of "mails received" contains the proper entry from Chicago. In the winter of 1845-6 these facts were publicly proclaimed in the Temple at Nauvoo by Moses Smith, Samuel Shaw, and others, and an examination of the registers called for. The next day crowds were at the P.O. to inspect the register. But, though the register of every other quarter of the establishment of that P.O. was safely there, that particular quarter was nowhere to be found. It has never since been produced. Comment is unnecessary.

Mrs. Emma Smith recollects well of her husband receiving a letter from Mr. Strang, and holding a council on the subject, and names Hyrum Smith, Willard Richards, and John P. Green as present at that council; and also that a letter was sent to Mr. Strang in answer, but of the import of the answer she was not informed. Immediately after the martyrdom of Joseph, John Taylor, Willard Richards, and William W. Phelps took a kind of temporary direction of the affairs

THE DIAMOND

of the Church, instructing the Saints to wait patiently the hand of the Lord, assuring them that he had not left them without a shepherd, and that all things would be made known in due season. To every question of the Saints, Who is the prophet? replies were made in substance that the Saints would know in due season, but that nothing could be done till the Twelve got home, because the appointment of a prophet, and the directions for salvation of the Church from the perils they were in, was contained in sealed packages directed to them. Orson Hyde, and others of the Twelve who were then in the east, stated in public congregations in New York, Philadelphia, and other cities, that Willard Richards had written to them that the appointment of a prophet was left with him under seal, to be opened on the return of the Twelve. This assertion was so often made that the whole Church were daily expecting to hear a new prophet proclaimed. On the eighth of August, 1844, when Sidney Rigdon endeavored to obtain authority to lead the Church, John P. Green, marshal of the city of Nauvoo, told them "they need not trouble themselves about it for Joseph had appointed one James J. Strang, who lived up north, to stand in his stead." The sudden death of John P. Green immediately after this declaration (under very extraordinary circumstances) left Willard Richards and John Taylor sole repositories of all documents on this subject, except this letter. They had simply to suppress documents in their hands to set themselves up in power, or overthrow themselves and their pretensions by publishing them. These and many other facts, which we have not room to state, make an array of testimony of the strongest kind in favor of this letter. It is worthy of consideration that no one fact has been relied on against it, but that in various quarters different false tales have been told to disparage it, which a mere inspection of the letter or of public records would prove false. The only reason which can be given for this continued resort to falsehood is that there is no truth against it.

Chapter 3

The Ordination.

From the Church Records

1. On the twenty-seventh day of June, 1844, at five and a half o'clock in the afternoon, James J. Strang was in the Spirit, and the Angel of God came unto him and saluted him, saying:

2. Fear God and be strengthened and obey him, for great is the work which he hath required at thy hand. Go on in hope and strength, and falter not, and he will sustain thee, and thou shalt triumph, for the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of Joseph, will be fulfilled.

3. And the Angel of the Lord stretched forth his hand unto him and touched his head, and put oil upon him and said, Grace is poured upon thy lips, and God blesseth thee with the greatness of the Everlasting Priesthood. He putteth might, and glory, and majesty upon thee, and in meekness, and truth, and righteousness will he prosper thee.

4. Thou shalt save his people from their enemies when there is no arm to deliver, and shall bring salvation when destruction walketh in the house of thy God. Thou hast loved righteousness and hated iniquity; therefore thy God hath anointed thee with oil and set thee above all thy fellows.

5. Thy words shall be like sharp arrows in the hearts of the wicked. Thou shalt rebuke those who pervert the word of thy God. Thou shalt preach righteousness and the sublime mysteries in the ears of many people, and shall bring the Gospel to many who have not known it, and to the nations afar off.

6. Thou shalt drive backward and put to shame those that do evil, and the workers of iniquity shall fall. They shall be cast down and shall not be able to rise. With purity will the Lord thy God arm thee, and purity and truth shalt thou teach.

7. Keep the law of the Lord thy God in thy heart, and none of thy steps shall slide. With thee is the fountain of truth. In thy light shall the people of thy God see, for thou shalt speak his word unto them, and from thy lips shall they receive it.

8. The blessing of their God shalt thou put upon them, and his curse

THE DIAMOND

upon evil doers, if, after being oft rebuked, they repent not, and before my people shalt thou go to lead them unto my ways, for unto thee has the Lord thy God given salvation.

9. In righteousness shalt thou rule. Thou shalt redeem the poor and the needy from suffering and violence, and to thee God giveth judgment for them. Thou shalt deliver the prey from the spoiler, for God, thy God, hath put them in thy hand.

10. And in weakness will he make thee strong. Thou shalt rule among his people. Thou shalt break in pieces the rod of the oppressor and the yoke of the unjust ruler. They shall flee away, but the way of peace shall they not find.

11. While the day of the wicked abideth, shall thou prepare a refuge for the oppressed, and for the poor and needy. Unto thee shall they come, and their brethren who are scattered shall come with them, and the destruction of the ungodly shall quickly follow, for it already worketh. Go thy way and be strong.

Chapter 4

First Pastoral Letter of James the Prophet.

JAMES J. STRANG, a Prophet of the Most High God, and an Apostle of the Lord Jesus Christ, unto the Elders of the Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints.

I am in continued remembrance of your past works in the upbuilding of the Kingdom of God and of the evils done at the hands of ungodly men, and I would have you remain no longer ignorant of the refuge that God has appointed you, and follow not after any who usurp the authority of God in the Holy City.

Be not unmindful of the flock who know not the true Shepherd, but are following hirelings, among whom are grievous wolves, and they bleat like sheep by day and devour by night. God be praised that some of you have escaped them. I would that none of you go astray but that you all unitedly might follow after the true Shepherd; lest coming short after escaping the first perils you enter not into your rest.

I beseech you, brethren, that you be not unmindful of the words of the Lord by the mouth of the prophet Joseph; that you be not deceived; that you receive not the teachings of any that come before you as revelations and commandments, except they come in at the gate and be ordained according to the command of God (*DoS 2b:4-9; DaC 43:2 RLDS, 43:5-7 CJCLdS*).

I wist ye are not ignorant of the office and place of the prophet Joseph, that he was an Elder and an Apostle (*DoS 7a:2-3; DaC 19:1 RLDS, 21:1 CJCLdS*) Prophet, Seer, Revelator and Translator, called to go before the Church as Moses went before Israel. (*DoS 5a:32-33; DaC 104:42 RLDS, 107:91-92 CJCLdS*).

Suffer me in all patience to remind you of the law of the Lord which he revealed unto us aforetime that the place of the prophet Joseph should be filled by another (*DoS 2b:1-9, 22a:6, 7b:4; DaC 43:1-2, 34:4f, 27:2, 87:2 RLDS, 43:1-7, 35:18, 28:2, 90:4 CJCLdS*) that the appointment of his successor is by revelation from God (*DoS 11a:10, 23a:23; DaC 99:6, 34:4 RLDS, 102:9-11, 35:18 CJCLdS*); and that, through Joseph only could that appointment be made (*DoS 2b:1-9,*

THE DIAMOND

18-21, 7b:4; DaC 43:1-2, 4, 87:2a RLDS, 43:1-7, 15-16, 90:4 CJCLdS).

For it is said in one place that if his gift be taken from him he shall not have power except to appoint another in his stead; and in another place it is said, if he abide not in me another will I plant in his stead. And at the organization of the High Council of the Church it was written that the President of the Church, who is also President of the council, is appointed by revelation. Finally it is said, I have given unto him the keys of the mysteries and revelations which are sealed until I appoint unto them (the Church) another in his stead.

By these testimonies and by many more doth clearly appear that it was the duty of the prophet Joseph before his martyrdom to appoint another to fill his place when he should be removed. If he has not done so then have we no evidence that he was a prophet for what he hath spoken hath not come to pass.

The only rational conclusion which any man can arrive at in view of these testimonies is that in the order of this Church the Presidency, with its several gifts, officers, and duties, is perpetual. God having thus organized the Church, and the power of the devil having accomplished the martyrdom of two of the chief officers, will any saint teach that Satan has changed the order of the Church and abolished these officers which God instituted, and by the martyrdom of prophets established a new and better order? I trust not.

I am well aware that Sidney Rigdon claimed his place above the Twelve, and that he sought to do some acts by virtue of his office as one of the First Presidency which were generally very much disapproved of, but though he had a perfect right to officiate in his place he had no right to place himself at the head of the Church.

His office as an associate or member of the First Presidency does not constitute him a regular successor to Joseph Smith, the claim in his favor to succeed as the highest surviving officer of the Church, not being a claim of an appointment of God by revelation through Joseph Smith to fill his place, which is the only form of appointment known to the law of God.

I am aware also that the Twelve claim in their first Apostolic letter after the death of Joseph (*Letter of Brigham Young, Aug. 15, 1844, in the Times and Seasons^a of that date*) to preside over and dictate all the affairs of the Church in all the world. And they emphatically charge us, Let no man presume for a moment that his place (Joseph's) will be filled by another. Thus they assumed to abolish the First Presidency

of the Church and usurp its duties with themselves.

This claim, however, is not only utterly unsupported by any one testimony, but is in many points directly contrary to the Word of God. The Twelve are a traveling, and not a local or general, high council, and though they are required to build up the Church, and regulate all the affairs thereof in all nations, they are to do so expressly under the direction of the Presidency of the Church, agreeable to the institution of Heaven. They hold the keys of the opening of the Gospel to the nation (*DoSs 5b:24-26; DaC 104:12 RLDS, 107:33 CJCLdS*) but the keys of mysteries and revelations belong to Joseph as First President, Prophet, Seer, and so forth, and to his successors regularly appointed by revelation through him. (*DoS 11a:10, 23a:23, 2b:1-9; DaC 99:10, 34:4f, 43:1-2 RLDS, 102:9-11, 35:18, 43:1-7 CJCLdS*). The keys of the kingdom belong to Joseph for time and eternity, but still with a regular succession as to the oracles or gift of receiving revelation for the Church (*DoS 7b:3-4; DaC 87:2 RLDS, 90:3-4 CJCLdS*). The Melchisedek priesthood, by its presidency, holds the keys of ordinances and spiritual blessings. (*DoS 5b:49-53, 1-9; DaC 104:9, 31 RLDS, 107:18-19, 59-67 CJCLdS*). And in all these things the Twelve are without power, their duties being to open the preaching of the Gospel.

Moreover, it cannot be that the Twelve should dictate all the affairs of the Church in all the world, because they not only are under the direction of the First Presidency, but the high council is above them, and they are amenable to it. "The most important business of the Church, and the most difficult cases of the Church, in as much as there is not satisfaction upon the decision of the Bishop or Judges, it shall be handed over and carried up to the council of the Church before the Presidency of the High Priesthood; and the Presidency of the council of the High Priesthood shall have power to call other High Priests, even twelve, to assist as counselors; and thus the Presidency of the High Priesthood and its counselors have power to decide upon testimony according to the laws of the Church. And after this decision it shall be had in remembrance no more before the Lord, for this is the highest council of the Church of God, and a final decision upon controversies in spiritual matters. There is not any person belonging to the Church who is exempt from this council of the Church. (*DoS 5a:16-20, 5b:43, 5a:21-23, 11a:27; DaC 104:35-36, 99:13 RLDS, 107:78-82, 102:30-32 CJCLdS*).

Upon what pretense is this claim of the Twelve founded? Upon the trial of Sidney Rigdon, they took pains to state it as strongly as

possible, and they make out no more than this, that when Joseph Smith was candidate for President of the United States, and knew by the Spirit that some great thing was to happen, but did not know what it was, he gave them an endowment of ordinances (not the oracles), and told them that on their shoulders would rest the responsibility. (*See trial of S. Rigdon, Times and Seasons, Sept. 15, 1844, page 611, remarks of Orson Hyde*). These ordinances are intended for the whole Church—men, women and children. Will they all have power to dictate all the affairs of the Church in all the world then. If not, how do these ordinances give the Apostles that power now? If these ordinances gave certain power to some men, why not to others?

All the Twelve were not present and did not receive these ordinances. Whence their claim of power? Several persons, not of the Twelve, were present and received all these ordinances with such of the Twelve as were there. Why are not they included in the favored number? Joseph survived this meeting some months. Why did not they find out that he had resigned his office and devolved its duties on them, till after he was dead? If his giving an endowment of ordinances, and rolling the responsibility of giving counsel, etc., upon some twenty-five men with their wives, as he commenced a political career, vacated his office and those of his counselors, and superseded the First Presidency and an entire quorum of the Church, it is certainly most extraordinary. A very moderate share of common sense, or any acquaintance whatever with the laws of the Church, accompanied with integrity of heart, will reject so preposterous a claim at first blush. The responsibility of leading the Church by good counsels, in proper order, would devolve on a few of its most influential members, necessarily, whenever Joseph's attention was turned from them, by any means whatever, not in virtue of any offices they might hold, but as leading men. Since the death of Joseph, they have used that responsibility to lead the Church from the rock of revelation, out of the true order, and from the place of refuge God had appointed unto them. Thus have a few led, sanctioned by the votes of Conferences instead of the voice of God, till the destruction which not only lurks in midnight darkness, but stalks boldly at noonday, is upon them.

The Twelve have never, in any known publication, claimed, either for themselves or any one of their number, to be First President of the Church, or President of the High Priesthood. Their claim is to supersede the First Presidency, put the high council which God has made the highest council of the Church (*DoS 5a:16-20; DaC 104:35*

RLDS, 107:78-81 CJCLdS), below themselves, and put a Bishop over it, where God placed a President (*Doctrines of the Saints 5b:49-53; DaC 104:9 RLDS, 107:18-19 CJCLdS*), and finally, that ex officio, as Apostles and not as Presidents of the High Priesthood, they are to hold the keys and powers which devolved on the First Presidency and its counselors, and to discontinue the offices of Seer, Revelator and Translator in the Church.

Nothing is more certain than that no law was made at the death of Joseph, or for some years previous, changing the order of the Church, or abolishing any of its offices or quorums. Down to the time of his death, it was properly understood by the whole of the Church that he alone received revelations from God, to be taught by way of commandment in the Church; that he and his two associates in the Presidency had the chief administration of the affairs of the Church and that they, with the twelve high counselors, were a court of judicatory of final resort in all important cases, and that the Twelve Apostles were the chief traveling Elders, and under the direction of the Presidency. And the man who, during the lifetime of Joseph, had said that the Twelve were at the head of the Church, would have been looked upon either as a reckless and hairbrained liar, or utterly insane. To have held this then was unblushing apostasy. To hold now that they are not so, is equally apostasy with the leaders in Nauvoo. Whence is the change? In God or man? Does truth thus belie itself?

Why should not the place of Joseph be filled by another? Says Brigham Young, Because he stands in his own place and always will (*Apostolic letter, Aug. 15, 1844*). But in the same paragraph he also says the Twelve Apostles of this dispensation stand in their own places and always will. Brother Young will not their places be filled by others when they fill the measure of their days? Then why was Brother Patten's place filled? Again; Who will be at the head of the Church when the Twelve are all fallen asleep? Will not the High Priests and the Seventies all hold their own places? If so, shall any one succeed them? Then where will the priesthood be when the present generation is dead?

But, says some one, God promised Joseph that the keys of the kingdom should never be taken from him in this world, neither in the world to come. Very well. They were never taken from Christ, but his holding them did not prevent Joseph, and in the eternal worlds all who are joint heirs with Jesus Christ will hold them at one and the same time.

THE DIAMOND

Brethren, I exhort you as you look for the coming of the Lord Jesus, follow not after these blinding fables. Set up no more the work of men's hands against the voice of God. Trust not in your own wisdom to improve or alter the law of God. You that have gone astray return to the order of' God's house. Let all the quorums take their proper order as God has established them. Let the President who has wandered in darkness return to his proper place which God gave, nor covet that which men may offer. Let the Twelve take their place as a traveling high council with the keys of the opening of the Gospel to the nations. Let the high counselors give counsel and assistance, to the Presidency, which has been called to the high and responsible calling of leading the Church to peace and happiness and preparing a people for the coming of the Son of God. Let the High Priests teach the law of God unto the people. Let all the Elders learn not to put their faith in some great man and say all is well, but let them buckle on the whole armor of God and stand up, bold defenders of truth, rather than men.

Now in my weakness and in the infancy of my ministry I call upon you to assist me. It hath pleased God to put it into the heart of Joseph to appoint me to receive mysteries and revelations unto this Church. And he has been faithful unto the vision and voice of God by sending me his epistle containing the revelation which God gave him, the Lord God confirming the same by sending his angels unto me to charge me with his ministry in the same hour that Joseph was taken away, and by witnessing the same to the brethren in those wonderful works which the brethren here are ready to testify unto you.

Let not my call to you be vain. The destroyer has gone forth among you and has prevailed. You are preparing to resign country and houses and lands to him. Many of you are about to leave the haunts of civilization and of men to go into an unexplored wilderness among savages, and in trackless deserts, to seek a home in the wilds where the footprints of the white man is not found. The voice of God has not called you to this. His promise has not gone before to prepare a habitation for you. The hearts of the Lamanites are not turned unto you, and they will not regard you. When the herd comes the savages shall pursue. The cloud which surrounds by day shall bewilder, and, the pillar of fire by night shall consume and reveal you to the destroyer, and the men in whom you trusted when you rejected the promises of God shall leave you early and not be found of you in your greatest need. Let the oppressed flee for safety unto Voree, and let the gathering of

the people be there. Let the evil who have gone to the holy city be rejected and given to the law. Let the Twelve go out and preach the Gospel to the nations according to the command of God, instead of staying at home as a prominent mark to bring cruel enemies on their brethren. Let the filth of Zion be cleansed and her garments of peace put on. Let neither gun nor sword be lifted in defiance, nor rest be taken upon arm of flesh, and the city of our God shall be saved and the Temple of his holiness be unpolluted by the hand of the Gentile. Causeless the curse has not come, and causeless it shall not fall. They that ask justice let them do it. They that cry out against mobs let them abstain from violence. Those who hate persecution let them regard the rights of others. They that preach God and the Gospel let them remember the law and forget not the order which he has revealed, and their own mouths have proclaimed. Let them not buffet others for changing the ordinances and breaking the everlasting covenant, unless they themselves will abide the word of God.

JAMES J. STRANG. Voree, December 25, 1845.

a Editor's Note: It is clear that the 12 did not at first tsee themselves as Joseph's successors, but as the leaders next in line—

"You are now without a prophet present with you in the flesh to guide you; but you are not without apostles, who hold the keys of power to seal on earth that which shall be sealed in heaven, and to preside over all the affairs of the church in all the world; being still under the direction of the same God, and being dictated by the same spirit, having the same manifestations of the Holy Ghost to dictate all the affairs of the church in all the world, to build the kingdom upon the foundation that the prophet Joseph has laid, who still holds the keys of this last dispensation, and will hold them to all eternity, as a king and priest unto the most high God, ministering in heaven, on earth, or among the spirits of the departed dead, as seemeth good to him who sent him.

"Let no man presume for a moment that his place will be filled by another; for, remember he stands in his own place, and always will; and the twelve apostles of this dispensation stand in their own place and always will, both in time and in eternity, to minister, preside and regulate the affairs of the whole church."

—Letter of Brigham Young, Aug. 15, 1844, in the Times and Season, p. 618

Chapter 5

The True Shepherd to the Saints Emigrating from Great Britain and Ireland to America.

Greeting:

God, who in days of old spoke on divers occasions and in many ways to the house of Israel by the prophets, and afterwards to all the earth by his son whom he made ruler over all things, last of all in these days restored the Gospel to the earth by the ministry of angels, and the priesthood which he conferred on the prophet Joseph by their hands; and has thereby established a church by an everlasting and unchanging order, conferring upon that

priesthood the keys of the kingdom of God, and of the rest which he has reserved to the Saints, and of everlasting righteousness.

Apostles, High Priests, and Elders have received from the highest authority of this priesthood mission and commandments to visit you, and in the name of the God of all the earth to preach the Gospel unto you, and have, in virtue of the jurisdiction thus obtained, taught you the law of the Gospel and inducted you into the household of faith. From the first proclamation of the Gospel in Great Britain you were taught that God spoke now, as in days of old, by the mouths of prophets, and that a priesthood elected and chosen by kings, magistrates, or people, was unauthorized, and its administrations would not avail to salvation. Truly have they cried out to you that all your administrations by a man-made priesthood, whether they be Catholics, Episcopalians, or Protestants were vain, and but a mockery of God's ordinances. And that unless men are truly called by revelation of God, and set apart to the ministry by the hands of those who were thus called and set apart they cannot act as ministers and priests of the true Church.

I rejoice that so many of you have received these truths, and laid hold on salvation. And it would be serious cause of grief, if, after all the buffetings and persecutions you have endured for receiving the faith, and the perils you have passed through in coming to this country, you should still throw yourselves under the authority of a mere man-made priesthood, and trust your salvation to the administration of men merely elected by the people. Joseph, our martyred prophet, became a prophet and the first and Presiding Elder of the Church of God by revelation of God and the ordination of angels. And what

authority and ceremonies it took to make him a prophet and the First Presiding Elder, the same authority and ceremonies it would also take to confer the same office and priesthood on anyone to stand in his place!

As much as has been said on this subject, and little to the purpose, I beg leave to call to your minds particularly the principles involved in the ordination of a prophet to stand at the head of a dispensation. When Moses received the dispensation of Israel, Jethro, and probably many others, were priests of the true God. But as Moses was called to a higher authority than any of them possessed, the Lord himself spoke to Moses to give him the authority; and though we are not expressly told that he was ordained by the hand of angels, yet we are plainly told that the angel of the Lord appeared to him, and are left to infer that he appeared for some rational purpose, Ex. 3:1-12.

When Christ received the dispensation of the Gospel, though he found John the Baptist, a priest of the order of Aaron, yet he could not receive the priesthood from him, but had a dispensation and a higher priesthood immediately from God, who made him a High Priest by his oath. For when John baptized him, the voice of God was heard, saying, "This is my Son, hear ye him;" and a messenger from heaven descended on his head and designated him as the Messiah. So likewise, when the dispensation of the fullness of times was committed to Joseph, God not only spoke to him and gave him commandments by his voice, and sent also his angels to ordain him to the priesthood which they also had before held. (*DoS 1:8-20; DaC 1:2-3 RLDS, 1:6-16 CJCLdS*).

When Moses failed to make Israel a nation of priests unto God, and brought them in under the law of curse, making one tribe only priests to all the rest, and God saw fit to take away the most holy priesthood. Moses, by revelation of God, ordained Joshua to an inferior species of priesthood. So Christ, when he was rejected as the Messiah, the king of the Jews, and the offer of deliverance to Israel was withdrawn, conferred on Peter the keys of the dispensation, with the power of binding and loosing both on earth and in heaven, and of remitting and retaining sins. In each of these cases the authority conferred was less than that of him who conferred it. Two persons could not stand at the same time holding the authority which God conferred on Moses. Consequently Moses could not ordain anyone to it. But he put part of his honor on Joshua. Two persons could not stand at the same time having the authority of Christ as king of Israel and head of the Gospel dispensation. Consequently, Christ did not ordain Peter to

THE DIAMOND

the same authority which he held, but to a less (*John 21:15-17.*)

Likewise, two persons cannot stand at the head of the dispensation of the fullness of times, holding the keys of mysteries, revelations, and commandments, and consequently Joseph could not in any way ordain or bring any one into his authority, but the act of God is necessary to consummate such priesthood. In other words, it requires the same power and the same ordinances to confer that priesthood on the successor to Joseph as it required to confer it on Joseph. And as Joseph was called by revelation, and ordained by angels so must his successor be. (*DoS 11a:10, 23a:23, 2b:1-2, 1:8-20, 22a:6-10; DaC 99:6, 34:4, 43:1-2, 1:2-3, 27:2 RLDS, 102:9, 35:18, 43:1-2, 1:6-16, 28:2-7 CJCLdS*). And, as Joseph was established as the Prophet, Seer and Revelator, it was necessary that the revelation appointing his successor should come through him, because the Church are forbidden to receive revelations and commandments from others. And, as this is established as a positive law, no instances are necessary to justify it; but if any were wanting, they might be found in the case of Samuel Lord revealed to Eli, and then to Samuel, that Samuel should stand as prophet in his stead. (*1 Sam. 3*) Elisha succeeded Elijah as a prophet. Elijah abode faithful to God in all things, but many years before he was translated, God had, through him, chosen Elisha to be his successor (*1 Kings, 19:16*). Yet, after he was translated to the chariot of the Lord, and ceased to be of the earth, he conferred that priesthood on Elisha, which he alone held while he ministered among men (*2 Kings, 2:9-5*).

Joseph, if he had abided in God in all things, would have stood on the earth and at the head of the dispensation at the coming of Christ. When Christ sent forth [the] fullness of the Gospel by him, it was with promise that if Joseph abided in him, the keys of mysteries and revelations (which pertain to earth and not to heaven) should not be taken from him till Christ came. In February, 1831, a new promise was made that if Joseph did not stand, whether taken away or being rejected, he should appoint another in his stead; but with this distinction: that if his priesthood was taken from him he should only have power to appoint another; but if God took him (which he did June 27th, 1844), there was no limit or cutting short of his priesthood while he remained. In 1833, as Joseph had not abided in Christ perfectly, but had committed sin, God said he should give the oracles to another, to the end that they might remain in the Church as before. But as Joseph had repented of his sins, God also accepted his

offering, and sealed him up to everlasting life by promising him the keys of the kingdom in this world and the world to come (*DoS 7b:1-5; DaC 87:1-2 RLDS, 90:1-5 CJCLdS*). This promise was sure and unconditional; but it was less than the former promise, which was of life everlasting without seeing death. For if he held the keys of mysteries and revelations until Christ came, he would, at the head of all the Saints, ascend on high to dwell with him. So, likewise, no one can be elected to the place which Joseph held, for that would both be contrary to first principles, which require as much authority to place any other in that priesthood as it took to confer it on Joseph, but also contrary to the law which says his gift shall not be conferred on any other except it be through him (Joseph). But even conceding that one might be elected to stand as First President and prophet, the question returns, by whom shall he be ordained? Not by Apostles, High Priests, or Elders, for all are below him in priesthood, and none can confer higher authority than he possesses. None can ordain to a higher priesthood than he holds. Elders cannot confer the High Priesthood, and apostles cannot make prophets with the keys of the dispensation because, though the priesthood is of the same order, it is higher.

The question returns, Who can ordain? God has answered it. In February, 1831, God said, “He that is ordained of me (God) shall come in at the gate (be appointed by revelation, for that is the gate or lawful place of coming in), and be ordained as I have told you (Joseph) before.” (*DoS 2b:4-9; DaC 43:2 RLDS, 43:4-7 CJCLdS*). So, if we can learn what God told Joseph before on this subject, the answer is perfect. In September, 1830, five months before, and only five months after the organization of the Church, God said: “I have sent unto you Peter, James, and John (angels), by whom I have ordained you,” etc. (*DoS 1:15-20; DaC 1:3 RLDS, 1:11-16 CJCLdS*). Most clear and true, therefore, is it that a prophet of this dispensation cannot be either elected or ordained of man, but must be chosen by revelation and ordained by angels.

Against this rule, those who wish to pervert the Word of God sometimes quote the law concerning the three presiding High Priests (*DoS 12-14; DaC 104:11 RLDS, 107:22 CJCLdS*). It will be observed, however, that that is not a revelation, but only a law of the Church, and cannot change the interpretation of a revelation. **2d.** That those three are not the Presidents of the Church, but the Presidents of the High Priests. For we are told expressly that their necessity grows

THE DIAMOND

not out of the organization of the Church, but of the priesthood. (*DoS 5b:1-23; DaC 104:1-11 RLDS, 107:1-32 CJCLdS*). Whereas, the Presidency of the Church existed of necessity before the priesthood was organized at all. **3d.** That they are inferior to the First Presidency in power, for they are only equal with the Twelve, either Seventy or a High Council of a Stake, all of which councils and quorums are inferior to the First Presidency, and subject to it. **4th.** These three presiding High Priests are chosen by the body and ordained by the Church. Whereas, we have shown, both by the letter of the law, and the force of fundamental principles, that the First Presidency cannot be thus chosen and ordained. To say that this law relates to the First Presidency is equivalent to saying that all the revelations concerning the appointment, ordination, and power of the prophet are false.

It should not be forgotten that for nearly four years past the Church has suffered continual perils, and such calamities as never before fell on it. If God has all that time left them without a prophet, there is no hope that he will give them one. And if the power existed in the Church to make one (which I have shown does not), it was the last degree of folly not to exercise it. Most truly do I say to you that the only reason why usurpers and apostates are now promising you to organize the Church according to the original pattern with a First Presidency is because so many have appealed to the law and said "a church without a prophet is not the church for me". Having no God made prophet, they are about to offer you one made by themselves. Since you have rejected man-made parsons, bishops, and archbishops, will you accept a man-made prophet?

Brethren, in this appeal to you I have spoken upon principles and not men. Those who say they are Apostles but are not, have gone beforehand to you with terrible accusations against me. I shall not retaliate on them by so much as naming their real errors. If they have the authority to lead the Church, in spite of all their faults, their authority is good till regularly taken away. On the other hand, if I have not the authority, no matter what the sanctity of my life, I have no right to assume it till it is regularly conferred. I am ready to test these matters by the word of God. Fully persuaded that no man can do me any real or lasting injury by myself, I am content to leave both accusation and defense to others.

As your true Shepherd I invite you to the fold and refuge God has prepared for you. Both at Voree and Beaver Island God has provided for the Saints peace, abundance and safety. The Saints are gathering

in a church with a God made prophet, and an authorized priesthood, and keeping the law of God, having all their goods and possessions in common and wanting nothing. We do not claim authority in virtue of numbers. We have never yet subscribed to the doctrine that the voice of the people is the voice of God, or that men are made prophets by the will of man. We know very well that Christ was rejected by the voice of the people. Truly did he say to the Israel of his day, ye are the children of those that slew the prophets. Moreover the prophet Joseph has given us a full test of those who say they are apostles and are not. Though we will not accuse them, yet we believe the word of God by his prophet will stand, and by that they must fall.

After the Saints had gathered to Nauvoo, God gave them the following promise:

“If ye labor with all your might's, I will consecrate that spot, that it shall be made holy; and if my people will harken unto my voice, and unto the voice of my servants whom I have appointed to lead my people, behold, verily I say unto you, they shall not be moved out of their place. But if they will not harken unto my voice, nor unto the voice of these men whom I have appointed, they shall not be blest, because they pollute mine holy grounds, and mine holy ordinances, and charters, and my holy words, which I give unto them.

“And it shall come to pass that if you build a house unto my name, and do not do the things that I say, I will not perform the oath which I make unto you, neither fulfill the promises which ye expect at my hands, saith the Lord; for instead of blessings, ye, by your own works, bring cursings, wrath, indignation and judgments upon your own heads, by your follies, and by all your abominations which you practice before me, saith the Lord.”

–*Doctrines of the Saints 78c:14-22;*
DaC 107:13-14 RLDS, 124:40-48 CJCLdS

That the Saints in Nauvoo obeyed faithfully the words of Brigham Young and his associates from the death of Joseph till their final expulsion from that place, and the laws which they gave as the law of God, they themselves have abundantly proved. Heber C. Kimball and others of the Twelve at the April Conference, 1845, and at other times, said they were the most obedient people that ever existed. Why were they removed out of their place? Was it because the arm of

THE DIAMOND

God is shortened that he cannot save? or was it because they obeyed the voice of men whom God did not appoint to be their leaders? The promise is express, that if they will obey they shall not be removed, and if they will not obey they shall be cursed. They were removed, and bitterly have they been cursed, for they are plundered, exiled, scattered, and vast numbers of them have perished of exposure and want. The only conclusion to which anyone can arrive who believes in Joseph, is that they have not followed the leaders whom God appointed, but only such as are appointed by men.

Brethren, will you run the same race? Will you drag the same curses on your heads which have fallen so heavily on them? Will you expose not only yourself but wives and children to all the perils of wicked men in a waste, desolate wilderness a thousand miles from the utmost verge of civilization, for the sake of having your trust in an arm of flesh or in a man-made priesthood, departing from the Lord and dwelling in the heart of the desert, and inhabiting the parched places of the wilderness, in a salt land, and not inhabited? (*Jer. 17:5-6*). Rather see good for it has come, and flee from the evil while there is refuge.

JAMES J. STRANG.
Voree, May 1st, 1848.

(Periodical Back)

Sidney Rigdon claimed the Presidency of the Church as Associate President with Joseph Smith, and survivor. Brigham Young first claimed as President of the Twelve Apostles, to preside until a Prophet should rise up, or the heir of Joseph grow up. More than four years after, a small portion of his followers assembled in Conference at Council Bluff, and elected him Prophet, First President, &c., and under this title he now claims.

William Smith, the brother of Joseph, claims by lineage—passing by Joseph's sons.

There are a dozen small sects of Mormons, each claiming in some way to be the true Mormon Church; but not one having one hundred active members, or the slightest prospect of perpetuity. Neither Rigdon nor Smith have a dozen followers. About two-thirds of all the Mormons acknowledge Young as leader. No person on earth does or ever did set up any claim to have been called by revelation of God, and ordained by the hands of angels, as the successor of Joseph in the Prophetic office, except James J. Strang. That he is so called and sent, he presents strong evidence. And as that is the only mode pointed out in the scriptures and the revelations, to come into that office, unless he is the rightful Prophet the Mormon institution has fallen to the ground. About one-third of all the Mormons acknowledge Mr. Strang as their leader, and the disproportion in the number of his followers and those of Brigham Young is gradually becoming less.

Note—On page fifteen, the fact that Moses was not only called by the voice of God, but also ordained by the hand of an angel, is left as a rational inference. It is, in fact, a matter of scriptural testimony. “

This Moses, whom they refused, saying: Who made thee a ruler and a judge? the same did God send to be a ruler and a deliverer, by the hand of the angel which appeared to him in the bush.” –Acts 7:35

EPILOGUE

Epilogue: On the Death of James J. Strang

James Jesse Strang lived and died as one of the most controversial and devoted figures of the early Restoration movement. To those who followed him, he was more than a leader. He was a man who understood firsthand that God still spoke, that revelation had not ceased, and that the scattered people of the covenant could yet be gathered again.

After the death of Joseph Smith, Strang stepped forward during a time of confusion, uncertainty, and division among the Saints. He testified that he had been called by divine revelation and that sacred records had been brought forth through him, including The Book of the Law of the Lord and the witness of the plates found at Voree. Whatever opinions history may hold concerning him, there is little doubt that he dedicated his life completely to the cause God had entrusted to him.

Strang envisioned a people set apart from the spirit of the world, a covenant community founded upon faith, divine law, moral discipline, and preparation for Zion. His teachings challenged both religious and political powers around him, and over time, opposition against him grew fierce.

On June 19, 1856, while living among the Saints on Beaver Island, James Strang was attacked and shot by men who had conspired against him. Though badly wounded, he survived for several weeks before finally passing away on July 9, 1856.

One of the most remarkable aspects of his final days was his refusal to appoint a successor. Throughout his ministry, Strang had consistently taught that true prophetic leadership could not simply be given by preference, family line, or church vote. He believed a successor must be called and ordained by divine manifestation, through the ministry of angels, just as he himself had been called. Could James have uttered with prophetic voice and ordained his successor? Yes, but this was not the Lord's will at that time.

He would not name another leader before his death, even while suffering from his injuries. His death scattered many of the Saints and marked the end of an important chapter in the Latter Day Saint movement. Yet the records, teachings, and questions he left behind did not disappear. For those who continue to study his work, James J. Strang remains a symbol of the restless spiritual energy that shaped the early Restoration: a man driven by conviction, willing to endure rejection and suffering for what he knew to be the work of God.

EPILOGUE

Remembered as a prophet, a reformer, and a visionary, his story continues to speak to those searching for deeper faith, continuing revelation, and the hope of Zion. For many, his final message still echoes through the generations: that God had not abandoned His people, and that the call to “come home” still remains open.